



OSAP

Ontario Stream Assessment Protocol

Version 7 • 2005 • Edited by Les Stanfield

edited May 2007

ONTARIO STREAM ASSESSMENT PROTOCOL VERSION 7.0 2007

TABLE OF CONTENTS

GENERAL INTRODUCTION

- 1.0 Background
- 2.0 Organization of the OSAP Manual
- 3.0 Training
- 4.0 Safety Concerns
- 5.0 Acknowledgements

SITE IDENTIFICATION AND DOCUMENTATION..... Section 1

- S1.M1 Defining Site Boundaries and Key Identifiers
- S1.M2 Screening Level Site Documentation
- S1.M3 Assessment Procedures for Site Features Documentation
- S1.M4 Diagnostic Procedures for Site Feature Documentation

BENTHIC MACROINVERTEBRATE ASSESSMENT..... Section 2

- S2.M1 Rapid Macroinvertebrate Collections
- S2.M2 Stationary Kick Survey for Macroinvertebrates
- S2.M3 Transect Travelling Kick and Sweep Survey for Macroinvertebrates

FISH COMMUNITY SAMPLING..... Section 3

- S3.M1 Fish Community Sampling Using Screening, Standard and Multiple Pass Electrofishing Techniques

ASSESSING PHYSICAL PROCESSES AND CHANNEL STRUCTURE..... Section 4

- S4.M1 Rapid Assessment Methodology for Channel Structure
- S4.M2 Point-Transect Sampling for Channel Structure, Substrate and Bank Conditions
- S4.M3 Bankfull Profiles and Channel Entrenchment
- S4.M4 Reconnaissance Surveys of Stream Discharge
- S4.M5 Measuring Stream Discharge Quantitatively
- S4.M6 Estimating Stream Discharge and Rapid Assessment Methodology for Measuring Hydrologic Response to Storm and Drought Events

WATER TEMPERATURE ASSESSMENT..... Section 5

- S5.M1 Estimating Summer Maximum Temperatures Under Baseflow Conditions
- S5.M2 Characterizing Stream Temperature Variability Using Digital Recorders

USING THE HABPROGS DATABASE..... Section 6

- 1.0 Introduction
- 2.0 Time and Resources Required
- 3.0 Detailed Procedures
- 4.0 Maintaining Backup Copies of the Data
- 5.0 Storing Datasets in a Central Repository
- 6.0 Literature Cited

GLOSSARY AND LIST OF ACRONYMS..... Section 7

BLANK FIELD FORMS..... Section 8

Ontario Stream Assessment Protocol
edited May 2007

ONTARIO STREAM ASSESSMENT PROTOCOL

VERSION 7.0

2005

General Introduction

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0	BACKGROUND.....	1
2.0	ORGANIZATION OF THE OSAP MANUAL.....	1
3.0	TRAINING	3
4.0	SAFETY CONCERNS.....	4
5.0	ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS	4

APPENDICES

Appendix 1. Tips For Collecting High Quality Field Data

1.0 BACKGROUND

The Ontario Stream Assessment Protocol (OSAP) contains a series of standardized methodologies for identifying sites, evaluating benthic macroinvertebrates, fish communities, physical habitat; and water temperature in wadeable streams. Each section contains multiple methods (modules) which vary in the amount of effort required to collect that data, and the interpretations that can be made. The modules are designed to be conducted individually or in combination.

The OSAP was designed to address a variety of stream assessment issues, ranging from very specific questions (e.g., determining maximum summer water temperature) to broader issues (e.g., changes in fish community composition over time). Study design will be determined by project managers and will indicate which modules should be completed.

The OSAP provides standardized methods that ensure data repeatability. Use of these standard methodologies allow data to be shared, used for multiple purposes and stored in a common database.

Protocols described in earlier versions are comparable to this version, however much of the background information and interpretation advice contained in earlier versions has been removed. Additional guidance on study design is provided in the draft compendium manual, "Guidelines for Designing and Interpreting Stream Surveys" (edited by Stanfield 2003).

2.0 ORGANIZATION OF THE OSAP MANUAL

The OSAP is organized into sections i.e., for evaluating benthic macroinvertebrates, fish communities, physical habitat; and water temperature in wadeable streams. Each section contains multiple methods (modules) which are classified by the amount of effort required to conduct the survey (and the interpretations that can be made from the data) according to the following:

- **Screening Surveys:** These methods enable users to perform rapid inventories. Screening surveys tend to be visually based. They are useful for the collection of information for 'state of the resource' reports and for identifying future collection efforts.
- **Assessment Surveys:** These methods require more effort than Screening Surveys. They are recommended for monitoring or impact assessment studies.

- **Diagnostic Surveys:** These methods provide detailed data and a higher degree of interpretative power than the Screening or Assessment Surveys, but require more effort to conduct.

The component sections include:

Section	Title
1	Site Identification and Documentation
2	Benthic Macroinvertebrate Assessment
3	Fish Community Sampling
4	Assessing Physical Processes and Channel Structure
5	Water Temperature Assessment
6	Data Management

Section 1: Site Identification and Documentation

This section describes a standard set of procedures for locating sites on streams, defining the boundaries of the sampling station and documenting landuses that may influence the biophysical conditions at a site. The first two modules are mandatory and must be completed with every visit to a site. S1.M3 (Standard Assessment Procedures for Site Feature Documentation) and S1.M4 (Diagnostic Procedures for Site Feature Documentation) provide additional detail. Study objectives will determine which modules to use.

Section 2: Benthic Macroinvertebrate Assessment

This section describes a number of standard tools for assessing benthic macroinvertebrate composition. Benthic macroinvertebrates can be used to evaluate water quality. Physical habitat conditions (depth, velocity and substrate) are measured to characterize background conditions and to assist in interpreting data.

Section 3: Fish Community Sampling

This section describes standard electrofishing methods for sampling fish communities in streams. The first module, Fish Community Sampling using Screening, Standard and Multiple Pass Electrofishing Techniques (S3.M1), describes three electrofishing approaches. The three approaches are described in one module, as the procedures are similar, with the exception of sampling effort.

Section 4: Assessing Physical Processes and Channel Structure

The modules in this section provide standard methodologies for assessing habitat in wadeable streams. The data collected will allow analysis of the channel structure (e.g., cover, substrate), channel processes (e.g., hydrology, sediment transport), and the stream's suitability for biota. Standardizing data collection procedures enables comparisons to be made across spatial and temporal scales by reducing error and controlling biases. Providing standard methodologies that vary in the accuracy of the data collected offers flexibility for users to accommodate different study designs.

Section 5: Water Temperature Assessment

This section describes techniques for assessing water temperature and estimating summer maximum water temperatures. Water temperature strongly influences the composition of aquatic communities. Knowledge of aquatic thermal regimes is important for predicting species composition, activity level, behaviours and life cycle events.

Section 6: Data Management

This section provides detail on how to manage the data collected using the OSAP, specifically regarding data entry into a database (HabProgs), generating summary reports and exporting information.

In each section, tips are provided to help with surveys and a general list of tips is presented at the end of this section (Appendix 1). Crew members are encouraged to review these periodically during the sampling season.

Section 7: Glossary and List of Acronyms

Section 8: Blank Field Forms

3.0 TRAINING

It is recommended that all crews complete OSAP training. The Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Fish and Wildlife Branch or Department of Fisheries and Oceans should be contacted for more information on upcoming courses.

4.0 SAFETY CONCERNS

Crews should adhere to safety precautions and requirements set forth by their employers /managers i.e., first aid kit, first aid training, travel plan, buddy system, mobile phone etc.

5.0 ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The protocols have been developed through collaboration between government and private sector companies. Many agencies have supported the development of the manual including: Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Conservation Authorities and Trout Unlimited Canada. In addition, contributions to sections of the manual include:

Section 2: Ontario Ministry of the Environment (Chris Jones and Keith Somers); Jacques Whitford Consulting (Bruce Kilgour).

Section 4: Parish Geomorphic (John Parish); Toronto Region Conservation Authority (Dave Bell currently with OMOE, and Scott Jarvie); Geological Survey of Canada (Marc Hinton); Trent University (Bruce Robertson and Jim Buttle).

The following individuals have assisted with the intellectual ideas within one or more modules: Mark Hinton, Chris Jones, Mike Jones, Bruce Kilgour, John Parish, Bruce Robertson, Mike Stoneman and Gord Wichert. Several individuals have contributed substantially through editorial changes: Jeff Andersen, Derrick Beach, Stephen Casselman, Gareth Goodchild, Peter Hulsman, Bruce Kilgour, Brenda Koenig, Bob Newbury, Audie Skinner, Elizabeth Straszynski, Jennifer Thomas and Donna Wales.

Students of the Central Hastings Secondary School assisted with the testing of the repeatability and ease of application of several procedures.

Emily Joyce and Scott Gibson provided valuable criticisms of earlier drafts of the manual.

Appendix 1

Tips For Collecting High Quality Field Data

Clearly and legibly record all data with a sharp pencil.

Use capital letters for text records.

Make corrections neatly.

Once they are completed, data sheets should be checked by another person for legibility, accuracy and completeness.

Field forms can be photocopied onto waterproof paper for working in inclement weather.

Check all stream names, stream and site codes, and sample numbers to ensure they are correct on all forms.

Use an equipment checklist.

Record '-99' ('-999' for depth) to indicate that a measurement could not be performed.

Only use codes that are specified in the protocol or on the data forms.

Additional information should be noted in the comments box.

Use only the measurement units on the field forms (i.e., mm, m etc).

DON'T leave a blank field on a data sheet. Always record a value for a numeric field or a dash for a presence/absence field if the object (i.e., a cover type) is absent.

DON'T ASSUME anything. Check the manual, or with your partners or your supervisor.

ONTARIO STREAM ASSESSMENT PROTOCOL

SECTION 1

Site Identification and Documentation

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Module Code	Title	Type
S1.M1	Defining Site Boundaries and Key Identifiers	<i>mandatory</i>
S1.M2	Screening Level Site Documentation	<i>mandatory</i>
S1.M3	Assessment Procedures for Site Feature Documentation	Assessment Surveys
S1.M4	Diagnostic Procedures for Site Feature Documentation	Diagnostic Surveys

INTRODUCTION

This section describes a standard set of procedures for locating sites on streams, defining the boundaries of the sampling site and documenting landuses that may influence the biophysical conditions at a site.

To standardize data collection and reduce sampling error, site boundary definitions must be consistently defined. The first module provides methods for uniquely identifying a sample site. The other modules describe the screening, assessment and diagnostic techniques that should be used to document site location and adjacent landuses. Each module is described below.

The first two modules are mandatory and must be completed with every visit to a site. Modules 3 and 4 provide additional detail. Study objectives will determine which modules to use.

S1.M1: Defining Site Boundaries and Key Identifiers

This module defines a site as a geomorphic unit that begins and ends at a crossover (i.e., the location where the main concentration of flow is in the center of the channel when the stream is at bankfull flow) and is a minimum of 40 m long. Key identifiers that uniquely define a site are described (i.e., 'Stream Name', 'Stream Code (Unique Code)' and a 'Site Code').

S1.M2: Screening Level Site Documentation

This module describes the collection of geographic coordinates as the minimum information required to document a site location. Coordinates should be confirmed using a Geographic Information System (GIS).

S1.M3: Assessment Procedures for Site Feature Documentation

This module describes techniques for precise documentation of site boundaries (essential for tracking channel migration). Techniques for the collection of information on adjacent landuses are also described.

S1.M4: Diagnostic Procedures for Site Feature Documentation

This module provides methods for georeferencing the location and meander pattern of a site. Guidance for diagnosing the linkage between landuse and biophysical properties is also provided.

Section 1 – Site Identification and Documentation

ONTARIO STREAM ASSESSMENT PROTOCOL

SECTION 1, MODULE 1

Defining Site Boundaries and Key Identifiers¹

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0	INTRODUCTION.....	1
2.0	PRE FIELD ACTIVITIES.....	1
3.0	FIELD PROCEDURES.....	2
3.1	Naming the Site.....	2
3.2	Identifying the Site Boundaries.....	3

APPENDICES

Appendix 1. Rationale for Site Boundary Definitions

¹ Author: L.W. Stanfield

1.0 INTRODUCTION

The utility of data collected at a site is dependent on how well the site location, condition and surrounding environment are described. Field studies for which data will be compared to a standard or among sites/years, require that site boundaries are identified in a consistent fashion.

Historically, site lengths tended to be standardized within a study regardless of stream width (i.e., 50 m) and sites would start and finish often in different habitats. Alternatively, sampling areas were chosen based on time constraints or focused on specific habitat types (i.e., pool or riffle). A more objective approach is to base the sampling site on geomorphic criteria, such as the riffle-pool sequence. This is the basis of the site definition in this protocol. Defining sites by physical boundaries ensures that data will be comparable through space and time.

This module describes a consistent means of uniquely identifying each site, and documenting the site location. It must be conducted in conjunction with S1.M2, Screening Level Site Documentation, to ensure that information about site location and length is accurately recorded.

2.0 PRE FIELD ACTIVITIES

This module takes 5 to 15 minutes to complete.

Pre-field activities should include:

- Landowner contact
- Documentation of site access and appropriate stream identifiers:
 - check the HabProgs database to see if the site has been previously described and obtain the unique identifiers for the site
 - if it is a new site, **ensure that an appropriate stream name and code is determined and is used on all data forms².**
- Equipment check

² The province of Ontario is developing a master list of stream names and codes that will be stratified by the National Hydrographic Demarcation System for Watersheds. Once completed, this will be incorporated into HabProgs and will replace the existing stream name and stream code system of unique identifiers. This will not affect data that has already been collected, but will improve the future organization of data given the hierarchical nature of stream networks.

The following equipment is required:

1. Tape measure or hip chain
2. Metre stick

Crews should adhere to safety precautions and requirements set forth by their employers /managers i.e., first aid kit, first aid training, travel plan, buddy system, mobile phone etc.

3.0 FIELD PROCEDURES

3.1 Naming the Site

Each site should have three identifiers, ('**Stream Name**', '**Stream Code**' and '**Site Code**') that when combined, uniquely identify each site surveyed in the province.

The 'Stream Name', is the name recorded in the provincial gazetteer or the Ontario Stream Assessment Protocol database (HabProgs).

The 'Stream Code' allows differentiation between streams with similar names (i.e., Trout Creek). The 'Stream Code' may be recorded in HabProgs. Make sure that the correct Stream has been retrieved by checking the descriptive fields for the stream, otherwise data may end up attached to the wrong 'Trout Creek'. If the stream being surveyed is not in HabProgs, contact the database manager to obtain an appropriate 'Stream Name' and 'Stream Code'.

The 'Site Code' must be unique for each stream. The 'Site Code' cannot exceed eight digits and can be any combination of letters or numbers. It is best to choose abbreviations that describe the location of the site. For example, a site on Wilmot Creek, downstream of the 3rd concession, could be '3CDW'. Check the HabProgs database to avoid duplicating a 'Site Code'. Avoid using O's or 0's or l's or 1's, as these could create data entry problems.

To assist users in identifying the correct stream, it is recommended that the National Hydrographic Watershed Code also be recorded for each site sampled (i.e., 2HG02). This information is available in Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources (OMNR)'s Natural Resource Values Information System (NRVIS) and at OMNR district offices.

Record these site identifiers on the Site Identification Form (see Appendix 2 in S1.M2, Screening Level Site Documentation). It is important that the 'Stream Name', 'Stream Code', and 'Site Code' are consistently recorded on all data sheets.

3.2 Identifying the Site Boundaries

A 'Sampling Site' should represent at least one riffle-pool sequence, be at least 40 m long, and begin and end at a crossover point (Figure 1). Measure the mid-channel length (Figure 1) by chaining the site from the bottom (i.e., the downstream end of the site) to the top. At some sites (channelized or highly unstable streams), it will be difficult to identify the crossover points. In these situations, an area with similar bank height on both sides and a relatively uniform depth profile across the channel should be chosen as the bottom of the site. Search for an area with similar conditions that is at least 40 m upstream and use this as the top of the site. For example, if crossover points occur at the 0, 29 and 52 m marks, the site would end at the 52 m mark. When study designs require sampling much longer units of stream, managers are encouraged to split sampling among several sites that meet the above criteria.

Crossover Point

A crossover is the location where the thalweg (main concentration of flow, normally the deepest part of the channel) is in the centre of the channel during bankfull discharge. This occurs when the flow "crosses over" from one side of the stream to the other. Crossovers are usually but not always associated with riffles and the banks on either side of the stream are very close to the same height. Crossover points will be separated by half-meander lengths (Figure 1) and therefore all sites will be multiples of half-meander lengths. The crossover point represents an area with a slower, uniform flow that occurs when the stream has its greatest erosive ability. This results in materials being deposited across the stream (i.e., towards the middle of the channel).

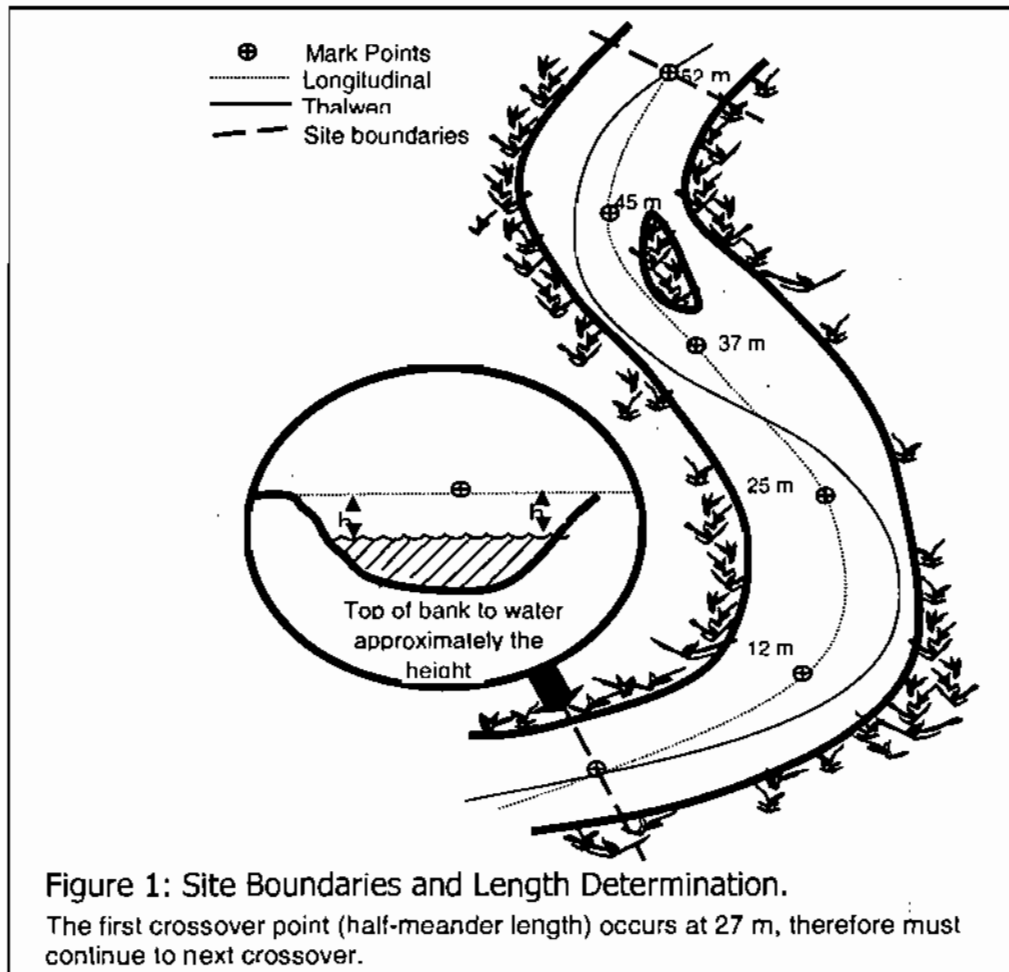
The spacing of crossovers is related to stream width. For many stable low gradient streams, crossover spacings are seven to ten times the bankfull stream width. For example, if the stream width at a crossover is 9 m, the next crossover should be between 63 and 90 m (longitudinal distance) upstream. In higher gradient, step-pool streams, this relationship decreases to five to seven times stream width. These patterns are not as reliable in developed areas.

Do not shorten the site length as this may bias the surveys because certain habitats may be under- or over-represented.

Procedures for Chaining Site Length

Site length is measured by chaining up the center of the stream (Figure 1). One person stands at the bottom of the site in the middle of the stream to mark the starting point. A second person proceeds upstream until the stream changes direction (or until the end of the tape). The second person marks the point, measures the distance, and waits for the first person to reach the mark before proceeding upstream to the next mark location (Figure 3). At the centre of each curve in the stream, the second person marks the location and calls for the first person to move up. Do not stretch the tape around corners.

This process is repeated until the total site length is measured. Unless the station boundaries have already been marked, crews will typically chain the length of the site and identify the upper boundary at the same time (i.e., at the first crossover after the 40 m mark is crossed).



Appendix 1

Rationale for Site Boundary Definitions

1. Crossovers can be found in all flowing waters and even the most disturbed systems will begin re-establishing crossovers where velocities are the slowest (under high flow conditions).
2. Use of geomorphic boundaries standardizes definitions across disciplines and promotes multi-disciplinary studies of flowing waters.
3. The 40 m minimum length optimizes the balance of variance and effort for a variety of parameters (fish community, instream habitat, substrate).
4. This length of stream can be sampled in a single day using the methods described in this manual.
5. Sampling multiple sites within a longer stream segment provides a more rigorous evaluation than just sampling a larger section of stream. This enables local variances in the biophysical properties of the stream to be measured, whereas sampling one long stretch of stream homogenizes the results³.

³ Some measures must be made over longer stream sections, for example, the longitudinal profile of riffle and pool sequences, or sinuosity. These should be measured using Geographical Information Systems or Global Positioning Systems.

ONTARIO STREAM ASSESSMENT PROTOCOL

SECTION 1, MODULE 2

Screening Level Site Documentation¹

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0	INTRODUCTION.....	1
2.0	PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES.....	1
3.0	FIELD PROCEDURES.....	1
3.1	Georeferencing the Site Location	1
3.1.1	Using a GPS.....	1
3.1.2	Using a Map.....	2
3.1.3	Using a GIS	2
3.2	Validating the Site Location	2
3.3	Filling Out the Site Identification Form	2
4.0	DATA MANAGEMENT	2

APPENDICES

- Appendix 1. Background on UTM Grid Coordinates
- Appendix 2. Example Site Identification Form

¹ Author: L.W. Stanfield

1.0 INTRODUCTION

This module describes how to obtain and record validated geographic coordinates, which form the minimum descriptors required for locating a site. Geographical coordinates (i.e., latitude and longitude or Universal Transverse Mercator (UTM)) are usually collected using a Global Positioning System (GPS) (see Appendix I). Some units provide uncorrected coordinates and considerable effort may be needed (up to 15 minutes per site) to correctly locate these sites. Correcting these coordinates is necessary before the data can be confidently used in Geographic Information Systems (GIS).

Recent advances in GIS provide tremendous opportunities for illustrating and analyzing spatial data. Trend analysis (in time or space) is feasible only if accurate descriptions of the location of the sites are available. Application of this module will enable future surveyors, with the aid of a GPS, to locate the approximate location of a sampling site. For more precise locations of site boundaries, it is recommended that the 'Assessment Procedures for Site Feature Documentation' (S1.M3) be used.

2.0 PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES

This module must be performed in conjunction with S1.M1 ('Defining Site Boundaries and Key Identifiers'). Geographic coordinates can be obtained in several ways. With the following materials available, each technique typically takes less than five minutes.

1. Site description form
2. GIS with water flow and roads layer
3. GPS unit (differentially corrected), and/or
4. Maps that are of sufficient scale to locate the site within 50 m

3.0 FIELD PROCEDURES

3.1 Georeferencing the Site Location

3.1.1 Using a GPS

Obtain coordinates for the bottom of the site. When sufficient satellites have been received, the GPS will provide the UTM coordinates. If the site is in a heavily forested area, is isolated from beacons, or is in a steep valley, the GPS unit may be unable to read enough satellites to obtain a position. This is a good reason to bring a copy of the Ontario Base Map (OBM) as a backup.

3.1.2 Using a Map

Obtain a copy of the OBM that includes the location of the site. Locate the site on the map and using a straight edge, read the UTM coordinates for the bottom of the site (to the nearest metre, following the standard of two digits for the grid, six digits for the easting, and seven digits for the northing (see Appendix 1 for a discussion on UTM grid coordinates)). If an OBM is not available, obtain a 1:50 000 topographical map and record the latitude and longitude for the site in the appropriate boxes on the field sheet. Record these to the nearest decimal minute (i.e., 48°24.8').

3.1.3 Using a GIS

Many offices have access to a GIS and associated water flow and roads layers. Project managers will often identify the location of a site using a GIS and provide a map with the site location and coordinates to field crews. Crews must record new coordinates if the location differs from the coordinates provided. If no map or coordinates are provided, use a GIS to identify the site location when the crew returns from the field.

3.2 Validating the Site Location

The most reliable process for validating site locations is to compare coordinates recorded on the data sheet to the locations in a GIS or on an OBM. If either of these were used to initially locate the site, it is recommended that the alternate technique be used during the validation process. This reduces reader error and the effects of drift. Drift refers to the error introduced into a GIS from overlaying maps of different resolution.

3.3 Filling Out the Site Identification Form

Ensure that each box from the 'Stream Name' down to and including the 'Datum of Coordinate Source' is filled out. In addition, try to fill out the 'Township/Municipality' to 'Watershed Code', and the 'Comments' boxes. The 'Crew' and 'Date' must also be filled out on all data sheets. If surveys require an upstream site boundary to be determined, then 'Site Length (m.)' must also be recorded on this form. Table 1 identifies in **bold** what must be recorded and in *italics* what should be recorded in each box and an example sheet is provided in Appendix 2.

4.0 DATA MANAGEMENT

Upon returning from the field;

1. Create a backup hard copy (i.e., photocopy) of field forms, and store them in a place separate from the originals.

2. Enter the data into a digital storage system, such as HabProgs, and save backup copies that are stored in a separate location from the master copy.

By storing the data digitally in HabProgs, the data can be shared with a large number of users province-wide. Data sharing will facilitate the refinement and development of habitat suitability models and improve habitat management practices and policies.

Table 1: Guidelines for Filling Out the Site Identification Form

Data Required	Instructions
'Stream Name'	Record as shown in the Master Stream Name Database (see S1.M1).
'Stream Code (Unique Code)'	Enter appropriate three character code as per Master Stream Name Database (see S1.M1).
'Site Code'	Assign appropriate code, descriptive of site location (see S1.M1).
'Year'	Include all four digits.
'Sample'	A sample event is one completion of the protocol, regardless of how many days it takes to finish it. A second sample would be a repeat assessment or a sample conducted in a different year.
'Uncorrected UTM Coordinates'	For uncorrected UTM coordinates, record the following number of digits for the UTM coordinates: grid (two), easting (six), northing (seven).
'Latitude' and 'Longitude'	As an alternative to the UTM coordinates, record the latitude and longitude of the site to the nearest second.
'Corrected UTM Coordinates'	Once corrected, record at least the following number of digits for the UTM coordinates: grid (two), easting (six), northing (seven) in the 'Uncorrected UTM coordinates' boxes. Note decimal places can be added for eastings and northings
'Source of GIS Stream Layer'	The name of the GIS layer and its origin should be recorded to enable users to address drift issues during applications.
'Source of Coordinates'	Record which method was used to obtain the geocoordinates (i.e., GPS unit, GIS, OBM or topographical map).
'Datum of Coordinate Source'	Record the datum of the coordinate source. This is important for addressing drift. (i.e., new NRVIS data should be all in NAD 83).
'Township/ Municipality'	Identify the level of government responsible for planning (generally townships in rural areas and municipalities in urban areas).
'Lot' and 'Concession'	Enter the lot and concession in which the site is located.
'MNR District'	Enter the name of the district, not the area office.
'Watershed Code'	Five character code obtained from the provincial list/map. (i.e., 2HD-04)
'Access Route'	Describe the route taken to the site, beginning at a major interchange or reference point. Include distances between turns in rural areas. Remember that the data will also be used to verify the location of the site on a GIS, so record distances, not just 911 addresses.
'Site Description'	Describe the walking route from the parking location to the site and provide a detailed description of landmarks for locating the site (see example in Appendix 2).
'Site Marker Description'	Record the type(s) of markers used, locations, compass bearings, and distances (to the nearest 0.1 m) from the top and bottom of the site.
'Photograph Numbers'	Record the photograph numbers and associated descriptions so photos can be accurately labelled when developed. Use an 'X' if no photos are taken.
'Crew'	First initial and last name of all members of the field crew.
'Recorder'	Name of the person entering the information on the sheet.
'Date'	Record as year/month/day – include the slashes.
'Comments'	Record any other relevant information here, such as the landowner's name and phone number, special requests (i.e., wants to be contacted with results, etc.).
'Site Length'	Record (to the nearest metre) the longitudinal length of the site as measured down the centre of the stream. Not required for modules which are not applied on a geomorphic unit.

Appendix 1

Background on UTM Coordinates

The Universal Transverse Mercator (UTM) system was introduced to provide an accurate means of locating any position on the globe. The globe is divided into grids. Each grid square has a unique reference identifying its position on the globe. For example, Wilmot Creek is in grid square 10-17. Positions are identified relative to how far north or east they lie from established reference points.

UTM coordinates are often recorded to the nearest metre. However, maps such as the Ontario Base Maps (OBM) show the numbers in units of hundreds of metres. Most data is entered into the HabProgs database to the nearest metre (although more accurate datasets derived from GIS applications are easily merged in HabProgs). Users need to be aware of how obtaining data from different sources/scales affects the data quality. For example, a site located on the Ganaraska River was recorded from an OBM as having coordinates of 10-17-6548-48650, while a GPS recorded uncorrected UTM coordinates of 17-654608-4865735 (ignoring decimals). The reading from the OBM would require two zeros to be added to the easting and to the northing distances in order to make the distances comparable to the same units and to meet the standards for this module (i.e., 10-17-654800-4865000). Finally, correcting the site to the water flow layer may result in the following numbers (i.e., 10-17-654856.4592-4865126.87356). Each record has a different degree of accuracy and as such is stored in different locations within Habprogs. Clearly, less accurate coordinates emphasize the need for good quality descriptions and sketches.

Appendix 2
Example Site Identification Form

Site Identification Form

Stream Name WILMOT CREEK		Stream Code (Unique Code) WMI			Site Code 3CDW		Year 2000		Sample 1		
Uncorrected Grid (XX) UTM Coordinates	Easting (XXX,XXX) 7 690485	Northing (X,XXX,XXX) 4867500	OR	Latitude	Deg (15-60)	Min (0-60)	Sec (0-60)	Longitude	Deg (50-75)	Min (0-60)	Sec (0-60)
Corrected Grid (XXX) UTM Coordinates	Easting (XXX,XXX) 7 690907	Northing (X,XXX,XXX) 4868866	Source of GIS Stream Layer used to correct UTM coordinate data (e.g. NRVIS 2) NRVIS 2								
Source of Coordinates (OBM Map, GPS Unit, Differential GPS) GPS UNIT			Datum of Coordinate Source: (NAD 27, NAD 83, WGS 84) NAD 83 (This can be found on the legends of maps or in set-up of GP3 units)								

Township/Municipality CLARKE	Lot 31	Concession 3	MNR District AURORA	Watershed Code 2110-04
---------------------------------	-----------	-----------------	------------------------	---------------------------

Access Route

Site Description

Site Marker Description

Downstream Marker				
Measure from Stake to Site Bearing (Degrees):	Distance (m.):	Photograph Numbers:	Looking Upstream:	Looking Downstream:
Description:				
Upstream Marker				
Measure from Stake to Site Bearing (Degrees):	Distance (m.):	Photograph Numbers:	Looking Upstream:	Looking Downstream:
Description:				

Crew J. BEAL, A. CONE Recorder S. BYE Date (YYYY/MM/DD) 2000/08/10

Comments	LANDOWNER----JONES (905-983-0076)	Site Length (m.) 44.0		
	HIGH ALGAE GROWTH THROUGHOUT STREAM			
	BEATEN TRAILS AND DISCARDED FISHING LINE	Enter dates and initials when data entered in Computer.		
Site Sketch	Draw two sketches on the back of this sheet. First draw a map to the area of the site then draw a sketch of the site. Be sure to include enough detail to ensure that someone could find the site again, including a north arrow and the locations of all markers, as well as the locations of any noted features. The artist should also sign the sketches.	Entered	Date 2000/08/10	Init. SB
		Verified	Date 2000/11/11	Init. JB
		Corrected	Date 2000/12/01	Init. LA

ONTARIO STREAM ASSESSMENT PROTOCOL

SECTION 1, MODULE 3

Assessment Procedures for Site Feature Documentation¹

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0	INTRODUCTION.....	1
2.0	PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES.....	1
2.1	Equipment Checklist.....	1
3.0	FIELD PROCEDURES.....	2
3.1	Marking the Site for Future Reference.....	2
3.2	Making a Site Sketch.....	3
3.3	Filling Out the 'Site Identification' Form.....	4
3.4	Filling Out the 'Site Features' Form.....	5
3.4.1	Identifying the Site Features.....	5
3.4.2	Documenting Information Sources.....	7
3.4.3	Recording the Riparian Vegetation Communities.....	8
3.5	Tips for Applying this Module.....	8
4.0	DATA MANAGEMENT.....	9

APPENDICES

Appendix 1. Example Site Identification Form

Appendix 2. Example Site Features Form

¹ Author: L.W. Stanfield

1.0 INTRODUCTION

Monitoring initiatives require that sites be revisited, often by different surveyors. Unfortunately, field crews cannot always locate exact site boundaries due to insufficient or erroneous information. This limits the ability to evaluate trends through time at a particular site.

This module describes an approach for describing the site location. The information in this module can also be used to confirm site locations using Geographic Information Systems (GIS). In addition, methods for collecting information that might help to explain the biophysical condition of a site, such as surrounding landuses (current and historical) and unique features, are provided. Finally, a procedure that allows users to monitor the magnitude and direction of channel movement is described.

This module can be used to re-locate site boundaries. It can provide background information to assist in the interpretation of results and characterize site conditions. This module should be initiated during the first site visit. Boundary locations and distances from permanent site markers should be checked and recorded on each subsequent visit to the site.

The information collected in this module reflects the effort by field crews and their diligence at researching historical information. Project managers must inform crew members how much effort should be applied to this portion of the survey. The procedures described in this module provide a qualitative description of the current and historical landuses that may influence a site. For studies designed to diagnose cause and effect, it is suggested that users consider the procedures described in S1.M4, Diagnostic Procedures for Site Feature Documentation in addition to those found in this module.

This module is applied in conjunction with S1.M1, Defining Site Boundaries and Key Identifiers and S1.M2, Screening Level Site Documentation, therefore site definitions and geo-coordinates will not be discussed here.

2.0 PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES

This module takes 10 minutes to two hours to complete (depending on how much effort is used to document the landscape features). With a three-person crew, the most efficient procedure is to have one person fill out the forms while the other two measure and mark the site.

2.1 Equipment Checklist

The following equipment is required:

1. 'Site Identification' and 'Site Features' field forms (ideally copied onto waterproof paper)
2. HB Pencils
3. Tape measure or hip chain
4. Compass

Optional equipment includes a camera, site markers (see Section 3.2, Making a Site Sketch, for options), and flagging tape.

Crews should adhere to safety precautions and requirements set forth by their employers /managers i.e., first aid kit, first aid training, travel plan, buddy system, mobile phone etc.

3.0 FIELD PROCEDURES

3.1 Marking the Site for Future Reference

Clearly document the site location so that it can easily be relocated. The best option for permanently marking a site is to use existing structures such as: fence lines, healthy "distinct" trees² or corners of buildings as reference points. Alternatives include:

- Rebar placed well into the ground beside a tree or other objects
- spray-painted metal survey stakes that are driven into the ground
- coloured metal tree tags driven into a tree (ensure that enough space is left for the tree to grow) or
- spray paint on trees or large boulders (appropriate as short-term markers i.e., annual)

Flagging tape can also increase site visibility in the short term. It should be tied to a marker and the site name and date should be written on the flagging tape.

Important Terms for Describing the Site

When describing a site, make sure that the following terms are used consistently and correctly: top, bottom, left and right. The upstream end of a site is the top; the downstream end is the bottom. Left and right are defined when standing in the water and facing upstream.

² Select only trees that can be easily distinguished by field crews, i.e., a lone large maple tree in a pasture, the only hemlock tree in the riparian zone. Do not choose one white cedar in a cedar forest!

Ask the landowner's permission prior to putting in any permanent site markers. Some landowners would prefer that the markers be out of sight (i.e., at ground level or below). In these instances, the location should be clearly noted on the Site Identification form.

Markers should be placed at the top and bottom of every site (i.e., 'Upstream Marker' and 'Downstream Marker'), above the high water mark on the bank associated with deposition (i.e., the convex bank). Measure the 'Distance (m.)' to the nearest 0.1 m from the marker to the edge of the water (for the closest bank that marks the bottom or top of the site). Record the side of the stream (left or right) and the compass bearing ('Bearing (Degrees)') from the marker to the bottom or top of the site (i.e., 10.2 m on a 272° bearing to the bottom right bank of the site).

Include the marker locations on the sketch of the site (see Section 3.2, 'Making a Site Sketch'). Changing the location of the permanent site markers on subsequent visits should be avoided because these markers are used for monitoring channel movement. If a permanent marker must be moved, the location of the new marker (relative to the old one) should be recorded in the 'Comments' section of the field sheet and on the sketch.

Attach a labeled photograph (citing the site location and date of visit) to the Site Identification form. This photograph should be taken looking upstream from the bottom of the site. Additional photographs showing site features should also be taken (see Appendix 1, Example Site Identification Form). Record the photograph numbers on the form, and describe what they show³. The use of digital cameras or scanned pictures provides a permanent electronic image of the site.

3.2 Making a Site Sketch

On the upper half of the back of the Site Identification form, draw a sketch of the site. The purpose of this sketch is to help future surveyors relocate the site and to show the location of adjacent features described on the Site Features field form (see Appendix 2).

This sketch must include the following information:

- 'Site Name'
- 'Stream Code'
- 'Site Code'
- 'Date (YYYY/MM/DD)' surveyed

³ One option is to record the site code and orientation of the photo (i.e., bottom of site facing upstream) onto either a piece of paper or a chalk board and include this in the photo. Polaroid cameras provide an opportunity to label photos while still in the field!

- site boundaries
- location of site markers
- adjacent landscape features and land uses
- boundaries of vegetation types
- location of any buildings or fence lines
- route used to access the site
- a north arrow and relative scale

On the lower half of the back of the form, photocopy a section of OBM or road map that includes the site. A map reference should also be included so future users can find the map. Mark the location of the site on the copied section of the map. Alternatively, draw a route map to the site from a major intersection.

3.3 Filling Out the 'Site Identification' Form

All boxes on the 'Site Identification' form should be filled out. A sketch should be produced on the back of the site identification form. Table 1 identifies what should be recorded in each box and an example sheet is provided in Appendix 2.

Table 1: Guidelines for Filling out the Site Identification Form

Data Required	Instructions
'Stream Name'	Record as shown in the Master Stream Name Database (see S1.M1).
'Stream Code (Unique Code)'	Enter appropriate three character code as per Master Stream Name Database (see S1.M1).
'Site Code'	Assign appropriate code, descriptive of site location (see S1.M1).
'Year'	Include all four digits.
'Sample'	A sample event is one completion of the protocol, regardless of how many days it takes to finish it. A second sample would be a repeat assessment or a sample conducted in a different year.
'Uncorrected UTM Coordinates'	For uncorrected UTM coordinates, record the following number of digits for the UTM coordinates: grid (two), easting (six), northing (seven).
'Latitude' and 'Longitude'	As an alternative to the UTM coordinates, record the latitude and longitude of the site to the nearest second.
'Corrected UTM Coordinates'	Once corrected, record at least the following number of digits for the UTM coordinates: grid (two), easting (six), northing (seven) in the 'Uncorrected UTM Coordinates' boxes. Note decimal places can be added for eastings and northings.
'Source of GIS Stream Layer'	The name of the GIS layer and its origin should be recorded to enable users to address drift issues during applications.

Data Required	Instructions
'Source of Coordinates'	Record the method that was used to obtain the geocoordinates (i.e., GPS unit, GIS, OBM or topographical map).
'Datum of Coordinate Source'	Record the datum of the coordinate source. This is important for addressing drift. (i.e., new NRVIS data should be all in NAD 83).
'Township/Municipality'	Identify the level of government responsible for planning (generally townships in rural areas and municipalities in urban areas).
'Lot' and 'Concession'	Enter the lot and concession in which the site is located.
'MNR District'	Enter the name of the district, not the area office.
'Watershed Code'	Five character code obtained from the provincial list/map. (i.e., 2HD-04).
'Access Route'	Describe the route taken to the site, beginning at a major interchange or reference point. Include distances between turns in rural areas. Remember that the data will also be used to verify the location of the site on a GIS, so record distances, not just 911 addresses.
'Site Description'	Describe the walking route from the parking location to the site and provide a detailed description of landmarks for locating the site (see example in Appendix 1).
'Site Marker Descriptions'	Record the type(s) of markers used, locations, compass bearings, and distances (to the nearest 0.1 m) from the top and bottom of the site.
'Photograph Numbers'	Record the photograph numbers and associated descriptions so photos can be accurately labelled when developed. Use an 'X' if no photos are taken.
'Crew'	First initial and last name of all members of the field crew.
'Recorder'	Name of the person entering the information on the sheet.
'Date'	Record as year/month/day – include the slashes.
'Comments'	Record any other relevant information here, such as the landowner's name and phone number, special requests (i.e. wants to be contacted with results, etc.).
'Site Length'	Record (to the nearest metre) the longitudinal length of the site as measured down the centre of the stream. Not required for modules which are not applied on a geomorphic unit.

3.4 Filling Out the 'Site Features' Form

3.4.1 Identifying the Site Features

For each site feature or landuse activity listed on the 'Site Features' form (Appendix 2), record one of the following options by marking an 'X' in the appropriate box:

- 'Ongoing and Active' there is evidence of the feature at the time of the site visit
- 'Historical Evidence' there are signs that the activity has occurred in the past

- 'No Evidence but Reported' o it has been historically reported, but no obvious physical signs exist
- 'No Evidence' o there is no current or historical evidence of this activity
- 'Unknown' o the feature has not been sufficiently evaluated.

In the 'Comments' field, describe the features and landuses observed. Table 2 lists some indicators for each feature. If the activity is not present, mark the 'No Evidence' box, otherwise it will be assumed that the site was not assessed for this activity. Other features observed near the site should be documented in the 'Comments' field at the bottom of the page.

Table 2: Definitions of Site Feature Attributes

Site feature	Diagnostic Indicators
'Potential Point or Non-point Contaminant Sources'	Look for outlets from storm sewers, tile drains, or industrial discharge pipes. Note any obvious signs of discharge at the site (odour, staining, sheen, etc.).
'Major Nutrient Sources Upstream'	Algal blooms or dense growth of aquatic macrophytes are indicators of upstream nutrient sources. If present, look for potential sources such as sewage treatment plants, processing plants, intensive agricultural operations (e.g., chicken ranches, livestock, feed lots) upstream of the site.
'Channel Hardening or Straightening'	Hardening is indicated by rip-rap or gabion baskets. Straightened channels will often have dredged material piled adjacent to the stream, or will be atypically straight relative to the valley gradient.
'Adjacent Landuses That Destabilize Banks'	This refers to unrestricted access (cattle, horses, humans, etc.) to banks, cutting or trampling of riparian vegetation.
'Sediment Loading or Deprivation'	Evidence of sediment loading: mid channel bars; extended point bars around bends; pools filled with fines; sand dunes in shallow areas. Sediment deprivation can result in either hardening of the streambed (e.g., in high calcium areas), or boulders stacked like dominoes, (umbrication) where there are not enough cementing materials to hold larger particles in place.
'Instream Habitat Modifications'	Debris or material removal, dam construction, habitat enhancement (lunker structures etc.).

Site feature	Diagnostic Indicators
'Barriers and Dams in the Vicinity of the Site'	Often visible from roads or air photos; historical evidence includes elevated floodplains with an atypically flat gradient throughout the reach. There may also be evidence along the banks (e.g., elevated culverts, fallen timbers or old bridges that have been buried).
'High Fishing Pressure'	Heavily packed trails, fishing debris, garbage, etc.
'Log Jam Deflectors'	Fallen trees and woodpiles that are large enough to force water against the bank and cause lateral erosion. Record the number of occurrences within the site.
'Springs or Seeps at the Site'	Abundant watercress in the stream; differences in stream temperature between sections (record temperatures in comments); a rust-coloured deposit on sediments surrounding the groundwater discharge zones in areas with high mineral content.
'Impervious Substrate Limiting Burrowing Depth of Fish'	Exposed bedrock or hardpan (clay) within the site boundaries.
'Other Activities That Could Influence Biota or Habitat'	Any other features not already covered.

3.4.2 Documenting Information Sources

Record the information sources used to collect this data, by marking an 'X' in the appropriate box, as defined in Table 3 below. 'Visual Immediate' observations are mandatory when conducting a survey.

Table 3: Sources of Information

Information Source	Definition
'Visual Immediate'	Observed within 50 m of the site.
'Visual Extended'	Observed beyond 50 m of the site.
'Interview'	Discussion with someone familiar with the landuse history of the site (e.g., landowner).
'Maps/Photos'	Air photos or maps of the area (current and historical).

Record all pertinent information, including contact names and phone numbers and the source of maps and air photos used, in the 'Comments' field.

3.4.3 Recording the Riparian Vegetation Communities

Visually examine the vegetation communities occurring along each bank of the stream. Divide the bank into three zones based on distance from the water as follows: 1.5 to 10 m, 10 to 30 m, and 30 to 100 m. This can be done visually (where obvious) or by measuring the distance to zone boundaries. For each zone on each bank, record the dominant type of vegetation (Table 4) by marking an 'X' in the appropriate box. Record the right and left bank separately.

When the majority of a zone is covered by one vegetation community, this community type is dominant. If it is not obvious which type is dominant, use a measuring tape to sort out conflicts. Note that the classification is hierarchical, ensuring that all riparian zones meet one criterion, only.

Table 4: Types of vegetative communities

Vegetative Community	Description
'None'	Over 75% of the soil has no vegetation.
'Cultivated'	Manicured lawns or actively farmed lands.
'Meadow'	Unmanicured grasses and sedges.
'Scrubland'	Small trees or shrubs interspersed with grasses and sedges (a transitional area between meadow and forest, with trees generally less than 10 cm in diameter at breast height).
'Forest'	Crowns of large trees (greater than 10 cm in diameter at breast height) cover greater than 50% of the canopy.

3.5 Tips for Applying this Module

Site markers should be painted before going into the field.

Make up cue cards that include the site name and orientation of where the photo will be taken in relation to the site (i.e., bottom site 3CDW looking up). These can then be held or placed in each photo to prevent site misidentifications.

Be clear and consistent with the words used to describe locations; use the convention for top, bottom, left and right. Words like close, far, large, small, etc., are ambiguous and confusing.

Make sure that road crossings and access points are clearly and accurately labeled on the site location sketch.

Talk to landowners, anglers, and local conservation officers about the site for more information.

Look for evidence of historical activities (i.e., garbage piles, foundations, fence lines, dredging mounds, tree stumps of similar age). Presence or absence of vegetation types can provide indicators of past landuse (i.e., missing deciduous trees imply grazing, lack of wildflowers implies that rowcrops or hay have been planted).

Following completion of the survey, always check over field sheets for completeness, particularly for the UTM coordinates on the 'Site Identification' form. In addition, have someone else review the field forms and **critically** assess them for clarity and completeness.

4.0 DATA MANAGEMENT

Upon returning from the field;

1. Create a backup hard copy (i.e., photocopy) of field forms, and store in a place separate from the original.
2. Enter the data into a digital storage system, such as HabProgs, and save backup copies that are stored in a separate location from the master copy.

By storing the data digitally in HabProgs, the data can be shared with a large number of users province-wide. Data sharing will facilitate the refinement and development of habitat suitability models, and this will improve habitat management practices and policies.

Appendix 1
Example Site Identification Form

Site Identification Form

Stream Name WILMOT CREEK			Stream Code (Unique Code) WMI			Site Code 3CDW		Year 2000		Sample 1	
Uncorrected Grid (XX) UTM Coordinates	Easting (XXX,XXX) 690485	Northing (X,XXX,XXX) 4867500	OR	Latitude	Deg (15-60)	Min (0-60)	Sec (0-60)	Longitude	Deg (50-75)	Min (0-60)	Sec (0-60)
Corrected Grid (XXX) UTM Coordinates	Easting (XXX,XXX) 690907	Northing (X,XXX,XXX) 4868866	Source of GIS Stream Layer used to correct UTM coordinate data (e.g. NRVIS 2) NRVIS 2								
Source of Coordinates (OBM Map, GPS Unit, Differential GPS) GPS UNIT			Datum of Coordinate Source: (NAD 27, NAD 83, WGS 84) NAD 83						(This can be found on the legends of maps or in set-up of GP3 units)		

Township/Municipality CLARKE	Lot 31	Concession 3	MNR District AURORA	Watershed Code 211D-04
--	------------------	------------------------	-------------------------------	----------------------------------

Access Route

TAKE HWY 115/35 NORTH TO THE 4TH CON. RD. AND DRIVE WEST.
ONCE YOU DRIVE PAST LOCKHART RD YOU WILL CROSS OVER A BRIDGE.
YOU WILL TURN LEFT (SOUTH) INTO A PARKING LOT DIRECTLY AFTER
CROSSING THE BRIDGE. THIS IS THURNE PARK CONSERVATION AUTHORITY.

Site Description

PARK VEHICLE AND WALK DOWN THE PATH TO THE STREAM. WALK
DOWNS TREAM 200 m TO THE TOP OF THE SITE. THE BOTTOM OF THE SITE IS 50 m UPS TREAM OF
THE WILMOT CREEK FISHING CLUB. THERE IS AN OLD FENCE LINE ON THE WEST
BANK AND A FIRE PIT 20 m UPS TREAM FROM THE TOP OF THE SITE ON THE WEST BANK.

Site Marker Description

Downstream Marker

Measure from Stake to Site Bearing (Degrees):	115°	Distance (m.):	22	Photograph Numbers:	Looking Upstream:	17	Looking Downstream:	18
Description: 115 DEGREES, 22 m FROM THE SOUTHEAST CORNER OF BARN TO STREAM. WHITE CEDAR TREE ON EAST BANK HAS RED SPRAY PAINT "B".								

Upstream Marker

Measure from Stake to Site Bearing (Degrees):	275°	Distance (m.):	42.5	Photograph Numbers:	Looking Upstream:	15	Looking Downstream:	16
Description: 275°, 42.5 m FROM A MATURE OAK TREE (75 CM DBH) ON THE EAST SIDE OF THE BANK. THE TREE HAS RED SPRAY PAINT "TOP".								

Crew **J. BEAL, A. CONE** Recorder **S. BYE** Date (YYYY/MM/DD) **2000/08/10**

Comments	LANDOWNER----JONES (905-983-0076)	Site Length (m.) 44.0		
	HIGH ALGAE GROWTH THROUGHOUT STREAM			
	BEATEN TRAILS AND DISCARDED FISHING LINE			
Site Sketch	Draw two sketches on the back of this sheet. First draw a map to the area of the site then draw a sketch of the site. Be sure to include enough detail to ensure that someone could find the site again, including a north arrow and the locations of all markers, as well as the locations of any noted features. The artist should also sign the sketches.	Enter dates and initials when data entered in Computer.		
		Entered	2000/08/10	SB
		Verified	2000/11/1	JB
		Corrected	2000/12/6	LA

Appendix 2

Example Site Features Field Form

It should be noted that this form may also be used to record temperature data (see S5, Water Temperature Assessment) and sample data of this type have been included in this example.

Site Features Form

Stream Name: WILMOT CK	Stream Code: WMI	Site Code: 3CDW	Year: 2000	Sample: 1	Date: (YYYY/MM/DD) 00/08/01
-------------------------------	-------------------------	------------------------	-------------------	------------------	------------------------------------

For each landuse, check off all boxes which apply. Be sure to include comments explaining the particulars, including names and numbers of contacts.

Site Features	Ongoing and Active	Historical Evidence	No Evidence but Reported	No Evidence	Unknown	Comments
Potential Point or Non-point Source Contaminant Sources	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Major Nutrient Sources Upstream	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	VILLAGE OF ORONO SEPTIC BED LEACHATE
Channel Hardening or Straightening	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Adjacent Landuses That Destabilize Banks	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	TRAMPLING BY ANGLERS
Sediment Loading or Deprivation	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	BASE OF BRIDGE ABUTMENT AT BANK HEIGHT
Instream Habitat Modifications	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	HALF LOG STRUCTURES BURIED IN STREAM
Barriers and/or Dams in the Vicinity of the Site	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
High Fishing Pressure	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	WORLD FAMOUS TROUT FISHERY
Log Jam Deflectors	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	4 CROSSLOGS AND 2 LOG JAMS
Springs or Seeps at the Site	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Impervious Substrate Limiting Burrowing Depth of Fish	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	CLAY BED EXPOSED AT SEVERAL LOCATIONS
Other Activities That Could Influence Biota or Habitat	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	

Temperatures	Water Temperature(°C): 19°	Date: 2000/08/01	Time: 16:10	Air Temperature At Same Time (°C): 22°
Maximum Air Temperature (°C): 27°	Source of Maximum Air Temp: ENVIRONMENT CANADA	Maximum Water Temperature(°C): 22°		
Crew: S. BYE, A. CONE	Recorder: J. BEAL			
Comments: OLD STUMPS IN RIPARIAN AREA INDICATE LOGGING IN PAST (PERHAPS 20 YEARS)	Sources of Information: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Visual Immediate, <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Visual Extended, <input type="checkbox"/> Interview, <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Maps/Photos			

Riparian Vegetation Community Only Check one box for each bank and zone

Riparian Zone	Dominant Vegetation Type									
	Left Bank					Right Bank				
	None	Cultivated	Meadow	Scrubland	Forest	None	Cultivated	Meadow	Scrubland	Forest
1.5-10m.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10-30m.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
30-100m.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Entered dates and initial when data entered in computer		
	Date	Init.
Entered	00/08/01	AC
Verified	00/08/01	JB
Corrected	00/08/01	AC

Assessment Procedures for Site Feature Documentation

ONTARIO STREAM ASSESSMENT PROTOCOL

SECTION 1, MODULE 4

Diagnostic Procedures for Site Feature Documentation¹

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0	INTRODUCTION.....	1
2.0	PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES.....	1
2.1	Evaluation of Landscape Conditions	2
2.2	Evaluating Press and Pulse Disturbances	2
2.3	Historical Maps, Photos and Paintings.....	2
2.4	Interviews	3
3.0	FIELD PROCEDURES.....	3
3.1	Searching for Rare Features	3
3.2	Historical and Current Landuse Stressors.....	3
3.3	Documenting Mitigation Techniques	4
3.4	Techniques for Tracking Channel Migration	4
3.5	Recording the Data	4
3.6	Tips for Applying this Module.....	4
4.0	DATA MANAGEMENT	5
5.0	LITERATURE CITED.....	5

¹ Author: L.W. Stanfield

1.0 INTRODUCTION

This module provides an expanded process for evaluating the current and historical landuses and local features that potentially influence the biophysical properties at a site and should therefore be applied in conjunction with the other modules in this section (i.e., S1.M1, Defining Site Boundaries and Key Identifiers, S1.M2, Screening Level Site Documentation, and S1.M3, Assessment Procedures for Site Feature Documentation). Users can adapt this approach to meet their specific needs.

The approach used in this module is an adaptation of the Watershed Report Card (2000). Local features that are critical to biota are identified. Techniques for evaluating past disturbances (i.e., presses such as landuse and pulses such as weather or fire events) that might affect site conditions are provided. Surveyors are directed to document mitigation techniques used by landowners. Finally, standard procedures (Newbury and Gaboury 1993) to monitor channel movement have been adapted for use in this module.

The objective of this module is to describe the common processes and features that influence streams and to identify characteristics that will provide information on the origin of the stressors.

2.0 PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES

The time required to evaluate channel migration patterns is approximately 30 minutes. A challenge for users of diagnostic assessments is to balance sampling effort with the likelihood of drawing an inaccurate conclusion. Therefore, each project manager must decide on the level of detail (i.e., hours to weeks) that should be applied by field crews carrying out this module.

Pre-field preparation can vary considerably between projects and may include the following activities:

- an evaluation of landscape features influencing the biophysical conditions at the site
- reading historical accounts of landuse changes and disturbances in the watershed and how they might have influenced the stream
- reviewing historical maps, photos and art from the area
- interviewing long term residents and local authorities from the area

Crews should adhere to safety precautions and requirements set forth by their employers /managers i.e., first aid kit, first aid training, travel plan, buddy system, mobile phone etc.

2.1 Evaluation of Landscape Conditions

Evaluation of landscape features such as the geology, topography, climate and zoogeography (specifically the post glacial dispersal patterns of biota) enables biologists to predict expected conditions at a site². Procedures for conducting these analyses are described in two documents by Kilgour and Stanfield (2001) and Stanfield (2003).

2.2 Evaluating Press and Pulse Disturbances

Permanent landuse changes typically have long lasting (i.e. centuries rather than decades) effects on the biophysical features of a stream and are considered 'presses'. In many situations, the streams adjust transport processes (water and sediment) in response to these historical perturbations. Current conditions reflect impacts from historical and more recent disturbances. For example, sites draining the Oak Ridges Moraine and Norfolk Sand Plains in southern Ontario were denuded of most vegetation and their channels altered by many obstructions by the turn of the century. These factors are still affecting the hydrology and sediment transport regime in these watersheds. Understanding the extent of historical and current landuses in the catchment can improve the ability to deduce stream limiting features.

In other situations, catastrophic changes may have occurred that act as a 'pulse' to change the stream processes. Pulse disturbances may include weather events such as hurricanes, tornadoes, extreme floods, fire etc.

Information on both of these types of disturbances is available from local history books, historical society notes and interviews.

2.3 Historical Maps, Photos and Paintings

Maps and aerial photographs can provide a record of historical conditions. These can be compared to present and reference state conditions to quantify the timing and degree of change.

Early photographs and landscape art also reflect historical conditions of the area. These are often available from long-term landowners, local papers or historical societies.

² The Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources has recently developed a Geographic Information System (GIS) application to collect the landscape data for sites (and segments of streams) and has applied this to the Great Lakes basin. To obtain these data for a study area contact the Water Resources Information Project (WRIP) group in Peterborough or the GIS support staff at the district office.

2.4 Interviews

Long-term residents and resource managers are invaluable sources of information. Detailed notes should be made from interviews and should form part of the historical documentation. Reports should be provided to those interviewed to ensure accuracy.

3.0 FIELD PROCEDURES

After completion of S1.M3 (Assessment Procedures for Site Feature Documentation), expand the field assessment to include the surrounding landscape and additional variables outlined in this module.

3.1 Searching for Rare Features

Search the valleylands upstream and downstream of the site for any of the following features:

- groundwater upwellings (seeps, artesian wells)
- rare or indicator plant and animal species
- rare landform features (outcrops, eskers, terraces, sinks, etc.)
- historically or culturally significant features

Data on these features can be obtained through field surveys, satellite imagery analysis, air photo interpretation, or may also be found in old natural resource agency office records.

3.2 Historical and Current Landuse Stressors

Search the landscape for features indicating a major disturbance at the local level. Some of these features include:

- berms (from dredgings, pond walls, roads or railways)
- building foundations
- signs of clear cutting (tree stumps of similar age or uniformly aged tree stands)
- riparian vegetation dominated by a single species (implies extreme grazing pressure or planting efforts)
- mine tailings or garbage piles
- improper farming or land management practices such as destruction of riparian zones, livestock access, tile drainage within the flood plain etc.

3.3 Documenting Mitigation Techniques

There are many techniques that landowners and resource managers can use to mitigate the effects of poor land and water management. Document the presence and approximate installation year of techniques designed to address:

- sediment transport through the channel³
- overland transport of sediment and water
- riparian vegetation health
- bank stabilization
- woody material in the channel
- instream cover
- alterations to flow regime (particularly flood events)

3.4 Techniques for Tracking Channel Migration

To accurately track the movement of the channel over time, a base station and GPS should be used to accurately record the location of all important features (i.e., site boundaries, station markers, transect locations and channel edges). To create a longitudinal profile of the channel, track the depth and location of the mid-point of the channel through the entire length of the station (see Newbury and Gaboury 1993).

3.5 Recording the Data

In addition to filling out the Site Features form (S1.M3; Appendix 2), it is advised that the data be summarized in a report. The report should illustrate the location of the site on a georeferenced map, describe observations, and the data source. Provide an interpretation of the relative contribution of each feature influencing the biophysical properties of the study area.

Surveyors may wish to rate the extent (area affected by feature) and intensity (or magnitude⁴) of each feature as described in the Watershed Report Card (2000).

3.6 Tips for Applying this Module

Look for any features in the floodplain and channel that look 'out of place' and try to ascertain their origin and potential effects they historically or currently have on the system.

³ Record characteristics such as umbrication (stacking of larger substrate particles in ways that mimic fallen dominoes). This indicates a sediment transport imbalance.

⁴ Examples of high versus low intensity features are feedlots compared to cattle ranges or full bank rip rap compared to rip rap placed on just one or two outside bends.

4.0 DATA MANAGEMENT

Upon returning from the field;

1. Create a backup hard copy (i.e., photocopy) of field forms, and store them in a place separate from the originals.

The HabProgs database does not currently receive these data, however efforts continue to develop a standard storage program so all users can manage these data.

5.0 LITERATURE CITED

Kilgour, B.W. and L. W. Stanfield. 2001. Protocols for Delineating, Characterizing and Classifying Valley Segments. Report prepared by Jacques Whitford Environment Limited for the Regional Municipality of Ottawa-Carleton.

Newbury, R. W. and M. N. Gaboury. 1993. Stream analysis and fish habitat design: A Field Manual. Co-Published by Newbury Hydraulics Ltd., the Manitoba Habitat Heritage Corporation and Manitoba Natural Resources, Gibsons, British Columbia.

Stanfield, L. W. (Ed.). 2003. Guidelines for Designing and Interpreting Stream Surveys: A Compendium Manual to the Ontario Stream Assessment Protocol. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Aquatic Research and Development Section, Picton. Internal Publication.

Watershed Report Card. 2000. Watershed Report Card: Manuals for Community Involvement in Watershed Management. Watershed Report Card Inc., Port Elgin, ON.

ONTARIO STREAM ASSESSMENT PROTOCOL

SECTION 2

Benthic Macroinvertebrate Assessment

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Module Code	Title	Type
S2.M1	Rapid Macroinvertebrate Collections	Screening Surveys
S2.M2	Stationary Kick Survey for Macroinvertebrates	Assessment Surveys
S2.M3	Transect Travelling Kick and Sweep Survey for Macroinvertebrates	Diagnostic Surveys

APPENDICES

- Appendix 1. Bucket Method for Splitting a Sample
- Appendix 2. Identifying Macroinvertebrates

INTRODUCTION

This section describes three sampling methods for benthic macroinvertebrates¹ (benthos). Resulting samples characterize community composition, and can be used in bioassessments that evaluate water quality. Complementary methods for describing physical habitat conditions (depth, velocity and substrate) are also described because this information is often required for bioassessment.

The modules in this section can be applied in most wadeable streams with flowing water.

S2M1: Rapid Macroinvertebrate Collection

This module describes a rapid sampling technique for determining if a site contains large-bodied benthic macroinvertebrates (benthos) that are known to be sensitive to most impacts (based on benthos tolerances to organic pollution²; e.g., Hilsenhoff 1987). Resulting data can be used in reconnaissance surveys as a coarse indicator of water quality conditions.

S2M2: Stationary Kick Survey for Macroinvertebrates

This module describes a stationary kick technique for evaluating the relative abundance of taxonomic groups of benthos from within riffle habitats. This approach can be used to provide a more comprehensive list of taxa than S2.M1, Rapid Macroinvertebrate Collections. If estimating relative abundance of taxa in the riffle and pool habitats of a site is critical to the study design, methods in S2.M3, Transect Travelling Kick and Sweep Survey for Macroinvertebrates, should be used.

S2M3: Transect Travelling Kick and Sweep Survey for Macroinvertebrates

Sampling techniques for determining relative abundance estimates for benthos in the riffle and pool habitats of a site are described. This approach can be used to estimate composition in a meander sequence by generating a composite sample of pools and riffles. This is the standard sampling procedure for the Ontario Benthos Biomonitoring Network.

¹ Benthic macroinvertebrates are animals without backbones that live on the bottom of lakes, rivers, and streams and are visible with the naked eye. They are generally sedentary, exhibit variations in tolerances to ambient water and environmental quality, and are easy to collect.

² Low densities of pollution-sensitive taxa (e.g., mayflies, stoneflies and caddisflies) and an over-abundance of pollution tolerant taxa (e.g., midges, sow bugs and snails) imply a nutrient enriched site.

LITERATURE CITED

Hilsenhoff, W. L. 1987. An improved biotic index of organic stream pollution. Great Lakes Entomologist. 20:31-39.

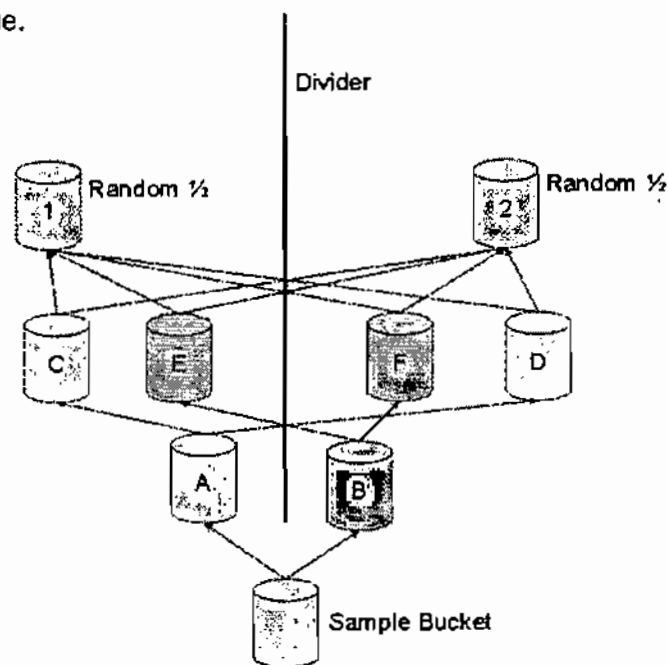
Appendix 1

Bucket Method for Splitting a Sample

Once sampling has been completed, if many more than the required number of animals have been collected, a random portion of the sample can be poured back into the stream to avoid removal of an unnecessarily high number of animals. A method for randomly splitting a sample is given below; for simplicity, the example illustrates how to split a sample into equal halves, but the technique can be modified to allow splitting into different proportions (e.g., quarters or thirds).

Bucket Method for randomly splitting a sample into two equal halves (refer to diagram below):

1. Randomize the sample in the bucket.
2. Place a divider in front of you.
3. Pour half of the randomized sample into bucket (now the sample is split into two buckets). Place one bucket on the left, and one bucket on the right side of the dividing line (positions A and B in diagram).
4. Randomize samples in buckets A and B and pour-off samples (as in step 3); this results in buckets at positions C and D, and E and F, respectively (each contains approximately $1/4^{\text{th}}$ of the original sample).
5. Pour-off contents of buckets at positions C, E, F, and D, (as in step 3), into buckets at positions 1 and 2; this has the effect of splitting the sample down to eighths ($4/8^{\text{th}}$ of the sample on each side of the divider), and then re-combining into one sample on each side of the divider. These final two samples are approximately random halves of the original sample.



Appendix 2

Identifying Macroinvertebrates

The following 'QuickGuide to Major Groups of Freshwater Invertebrates' has been reproduced with permission from 'A Guide to Common Freshwater Invertebrates of North America' (R.J. Voshell, Jr., 2002, The McDonald and Woodward Publishing Company, Blacksburg, Virginia, xiv + 442 pp, ISBN 0-939923-87-4). Technicians and field crews that process benthos samples should be provided with copies of this excellent and reasonably-priced reference (approximately \$30) as it contains additional information and colour plates that will be useful for identifying organisms.

Block 1: All Freshwater Invertebrates

Does it have 3 or more pairs of hard jointed legs?

Does it have a recognizable head, or at least some visible jaws or hooks for feeding?

If the answer to either of these questions is yes, go to **Block 2: Arthropods**

If the answer to both of these questions is no, go to **Chart A: Invertebrates That Are Not Arthropods**

Block 2: Arthropods

How many pairs of hard jointed legs does it have?

If 4 or more, go to **Chart B: Arthropods That Are Not Insects**

If 3 or none, go to **Chart C: Insects**

Chart A: Invertebrates That Are Not Arthropods






Body Texture; Shape	Body Arrangement	Suckers	Hard Shells Enclosing Bodies	Group
Soft; flat from top to bottom and elongate	All areas almost alike, no individual segments or specialized regions	None	None	Flatworms (Phylum Platyhelminthes, Class Turbellaria) 
Muscular; flat from top to bottom and elongate	Many similar segments arranged in a row, no specialized regions	2 on bottom, 1 at front and 1 at rear	None	Leeches (Phylum Annelida, Class Hirudinea) 
Soft; cylindrical and elongate	Many similar segments arranged in a row, no specialized regions	None	None	Aquatic Earthworms (Phylum Annelida, Class Oligochaeta) 
Soft; irregular but not usually visible	Several irregular regions but usually not visible	None	1, usually coiled but sometimes a short broad cone	Snails (Phylum Mollusca, Class Gastropoda) 
Soft; irregular but not usually visible	Several irregular regions but usually not visible	None	2, shaped like shallow bowls, opposite one another and connected by a hinge so that they seal tightly	Mussels, Clams (Phylum Mollusca, Class Bivalvia) 

Chart B: Arthropods That Are Not Insects





Hard Segmented Legs	Antennae	Body Size; Shape	Group
4 pairs	None	Very small, usually 3 mm or less, round, spherical, look like spiders	<p>Water Mites (Order Hydracarina)</p> 
7 pairs, first pair of legs with small claws	2 pairs, 1 pair much longer	Small, 5-20 mm, flattened from top to bottom	<p>Aquatic Sow Bugs (Subphylum Crustacea, Order Isopoda)</p> 
7 pairs, first 2 pairs of legs with small claws	2 pairs; about equal length	Small, 5-20 mm, flattened from side to side	<p>Scuds, Sideswimmers (Subphylum Crustacea, Order Amphipoda)</p> 
5 pairs, first 2 or 3 pairs of legs with claws, first pair of claws sometimes very large	2 pairs, 1 pair much longer	Large, usually 25-150 mm; mostly cylindrical	<p>Crayfishes, Shrimps (Subphylum Crustacea, Order Decapoda)</p> 

Chart C: Insects


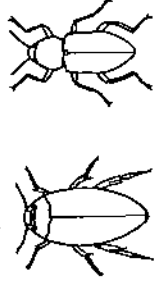

Mouthparts	Wings on Thorax	Hard Segmented Legs; Claws	Gills	Structures on End of Abdomen; Other Features	Group; Stage
1 sharp pointed beak or 1 blunt cone	Fully developed (capable of flying), reduced, developing in wing pads, or none	3 pairs; 2 claws	None	None or pair of elongate breathing straps or tubes	<p>True Bugs; Adults and Larvae (Order Hemiptera)</p> 
2 opposing jaws	Fully developed (capable of flying), front wings greatly modified into thick and protective covers	3 pairs; 2 claws	None	None	<p>Water Beetles; Adults (Order Coleoptera)</p> 
2 opposing jaws, also a large, elbowed lower lip with 2 hooks on end, lower lip folded under head at rest	Wing pads (developing wings) present but hard to distinguish on young larvae	3 pairs; 2 claws	Damselflies have 3 leaf-like gills on end of abdomen, dragonflies have none	Damselflies have 3 leaf-like gills, dragonflies have none	<p>Dragonflies, Damselflies; Larvae (Order Odonata)</p> 

Chart C: Insects (continued)

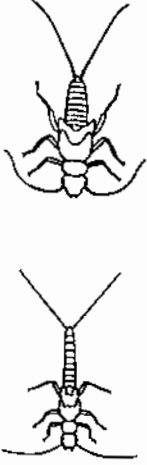



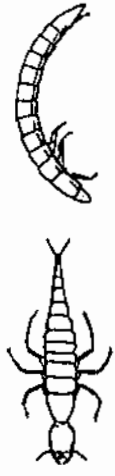
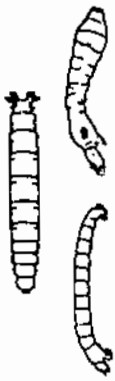
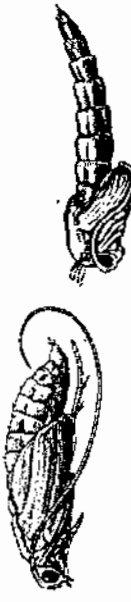
Mouthparts	Wings on Thorax	Hard, Segmented Legs; Claws	Gills	Structures on End of Abdomen; Other Features	Group; Stage
2 opposing jaws	Wing pads (developing wings) present but hard to distinguish on young larvae	3 pairs; 2 claws	Single or branched filaments on bottom of thorax or none	All have 2 tails	Stoneflies; Larvae (Order Plecoptera) 
2 opposing jaws	Wing pads (developing wings) present but hard to distinguish on young larvae	3 pairs; 1 claw	Flat plates or filaments on at least some of abdomen segments	Most have 3 tails but a few have 2 tails	Mayflies; Larvae (Order Ephemeroptera) 
2 opposing jaws, protrude conspicuously in front of head	No wings or wing pads (developing wings)	3 pairs; 2 claws	Slender pointed gills on sides of abdomen, some also have tufts of filaments on bottom of abdomen	2 short fleshy projections with 2 claws on each or 1 long tapering tail	Dobsonflies, Fishflies, Alderflies; Larvae (Order Megaloptera) 
2 opposing jaws	No wings or wing pads (developing wings)	3 pairs; 1 claw	Finger-like on abdomen or none	2 short fleshy projections with 1 claw on each or just 2 claws; most kinds live in portable case or attached retreat (collecting destroys retreats)	Caddisflies; Larvae (Order Trichoptera) 

Chart C: Insects (continued)

Mouthparts	Wings on Thorax	Hard Segmented Legs; Claws	Gills	Structures on End of Abdomen; Other Features	Group; Stage
2 opposing jaws	No wings or wing pads (developing wings)	3 pairs; 1 or 2 claws	Most with none, some with small tufts of filaments on bottom or end of abdomen	Most with none; some with 2 tails	<p>Water Beetles; Larvae (Order Coleoptera)</p> 
2 opposing jaws or 2 vertical hooks (like snake fangs)	No wings or wing pads (developing wings)	None	A few finger-like gills on various parts of body, or none	Various lobes, finger-like projections, pointed filaments, or 1 very long breathing tube	<p>True Flies; Larvae (Order Diptera)</p> 
None or not visible if present	Wing pads (developing wings) present	3 pairs held very close to body; claws not visible	Finger-like on abdomen, filaments on thorax, paddles on end of abdomen, or none	Some with paddle-like gills or 2 short tails; some common kinds in 2 orders have aquatic pupae, difficult to distinguish, both resemble mummies	<p>Caddisflies, True Flies; Pupae (Orders Trichoptera, Diptera)</p> 

ONTARIO STREAM ASSESSMENT PROTOCOL

SECTION 2, MODULE 1

Rapid Macroinvertebrate Collections¹

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0	INTRODUCTION.....	1
2.0	PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES.....	1
3.0	FIELD PROCEDURES.....	2
3.1	Locating the Collection Area	2
3.2	Documenting Collection Area Habitat Conditions	2
3.3	Evaluating Invertebrate Communities	4
3.3.1	Sampling Procedures for Cobble Areas	4
3.3.2	Sampling Procedures for Sand and Gravel Areas	4
3.3.3	Data Recording	6
3.3.4	Criteria for Additional Sampling	6
3.4	Tips for Applying this Module.....	7
4.0	DATA MANAGEMENT	7
5.0	LITERATURE CITED.....	7

APPENDICES

Appendix 1. Example Benthic Macroinvertebrates Field Form

¹ Author: L. W. Stanfield and C. Jones

1.0 INTRODUCTION

This module describes a rapid assessment technique for determining if a site contains sensitive large-bodied benthic macroinvertebrates (benthos). Results from these surveys can be used in reconnaissance surveys as a coarse indicator of water quality conditions, based on Hilsenhoff's (1987) invertebrate tolerances to organic pollution². The procedures are comparable to those described in the Watershed Report Card (2000).

2.0 PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES

This module requires a crew of two people and data collection can be completed in 10 minutes.

Pre-field activities should include:

- Landowner contact
- Documentation of site access and appropriate stream identifiers (see Section 1)
- Equipment check

For this protocol, the following equipment is required:

1. Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Forms (preferably on waterproof paper)
2. Pencils
3. Forceps
4. Sampling net (i.e., D-net, kick-net (see S2.M2, Stationary Kick Survey for Macroinvertebrates), large aquarium net, etc.)
5. Magnifying glass
6. White sorting tray and kitchen sieve
7. Metre Stick (wooden)
8. Waders

Crews should adhere to safety precautions and requirements set forth by their employers /managers i.e., first aid kit, first aid training, travel plan, buddy system, mobile phone etc.

² In most stony streams, low densities of pollution-sensitive taxa (e.g., mayflies, stoneflies and caddisflies) and an overabundance of pollution tolerant taxa (e.g., midges, sow bugs and snails) imply a nutrient enriched site.

3.0 FIELD PROCEDURES

This module should be completed in conjunction with S1.M1, Defining Site Boundaries and Key Identifiers and S1.M2, Screening Level Site Documentation. Additional information required depends on the objectives of the study and resources available. If the objective of the study is to assess differences among sites, surveys should be conducted over reasonably short periods of time and within similar physiographic and climatic zones. Benthic surveys must be conducted either before electrofishing the site or at least two weeks afterwards. Begin the survey at the downstream (bottom) end of the site and if additional sampling is required, select subsequent collection areas that are upstream.

3.1 Locating the Collection Area

At each site, samples will be collected from a riffle. In most stream types, riffles occur at crossovers and it is in these areas that sensitive taxa should be present. Under low flow conditions, riffles are areas of relatively fast, turbulent flow, where the water's surface is typically broken and has an obvious slope.

3.2 Documenting Collection Area Habitat Conditions

Record the 'Stream Name', 'Stream Code', 'Site Code', 'Sample #', 'Collection Area' (i.e., 1 or 2), 'Habitat Sampled', and 'Date' on the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form (see Appendix 1). Samples are consecutively numbered within a calendar year. Mark an 'X' in the box titled 'Rapid Survey'.

On the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form measure and record the following:

- maximum water depth ('Water Depth' (mm)); at the maximum depth within the collection area, place the ruler so that the thin side is facing into the current, ensuring that the ruler is straight and that it does not dig into the substrate. Measure the height of water from the mid-point of the ruler (in higher velocity areas, the water will differ in height between the upstream and downstream edges of the ruler). Water depth measurements can be either recorded as observed (i.e., 18 mm) or can be rounded to the nearest 5 mm (i.e., 20 mm), whichever is easier for the crews. The accuracy of these measures is considered to be 5 mm for all interpretations.
- 'Hydraulic Head (mm)' is measured at the same location as the maximum water depth; place the wooden ruler so that it is vertical and the **wide side with the markings is on the downstream side** (Figure 1). The ruler will create a barrier to flow causing the water to climb the upstream side of the ruler. Avoid standing in front or too close behind

the ruler as this can obstruct the flow. The height the water climbs is referred to as the hydraulic head. If there is no difference in water level between the front and back of the ruler then hydraulic head is 0, indicating very low velocity. If a difference in height is observed, then measure the height difference between the front and back of the ruler (Figure 1). Measure the maximum height difference observed over a 3-5 second period. Record the hydraulic head to the nearest 5 mm in the box marked 'Hydraulic Head (mm)' on the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form. It may be easier to use a pencil or finger to mark the locations on the ruler and then measure the differences out of the water. At higher velocities, there will be greater variability in the height differential (i.e., the hydraulic head will pulse up and down). Where the water depth is greater than 1 m, brace the ruler on your toe or knee and record the hydraulic head.

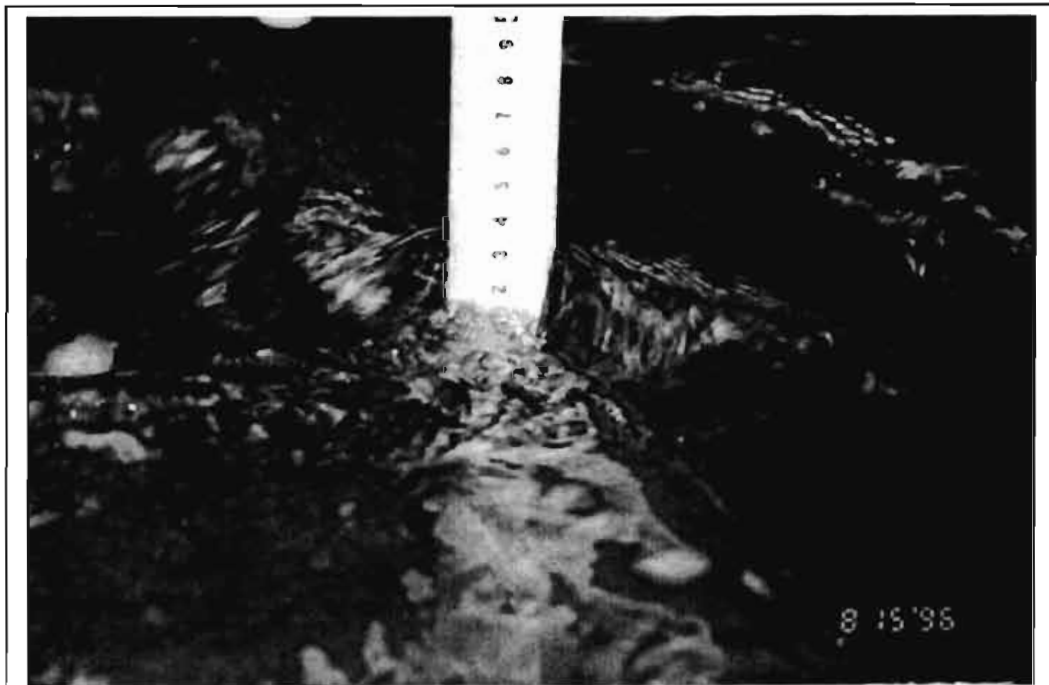


Figure 1: A Point Measurement of Hydraulic Head.

The upstream reading is measured as 35 mm, the downstream as 16 mm, therefore the hydraulic head is 19 mm, which should be recorded as 20 mm (rounded to nearest 5 mm).

3.3 Evaluating Invertebrate Communities

To determine the sampling procedures, assess which bed type most appropriately describes the riffle:

- **cobble areas** have at least 10 particles with a median axis > 100 mm within the riffle
- **sand and gravel areas** have less than 10 particles with a median axis > 100mm

3.3.1 Sampling Procedures for Cobble Areas

In the riffle area, randomly select a cobble particle (> 100 mm) and scan for benthos. Identify all animals using either the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form, S2.Appendix 2: Identifying Macroinvertebrates or Voshell (2002). Record the abundance of organisms as per Section 3.3.3 Data Recording. Measure and record the median axis of the particle in the substrate box on the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form (Appendix 1). Repeat this across the entire riffle until 10 particles have been scanned for benthos and the particle size measured.

Measure and record 'Stream Width (m)' which is the wetted width of the stream (i.e., subtract the width of islands and include undercuts), to the nearest tenth of a metre.

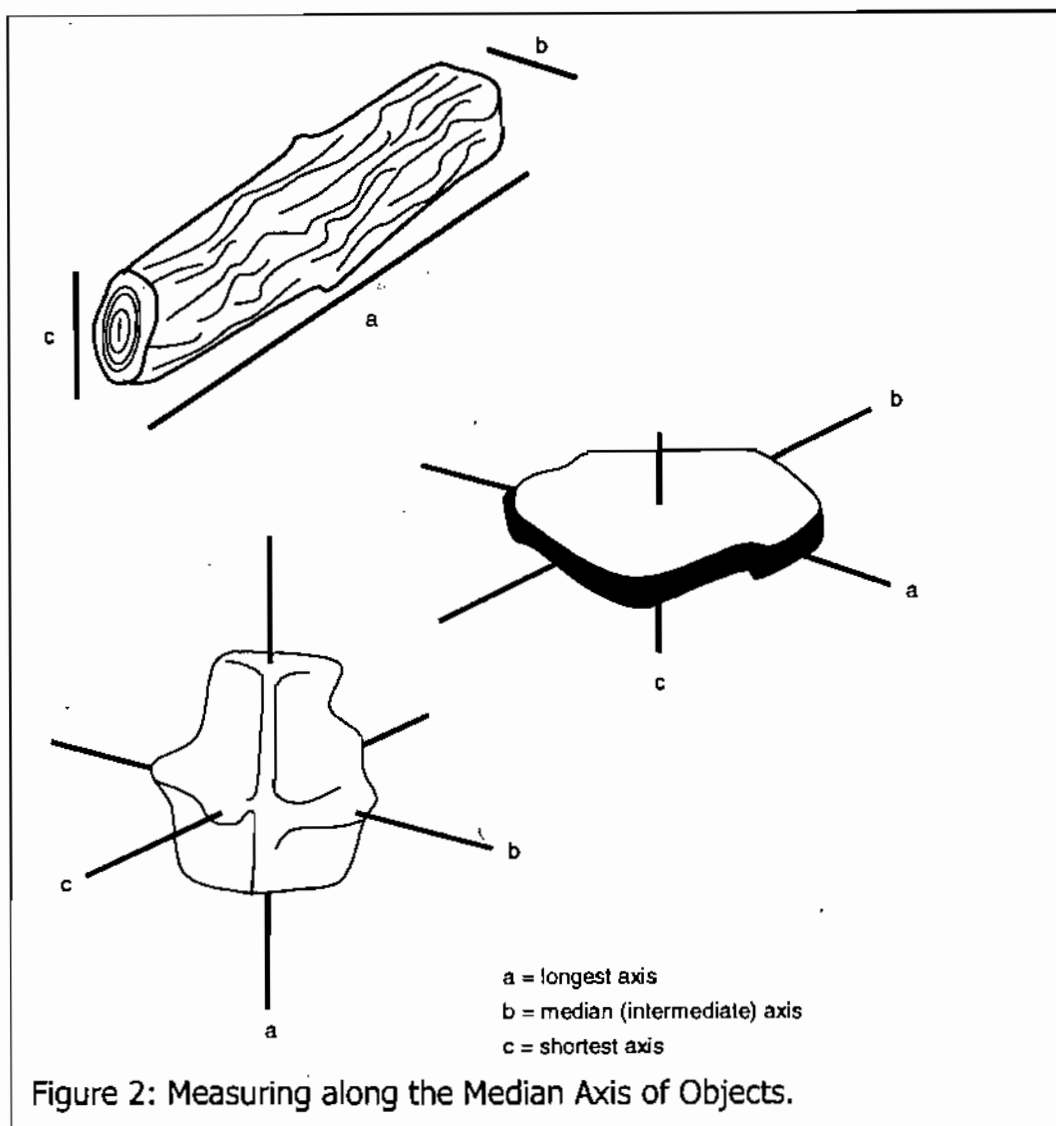
Median Axis

There are three axes to every particle. The median axis represents the intermediate width of any particle (Figure 2). Rocks will often lie with the median axis at right angles to the flow.

3.3.2 Sampling Procedures for Sand and Gravel Areas

Place a kick-net or a D-net on the substrate and while standing upstream, kick the substrate over an area of approximately 1 m², for 20 seconds to dislodge invertebrates. If a smaller net is used (i.e., large aquarium net), kick the substrate for 20 seconds to dislodge invertebrates while sweeping the net in the water column to capture benthos and materials as they drift downstream. Pick up the net and transfer the contents into a flat white-bottomed tray for sorting. Identify all animals using either the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form, S2.Appendix 2: Identifying Macroinvertebrates or Voshell (2002). Record the abundance of organisms as per Section 3.3.3 Data Recording.

Identify the 'Net Type' used by circling the appropriate choice on the field form and also indicate the 'Mesh Size'.



After the identification of benthos is complete, randomly select 10 particles from within the area sampled. Record the size according to the classifications in Table 1, or if the median axis of the particle is between 2 mm and 1000 mm, record the actual measurement.

Table 1: Substrate Descriptions and Size Categories

Material	Description	Size to be Recorded
'Unconsolidated Clay'	Very hard packed when dry and sticky when wet	'0.01'
'Consolidated Clay'	Hard even when wet, slippery, grey in colour, often laminated	'0.011'

Rapid Macroinvertebrate Collections

Material	Description	Size to be Recorded
'Silt'	Feels soft like a powder or flour	'0.05'
'Sand'	Gritty, sizes >0.05 and < 2 mm	'0.10'
'Bedrock'	Exposed bedrock	'1111'
Measured particles	Between 2 mm and 1000 mm³	Median axis
'Large Boulders'	> 1000 mm but not attached to bedrock	'1001'

Note that large material (i.e., greater than 1000 mm wide) such as concrete slabs, etc., are classified as 'Large Boulders'. To ensure accuracy of data entry, place a '0' in front of all decimal points (i.e., '0.01'). **Be sure to measure all particles in your random sub-sample that are close to 2 mm in diameter to avoid misclassifying small particles.**

Measure and record 'Stream Width (m)' which is the wetted width of the stream (i.e., subtract the width of islands and include undercuts), to the nearest tenth of a metre.

3.3.3 Data Recording

The objective is to classify the numbers of organisms into the three abundance classes: 1 (< 10 %) (low abundance) 2 (10–40 %) (common), or 3 (> 40 %) (highly abundant). For taxa that display low abundances, count the number of macroinvertebrates observed using the dot tally method on the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form. Estimate the numbers for taxa that are common/highly abundant; record on the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form.

Determine the relative abundance (number of individuals in each taxon/total number of individuals collected) for each taxon and assign into one of the three abundance classes. Record the abundance classes³ in each taxon box on the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form.

3.3.4 Criteria for Additional Sampling

If the samples from the first collection area indicate potentially impaired water quality (i.e., low numbers or absence of stoneflies, mayflies or caddisflies), move to another riffle in the site and continue sampling to confirm the results. Record the data from the second collection area on a new field form. Identify these as 'Collection Area' '1' or '2', as appropriate. Note that if sampling is repeated at the site throughout the year, record the 'Sample #' sequentially.

³ Circle the classification (i.e., abundance grouping) to prevent confusion with other numbers.

3.4 Tips for Applying this Module

Mayfly gills insert dorso-laterally on the abdomen; stoneflies have less obvious gills which are located on other parts of the body (e.g., thorax, underside of abdomen, underside of the head).

Check casings for the presence of caddisflies. Count only caddisflies, not empty cases.

Learn to characterize the organisms by their mode of movement: swimming, crawling or flexing, as this can help identify many of the taxa.

If a net is used to collect macroinvertebrates, there must be sufficient flow to enable dislodged animals to be carried into the net for capture. The net should be rinsed well between samples to prevent transfer of animals from one sample to another.

4.0 DATA MANAGEMENT

Upon returning from the field;

1. Create a backup hard copy (i.e., photocopy) of field forms, and store in a place separate from the original.
2. Enter the data into a digital storage system, such as HabProgs, and save backup copies in a separate location from the master copy.

By storing the data digitally in HabProgs, the data can be shared with a large number of users province-wide. Data sharing will facilitate the refinement and development of habitat suitability models, and this will improve habitat management practices and policies.

5.0 LITERATURE CITED

Hilsenhoff, W. L. 1987. An improved biotic index of organic stream pollution. *Great Lakes Entomologist*. 20:31-39.

Voshell Jr., J.R. 2002. *A Guide to Common Freshwater Invertebrates of North America*. McDonald and Woodward Publishing Company, Blacksburg, Virginia. 442 pp.





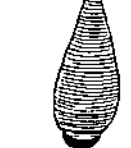

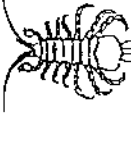
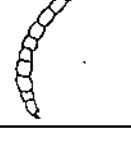
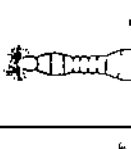

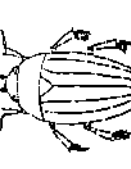




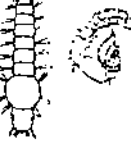
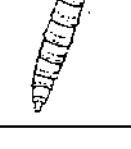
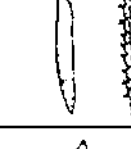







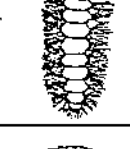

Watershed Report Card. 2000. *Watershed Report Card: Manuals for Community Involvement in Watershed Management*. Watershed Report Card Inc., Port Elgin, ON.

Appendix 1

Example Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form

Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form

Stream Name		WILMOT CREEK		Date (YYYY/MM/DD)		2000/08/10		No. of Bottles		U		Sample Preserved?		Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/>		Identified in (circle):		Field <input type="checkbox"/> Lab <input type="checkbox"/>		Median sizes of		<table border="1"> <tr><td>17</td><td>0.10</td></tr> <tr><td>25</td><td>12</td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>18</td></tr> <tr><td>35</td><td>0.01</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>10</td></tr> </table>		17	0.10	25	12	5	18	35	0.01	4	10
17	0.10																																
25	12																																
5	18																																
35	0.01																																
4	10																																
Stream Code:		W(11)		Water Depth (mm.)		120		Habitat Sampled (circle)		Riffle		Rapid Survey		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		Stationary Kick Survey		<input type="checkbox"/>		Mesh Size (microns)		251-500											
Sample #:		1		Stream width (m)		4.3		Pool		<input type="checkbox"/>		Sorting Method (circle)		Unsorted		Marchant Box		<input type="checkbox"/>		Spillier		501-1000											
Silt Code:		3CDW		Sampling Time (sec)		55		Size of Kick Sample Collected (ml or gm)		Total: _____		Portion not picked:		Square _____		Sieve _____		<input type="checkbox"/>		Other _____													
Collection Area:		1		Hydraulic Head (mm.)				Net Type (circle):		Square		Sieve		Other																			

	0.4 - 3.0 mm			1 - 100 mm			1 - 100 mm		2 - 10 mm		5 - 100 mm		5 - 20 mm		5 - 300 mm		2 - 20 mm		3 - 15 mm					
	15 - 40 mm			2 - 40 mm			25 - 90 mm		15 - 45 mm		10 - 26 mm		3 - 13 mm		2 - 50 mm		15 - 40 mm		Misc. Diptera (Misc. True Flies)					
	3 - 28 mm	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		3 - 28 mm	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		5 - 50 mm		2 - 50 mm		2 - 70 mm		2 - 250 mm		10 - 150 mm		10 - 25 mm		2 - 5 mm	Hydra (Coelenterates)				

Dot Tally, keep track of total number sampled

Crew Members: _____

Comments, check box if more on back: _____

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
GRAVEL RIFFLE										GRAVEL RIFFLE												
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
R. YAN, K. SALAR										R. YAN, K. SALAR												
Date										Date												
Init.										Init.												
Enl.										Enl.												
Ver.										Ver.												
L.S.										L.S.												
M.S.										M.S.												
M.S.										M.S.												

ONTARIO STREAM ASSESSMENT PROTOCOL

SECTION 2, MODULE 2

Stationary Kick Survey for Macroinvertebrates¹

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0	INTRODUCTION.....	1
2.0	PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES.....	1
3.0	FIELD PROCEDURES.....	2
3.1	Locating the Collection Areas.....	2
3.2	Documenting Collection Area Habitat Conditions.....	3
3.3	Obtaining the Invertebrate Sample.....	4
3.4	Preparing the Sample for Processing.....	6
3.5	Processing the Sample.....	6
3.5.1.1	Live or Preserved.....	6
3.5.1.2	Picking the Sample.....	6
3.6	Determining the Percent of Sample Processed.....	8
3.7	Recording Substrate Size and Stream Width.....	8
3.8	Tips for Applying this Module.....	9
4.0	DATA MANAGEMENT.....	10
5.0	LITERATURE CITED.....	11

APPENDICES

Appendix 1. Example Benthic Macroinvertebrates Sample Form

¹ Authors: Stanfield, L. W. and B. Kilgour

1.0 INTRODUCTION

This module describes a stationary kick technique for estimating the relative abundance of benthic invertebrate (benthos) taxa from riffle habitats. Results from these surveys can be used in bioassessments or as indicators of water quality conditions. This sampling method is more quantitative than that of S2.M1, Rapid Macroinvertebrate Collections. If estimating relative abundance of taxa in the riffle and pool habitats of a site is critical to the study design, use S2.M3, Transect Travelling Kick and Sweep Survey for Macroinvertebrates.

Several options are provided for sample processing; sub-sampling procedures, processing location, detail of identification etc. These options allow practitioners to tailor their collection and processing methods to suit their expertise, resources and study design (Stanfield 2003, Jones et al. 2004).

This technique requires that there be sufficient flow to enable dislodged animals to be carried into the net for capture.

2.0 PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES

This module requires a crew of two people and data collection can be completed in 15 min. The time required for sample processing is quite variable.

Pre-field activities should include:

- Landowner contact
- Documentation of site access and appropriate stream identifiers (see Section 1)
- Equipment check

For this protocol, the following equipment is required:

1. Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Forms (preferably on waterproof paper)
2. Pencils
3. Net – constructed out of 60 x 110 cm – 1000 μ m window screening stapled to two pieces of wood (doweling or hockey stick) to make a 60 x 100 cm net
4. Metre stick (wooden)
5. Nalgene™ squirt bottle and soft brush
6. Fine tweezers (2 pairs)
7. Eye droppers (at least 2, a variety of sizes is preferable)
8. White sorting trays (2)

9. Plastic spoon (tea- or table-spoon, either size)
10. Pail or deep tray (2 L capacity)
11. Sample bottles (1 L)
12. Watch, with seconds indicator
13. Preservative solution for specimens (i.e. alcohol)
14. Labels or permanent marker
15. Weigh scale or measuring cup.
16. Waders
17. Buckets
18. Splitting devices (multiple buckets or containers with a wedge/plate insert)

Additional equipment for sample processing includes:

19. Microscope or magnifying glass
20. Marchant Box (optional)
21. Sorting trays or Petri dishes

Crews should adhere to safety precautions and requirements set forth by their employers /managers i.e., first aid kit, first aid training, travel plan, buddy system, mobile phone etc.

Optional equipment includes a sample splitter, a device (e.g., a multi-probe) for measuring water quality variables (e.g., dissolved oxygen, pH, conductivity, and dissolved organic carbon) etc.

3.0 FIELD PROCEDURES

This module should be completed in conjunction with S1.M1, Defining Site Boundaries and Key Identifiers and S1.M2, Screening Level Site Documentation. Additional information required depends on the objectives of the study and resources available. Benthic surveys must be conducted either before electrofishing the site or at least two weeks afterwards. Begin the survey at the downstream (bottom) end of the site and continue upstream.

3.1 Locating the Collection Areas

In most stream types, riffles occur at crossovers. Under low flow conditions, riffles are areas of relatively fast, turbulent flow, where the water's surface is typically broken and has an obvious slope.

Since most sites will contain multiple riffles, two riffle areas should be selected as follows:

- riffles at crossovers
- where depth, velocity and substrate permit easy sample collection

Once the riffles have been selected, the collection area is placed close to the center (both laterally and longitudinally) of each riffle, avoiding areas that contain large material, such as large logs or rocks, that would interfere with sample collection.

If there is no discernible riffle, collect the samples at the crossovers.

The following procedures (i.e., sections 3.2 to 3.6) must be repeated at each riffle collection area.

3.2 Documenting Collection Area Habitat Conditions

Record the 'Stream Name', 'Stream Code', 'Site Code', 'Sample #', 'Collection Area' (i.e., 1 or 2), 'Habitat Sampled', and 'Date' on the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form (see Appendix 1). Samples are consecutively numbered within a calendar year. Mark an 'X' in the box titled 'Stationary Kick and Sweep', identify the 'Net Type' by circling 'Square', and the 'Mesh Size' by circling '501-1000 μm ' mesh size.

On the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form measure and record the following:

- maximum water depth ('Water Depth' (mm)); at the maximum depth within the collection area, place the ruler so that the thin side is facing into the current, ensuring that the ruler is straight and that it does not dig into the substrate. Measure the height of water from the mid-point of the ruler (in higher velocity areas, the water will differ in height between the upstream and downstream edges of the ruler). Water depth measurements can be either recorded as observed (i.e., 18 mm) or can be rounded to the nearest 5 mm (i.e., 20 mm), whichever is easier for the crews. The accuracy of these measures is considered to be 5 mm for all interpretations.
- 'Hydraulic Head (mm)' is measured at the same location as the maximum water depth; at this location, place the wooden ruler so that it is vertical and the **wide side with the markings is on the downstream side** (Figure 1). The ruler will create a barrier to flow causing the water to climb the upstream side of the ruler. Avoid standing in front or too close behind the ruler as this can obstruct the flow. The height the water climbs is referred to as the hydraulic head. If there is no difference in water level between the front and back of the ruler then hydraulic head is 0, indicating very low velocity. If a difference in height is observed, then measure the height difference between the front and back of the ruler (Figure 1). Measure the maximum height difference observed over

a 3-5 second period. Record the hydraulic head to the nearest 5 mm in the box marked 'Hydraulic Head (mm)' on the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form. It may be easier to use a pencil or finger to mark the locations on the ruler and then measure the differences out of the water. At higher velocities, there will be greater variability in the height differential (i.e., the hydraulic head will pulse up and down). Where the water depth is greater than 1 m, brace the ruler on your toe or knee and record the hydraulic head.

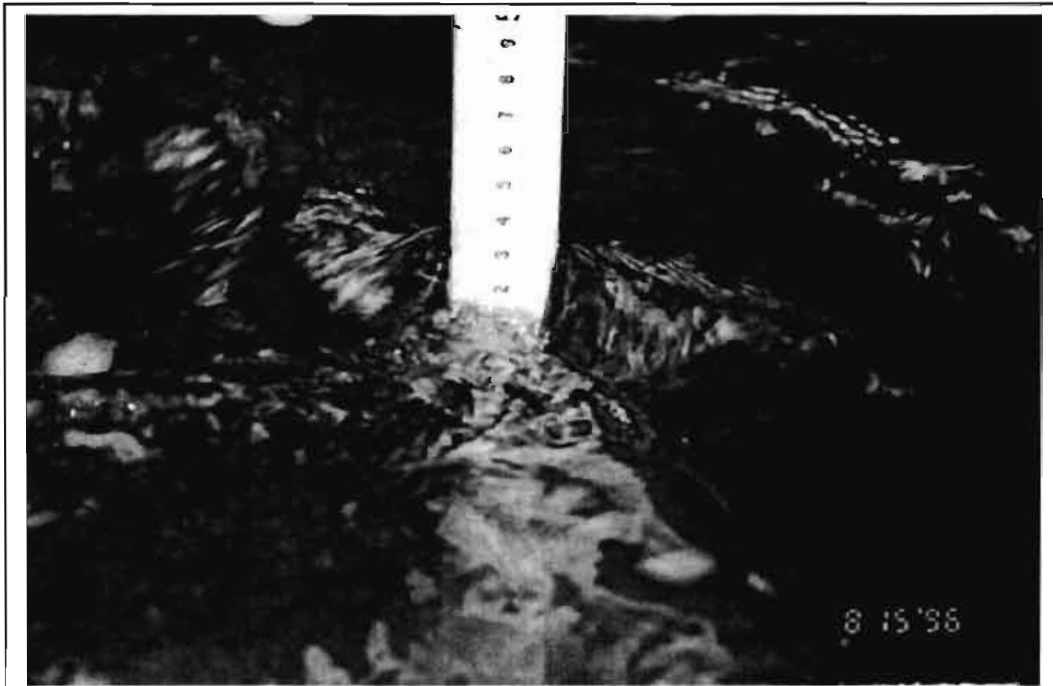


Figure 1: A Point Measurement of Hydraulic Head.

The upstream reading is measured as 35 mm, the downstream as 16 mm, therefore the hydraulic head is 19 mm, which should be recorded as 20 mm (rounded to nearest 5 mm).

3.3 Obtaining the Invertebrate Sample

Place the sampling net on the stream bottom so that gaps are minimized and orient the net at a slight incline (i.e., approximately 70° from the stream bottom) (Figure 2). The second person kicks the substrate to a depth of ~5 cm for **one minute** over an area of approximately **1 m²**. After kicking, pick up the largest particles in the collection area, hold them in front of the sampling net and rub them to dislodge any visible invertebrates (Figure 2). Do this for one minute.



Figure 2: Orientation of the Net and Collection of Benthos from Large Particles.

Pick up the bottom of the net so that the current keeps the material on the sampling net. Bring the two poles together to form a cradle and carry the net to shore. Place a finger between the two poles and pinch the net at both ends. Splash the material on the net to the bottom of the cradle and empty the contents of the sampling net into a bucket. Use a soft brush or other device to remove the benthos. Ensure that no animals remain on the sampling net by rinsing it (Figure 3). Large organic debris (leaves, macrophytes, etc.) may be rinsed, inspected and discarded after removing any macroinvertebrates, adding these to the bucket.



Figure 3: Sample Collection and Processing (in the field).

Stationary Kick Survey for Macroinvertebrates

3.4 Preparing the Sample for Processing

Weigh or measure the total sample and record as 'Total' under 'Size of Kick Sample Collected (ml or gm)'. Since this measure is used to determine the relative portion of the sample that was identified, the water can be decanted or included in the weight/volume measurement depending on the option selected for processing the benthos sample (i.e., preserved or live). However, it is critical that the sample be measured in the same state (e.g., water decanted versus water not decanted), prior to and after processing.

After weighing or measuring the total sample, if clearly more than 500 animals were collected, randomly split the sample using the methods outlined in S2.Appendix 1: Bucket Method for Splitting a Sample. The volume or weight of the portion discarded should be noted on the back of the field form, so that the total 'Portion Not Picked' can be determined later.

3.5 Processing the Sample

There are a number of options available for processing the benthos sample. The study design will dictate which of the following options are selected:

- preserved or live
- laboratory or field picking
- Marchant box or spoon sub-sampling
- use of a microscope or no use of a microscope
- taxonomic level desired
- specimen archiving or discarding

3.5.1.1 Live or Preserved

If the sample is to be preserved, it should be transferred to a labelled container and enough preserving solution should be added to cover the animals. Seal the jar tightly and swirl gently to ensure all the sample gets mixed with the preserving solution. Each jar is labelled with a stream name, site code, the collection area number, the number of sample jars taken, the date, and the type of preserving solution used (usually alcohol). Place a label both on the lid of the jar and inside the jar (i.e., ideally on waterproof paper, with pencil). If the sample will be processed live, add water and keep the sample cool until it is processed. Live samples should be processed within 48 hours.

3.5.1.2 Picking the Sample

If a Marchant box (i.e., Marchant 1989) is being used and the sample has been preserved, rinse the sample with water and transfer to the box. Otherwise, gently stir the collected material and

take a random sub-sample by collecting one spoonful of material. Put the sub-sample into a sorting tray. Add clean water to the tray.

Marchant Box Method

The standard sub-sampling box is a modified Marchant design consisting of an approximately 27 x 27 x 15 cm box that is divided into 100 cells and has a water tight lid. Wash the sample from the sieve into the Marchant Box and fill with water to a depth just below the height of the walls dividing the cells. Water depth is important. In the case of live samples, water deeper than the dividing walls will allow animals to swim between the cells once the contents have been randomized. Less water will make it difficult to distribute the sample among the 100 cells. Close and fasten the lid. Invert and gently mix the sample with side-to-side rocking motions. Right the box quickly and set on a level surface to let contents settle into cells. Using random numbers for the 10 columns and 10 rows, randomly select one or more cells and transfer contents to a suitable container or Petri dish using a pipette (or turkey baster), vacuum pump or aspirator and suction flask, or similar method.

The cell-extraction method used for Marchant sub-sampling strongly influences sample-processing time. Consider the costs of more sophisticated equipment such as aspirators, pumps, suction flasks, and tubing in relation to the improved efficiency resulting from their use. Using an aspirator and suction flask may be the best balance between minimal cost and extraction efficiency.

Pick out organisms one-at-a-time using either fine tweezers or an eyedropper. Identify each organism to the taxonomic level desired using either the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form, S2.Appendix 2: Identifying Macroinvertebrates, Voshell (2002), or other published keys. Record the abundance on the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form or a customized tally sheet².

If the sample will be processed live, add water and keep the sample cool until it is processed. Live samples should be processed within 48 hours. If samples are to be archived, place the identified organisms into one or more sample jars that contain 70% alcohol. The sub-sample is considered adequately 'picked' when no more animals are found in one to three minutes.

Animals that cannot be identified should not be included in the tally. They should be set aside and identified by an expert. To be counted, a specimen must have enough intact body parts to permit its identification and it must have a head. Larval husks and empty shells and cases are not counted.

² If identification below Order level is desired, a customized tally sheet will need to be developed.

Continue processing sub-samples until 100 animals have been picked or the whole sample has been searched. **Pick the entire sub-sample that contains the 100th animal;** this ensures that the samples are not biased towards larger animals.

***Example:** One spoonful of material provided 50 organisms. A second spoonful provided 62 organisms. The sampling can be terminated after the second spoonful has been processed because more than 100 organisms were found in the two complete sub-samples.*

On the field form, circle 'Field' or 'Lab' depending on the location where benthos are identified. Convert the dot tally to a total number for each type of organism in the appropriate boxes on the data form. This ensures accurate conversion of the data and speeds data entry.

3.6 Determining the Percent of Sample Processed

Once sorting is completed, measure (weight or volume) the remains of the kick sample and record this measurement in the 'Portion Not Picked:' box if the sample was not split. If the sample was split, the 'Portion Not Picked' will be the total of the weight or volume of the remaining kick sample in addition to the weight or volume of the portion that was discarded (i.e., recorded on the back of the field form).

***Example:** 1000 ml of kick sample (and water) was measured. More than 500 organisms were observed, so the sample was split and 500 ml of kick sample (and water) was discarded in the stream. After 112 organisms were identified, 100 ml of sample (and water) remains. The 'Portion Not Picked' equals 600 ml (500 ml +100 ml).*

This information is used to estimate invertebrate abundance in the sampling area³.

3.7 Recording Substrate Size and Stream Width

After the identification of benthos is complete, randomly select 10 particles from within the area sampled. Record the size according to the classifications in Table 1, or if the median axis of the particle is between 2 mm and 1000 mm, record the actual measurement.

Note that large material (i.e., greater than 1000 mm wide) such as concrete slabs, etc., are classified as 'Large Boulders'. To ensure accuracy of data entry, place a '0' in front of all decimal points (i.e., '0.01'). **Be sure to measure all particles that are close to 2 mm in diameter to avoid misclassifying small particles.**

³ # macroinvertebrates/m² = # organisms counted *100/ %sample processed

Table 1: Substrate Descriptions and Size Categories

Material	Description	Size to be Recorded
'Unconsolidated Clay'	Very hard packed when dry and sticky when wet	'0.01'
'Consolidated Clay'	Hard even when wet, slippery, gray in colour, often laminated	'0.011'
'Silt'	Feels soft like a powder or flour	'0.05'
'Sand'	Gritty, sizes >0.05 and < 2 mm	'0.10'
'Bedrock'	Exposed bedrock	'1111'
Measured particles	Between 2 mm and 1000 mm	Median axis
'Large Boulders'	> 1000 mm but not attached to bedrock	'1001'

Median Axis

There are three axes to every particle. The median axis represents the intermediate width of any particle (Figure 4). Rocks will often lie with the median axis at right angles to the flow.

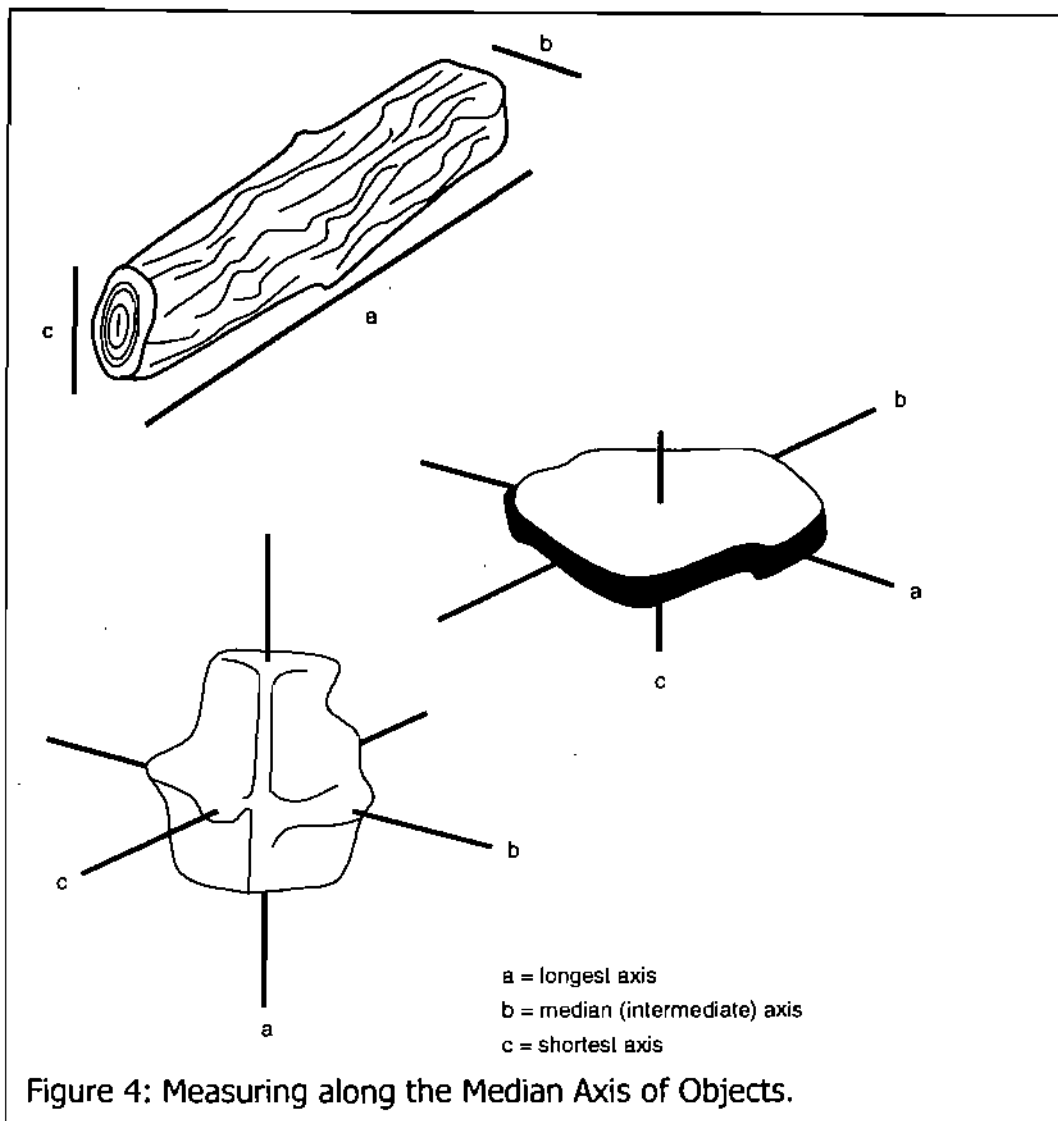
Measure and record 'Stream Width (m)' which is the wetted width of the stream (i.e., subtract the width of islands and include undercuts), to the nearest tenth of a metre.

3.8 Tips for Applying this Module

Mayfly gills insert dorso-laterally on the abdomen; stoneflies have less obvious gills which are located on other parts of the body (e.g., thorax, underside of abdomen, underside of the head).

Check casings for the presence of caddisflies. Count only caddisflies, not empty cases.

Learn to characterize the organisms by their mode of movement: swimming, crawling or flexing, as this can help identify many of the taxa.



4.0 DATA MANAGEMENT

Upon returning from the field;

1. Create a backup hard copy (i.e., photocopy) of field forms, and store in a place separate from the original.
2. Enter the data into a digital storage system, such as HabProgs, and save backup copies in a separate location from the master copy.

By storing the data digitally in HabProgs, the data can be shared with a large number of users province-wide. Data sharing will facilitate the refinement and development of habitat suitability models, and this will improve habitat management practices and policies.

5.0 LITERATURE CITED

Jones, C., K.M. Somers, B. Craig, and T. Reynoldson. 2004. Ontario Benthos Biomonitoring Network Protocol Manual, Version 1.0. Ontario Ministry of Environment, Dorset, Ontario.

Marchant, R. 1989. A subsampler for samples of benthic invertebrates. Bulletin of the Australian Society of Limnology 12: 49-52.

Voshell Jr., J.R. 2002. A Guide to Common Freshwater Invertebrates of North America. McDonald and Woodward Publishing Company, Blacksburg, Virginia. 442 pp.





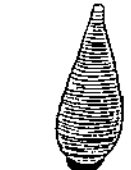


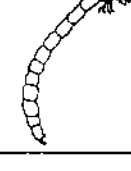
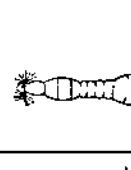

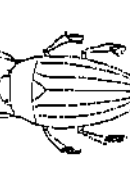




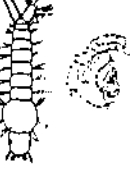








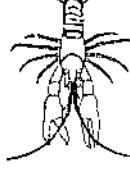
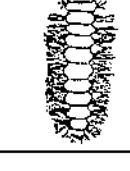

Stanfield, L. W. (Ed.). 2003. Guidelines for Designing and Interpreting Stream Surveys: A Compendium Manual to the Ontario Stream Assessment Protocol. Version 1.1 Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Aquatic Research and Development Section, Picton.

Appendix 1

Example Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form

Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form

Stream Name WILMOT CREEK	Date (YYYY/MM/DD): 2000/08/10	Dist. Sampled (m): —	No. of Bottles 1	Sample Preserved? Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/>	Identified in (cubs): <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Field <input type="checkbox"/>	Lab Mesh Size (microns): 251-500 501-1000	Median sizes of substrate particles randomly chosen from collection area (mm)
Stream Code: W(T)	Water Depth (mm.): 160	Stream width (m): 11.3	Habitat Sampled (circle): P (Pile)	<input type="checkbox"/> Rapid Survey	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Stationary Kick Survey	<input type="checkbox"/> Transect Kick and Sweep	75 4 23 17 5 0.10 0.10 35 0.10 3
Site Code: 3CDW	Hydraulic Head (mm.): 35	Sampling Time (sec): 120	Size of Kick Sample Collected (ml or gm) Total: 1250	Sorting Method (circle): Unsorted	Merchant Box <input type="checkbox"/>	Splitter <input type="checkbox"/>	
			Portion not picked: 770	Net Type (circle): Square	Surber <input type="checkbox"/>	D-net <input type="checkbox"/>	

 0.4 - 3.0 mm Acarina (Water Mites) .. 3	 1 - 100 mm Oligochaeta (Aquatic Earthworms)	 1 - 100 mm Nematoda (Roundworms)	 2 - 10 mm Flatworms (Platyhelminthes)	 5 - 100 mm Hirudinea (Leeches)	 5 - 20 mm Amphipoda (Scuds)	 5 - 300 mm Isopoda (Aquatic Sowbugs)	 2 - 20 mm Chironomidae (Blood Worms) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	 3 - 15 mm Simuliidae (Black Flies)
 15 - 40 mm Hemiptera (True Bugs) .. 2	 2 - 40 mm Coleoptera (Beetles)	 25 - 90 mm Megoptera (Dragonflies)	 15 - 45 mm Anisoptera (Dragonflies)	 10 - 28 mm Zygoptera (Damselflies)	 3 - 13 mm Ceratopogonidae (No-see-ums)	 2 - 50 mm Culicidae (Mosquitoes)	 15 - 40 mm Tabanidae (Horse and Deer Flies)	 Misc. Diptera (Misc. True Flies) .. 4
 10 - 45 mm Tipulidae (Crane Flies) .. 2	 3 - 28 mm Ephemeroptera (Mayflies)	 5 - 50 mm Plecoptera (Stoneflies)	 2 - 50 mm Trichoptera (Caddisflies)	 2 - 70 mm Gastropoda (Snails)	 2 - 250 mm Pelecypoda (Clams)	 10 - 150 mm Decapoda (Crayfish)	 10 - 25 mm Lepidoptera (Aquatic Moths)	 2 - 5 mm Hydra (Coelenterates)

Dot Tally, keep track of total number sampled

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

Crew Members:
R. YAN, K. SALAR

Comments, check box if more on back:

Date	Ent.	Ver.	Corr.
Int.	L.S.	L.S.	L.S.
	L.S.	m.S.	m.S.

ONTARIO STREAM ASSESSMENT PROTOCOL

SECTION 2, MODULE 3

Transect Travelling Kick and Sweep Survey for Macroinvertebrates¹

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0	INTRODUCTION	1
2.0	PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES	1
3.0	FIELD PROCEDURES	2
3.1	Locating the Collection Area	2
3.2	Documenting Collection Area Habitat Conditions	3
3.3	Collecting the Invertebrate Sample	4
3.4	Documenting Sampling Effort	5
3.5	Recording Substrate Size and Stream Width	5
3.6	Sample Sorting and Preserving	6
3.6.1	Preparing the Sample for Processing	6
3.6.2	Processing the Sample	7
3.7	Determining the Percent of Sample Processed	9
3.8	Tips for Applying this Module	10
4.0	DATA MANAGEMENT	10
5.0	LITERATURE CITED	11

APPENDICES

Appendix 1. Example Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form

¹ Authors: C. Jones and L.W. Stanfield

1.0 INTRODUCTION

This module describes techniques for sampling benthic macroinvertebrates (benthos) in the riffle and pool habitats of a site. Results from these surveys can be used in bioassessments or as indicators of water quality conditions.

Several options are provided for sample processing; sub-sampling procedures, processing location, detail of identification etc. These options allow practitioners to tailor their collection and processing methods to suit their expertise, resources and study design (Stanfield 2003, Jones et al. 2004).

This module is consistent with the transect travelling kick and sweep method of the Ontario Benthos Biomonitoring Network (Jones et al. 2004).

2.0 PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES

This module requires a crew of two people and sample collection can be completed in 30 minutes. The time required for sample processing will vary with the study design for sample identification.

Pre-field activities should include:

- Landowner contact
- Documentation of site access and appropriate stream identifiers (see Section 1)
- Equipment check

The following equipment is required:

1. Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Forms, on waterproof paper
2. Stopwatch
3. Waders
4. Metre Stick (wooden)
5. Pencils
6. D-Net (500 μ m mesh, 25-40 cm net opening width)
7. Sieve (500 μ m, optional)
8. Nalgene™ squirt bottle and a fine brush
9. Fine tweezers (2 pairs)
10. Plastic spoon (tea- or table-spoon, either size)
11. Sample bottles (1 L)

Transect Travelling Kick and Sweep Survey for Macroinvertebrates
edited May 2007

12. Preservative solution for specimens
13. Labels or permanent marker
14. Buckets
15. Splitting devices (multiple buckets or containers with a wedge/plate insert)

Additional equipment for sample processing includes:

16. Microscope (optional)
17. Marchant Box (optional)
18. Sorting trays or Petri dishes

Crews should adhere to safety precautions and requirements set forth by their employers /managers i.e., first aid kit, first aid training, travel plan, buddy system, mobile phone etc.

Optional equipment includes a sample splitter, a device (e.g., a multi-probe) for measuring water quality variables (e.g., dissolved oxygen, pH, conductivity, and dissolved organic carbon) etc.

3.0 FIELD PROCEDURES

This module should be completed in conjunction with S1.M1, Defining Site Boundaries and Key Identifiers and S1.M2, Screening Level Site Documentation. Additional information required depends on the objectives of the study and resources available. Benthic surveys must be conducted either before electrofishing the site or at least two weeks afterwards. Begin the survey at the downstream (bottom) end of the site and continue upstream.

If this module is being used as part of the Ontario Benthos Biomonitoring Network, in addition to the above requirements, crews must apply at minimum the instream habitat methods described in S4.M1, Rapid Assessment Methodology for Channel Structure, on each transect².

3.1 Locating the Collection Area

At each site select three collection areas; two in riffles and one in a pool. In most stream types, riffles occur at crossovers. Under low flow conditions, riffles are areas of relatively fast, turbulent flow, where the water's surface is typically broken and has an obvious slope. Under

² Record estimates of maximum depth, hydraulic head, substrate composition (maximum and point particles) and macrophytes. In addition, estimate the proportion of each point observation which contains filamentous algae (see S4.M2, Point-transect Sampling for Channel Structure, Substrate and Bank Conditions).

low flow conditions, pools are areas of relatively slow flow and have no obvious slope in the water's surface.

Since most sites will contain multiple pools and riffles, collection areas should be selected as follows:

- riffles at crossovers
- where depth, velocity and substrate permit easy sample collection

In atypical streams, where riffles and pools either cannot be easily distinguished, or do not occur at normal locations in the meander sequence, select 'pool' and 'riffle' sampling locations which are relatively slow and deep and relatively fast and shallow, respectively.

3.2 Documenting Collection Area Habitat Conditions

Record the 'Stream Name', 'Stream Code', 'Site Code', 'Sample #', 'Collection Area', 'Habitat Sampled', and 'Date' on the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form (see Appendix 1). Samples are consecutively numbered within a calendar year. Mark an 'X' in the box titled 'Transect Kick and Sweep' and circle '251-500 μm ' mesh size.

On the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form, measure and record the following:

- maximum water depth ('Water Depth' (mm)); at the maximum depth in the collection area, place the ruler so that the thin side is facing into the current, ensuring that the ruler is straight and that it does not dig into the substrate. Measure the height of water from the mid-point of the ruler (in higher velocity areas, the water will differ in height between the upstream and downstream edges of the ruler). Water depth measurements can be either recorded as observed (i.e., 18 mm) or can be rounded to the nearest 5 mm (i.e., 20 mm), whichever is easier for the crews. The accuracy of these measures is considered to be 5 mm for all interpretations.
- 'Hydraulic Head (mm)' is measured at the same location as the maximum water depth; at this location, place the wooden ruler so that it is vertical and the **wide side with the markings is on the downstream side** (Figure 1). The ruler will create a barrier to flow causing the water to climb the upstream side of the ruler. Avoid standing in front or too close behind the ruler as this can obstruct the flow. The height the water climbs is referred to as the hydraulic head. If there is no difference in water level between the front and back of the ruler then hydraulic head is 0, indicating very low velocity. If a difference in height is observed, then measure the height difference between the front and back of the ruler (Figure 1). Measure the maximum height difference observed over

Transect Travelling Kick and Sweep Survey for Macroinvertebrates
edited May 2007

a 3-5 second period. Record the hydraulic head to the nearest 5 mm in the box marked 'Hydraulic Head (mm)' on the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form. It may be easier to use a pencil or finger to mark the locations on the ruler and then measure the differences out of the water. At higher velocities, there will be greater variability in the height differential (i.e., the hydraulic head will pulse up and down). Where the water depth is greater than 1 m, brace the ruler on your toe or knee and record the hydraulic head.

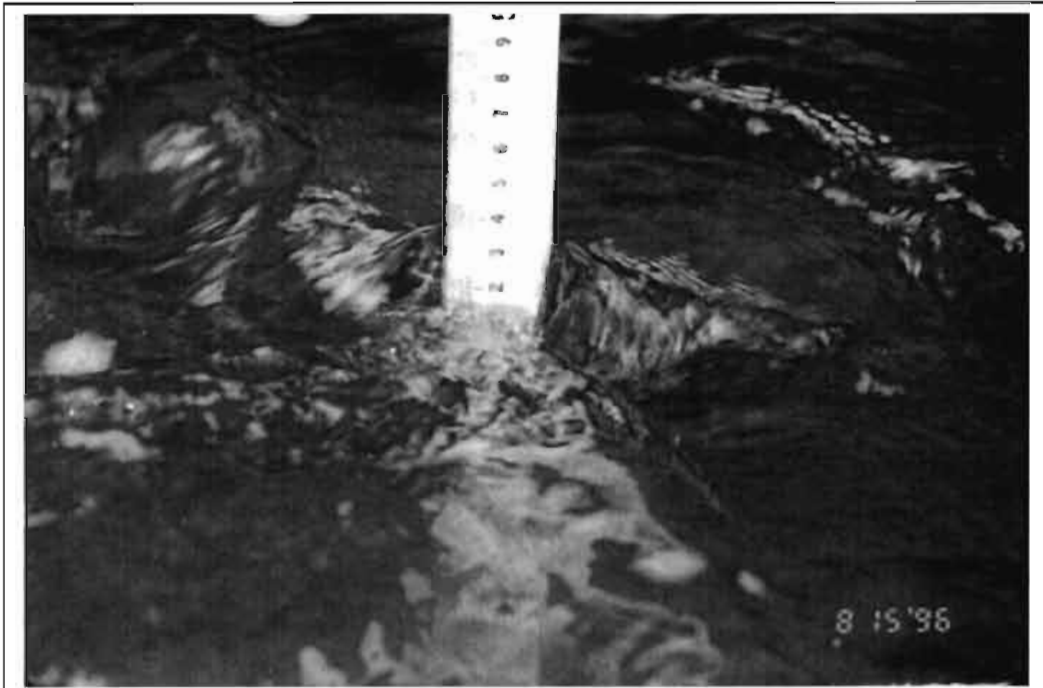


Figure 1: A Point Measurement of Hydraulic Head.

The upstream reading is measured as 35 mm, the downstream as 16 mm, therefore the hydraulic head is 19 mm, which should be recorded as 20 mm (rounded to nearest 5 mm).

3.3 Collecting the Invertebrate Sample

Sample a minimum of 10 linear metres in approximately 3 minutes along each collection area (transect). This will generally provide 100 animals or more. If stream width at the collection area is less than 10 m, multiple transects should be sampled such that the total distance sampled is at least 10 m (i.e., a distance greater than 10 m may be attained as transects must be sampled in their entirety). If the stream width is greater than 10 m, the entire width must be

sampled. Transects are established perpendicular to the main concentration of flow (i.e., thalweg).

Begin sampling at the farthest downstream collection area (transect). Prior to sampling, place a bucket at the water's edge. Start the timer and begin at the water's edge, vigorously kicking the substrate to disturb it to a depth of ~5 cm. Continue this process along the transect to the opposite bank. Use the timer to ensure that sampling is conducted for a minimum of three minutes. Sweep the D-net both vertically and horizontally through the water column, keeping the net downstream and close to the area being disturbed so that dislodged invertebrates will be carried into the net. A good sweeping motion is particularly important in areas of slow current to ensure animals are collected in the net. If only one person is sampling, the net is held downstream as the sampler progresses along the transect kicking the substrate (sampler typically walks backwards).

If the sampling net fills (i.e., when material begins to bypass the net), stop sampling (also stop the stopwatch), mark the location, sieve the sample in the net, empty the net contents into a bucket and return to continue sampling the transect (restart stopwatch). Transfer all collected material to a labelled container, ensuring that all invertebrates are removed from the D-net (use a water bottle to wash down the sides and a fine brush to dislodge animals). Add water if the collection is to be live processed, and keep the sample cool.

3.4 Documenting Sampling Effort

Record the 'Sampling Time' (i.e., the cumulative time spent kicking and sweeping only) and the 'Distance Covered' (i.e., the total distance travelled while kicking and sweeping).

3.5 Recording Substrate Size and Stream Width

After sampling for benthos is completed, select ten particles from equally spaced (visually determined) observation points along one transect, and record the median width of each particle. Record the size according to the classifications in Table 1, or if the median axis of the particle is between 2 mm and 1000 mm, record the actual measurement.

Note that large material (i.e., greater than 1000 mm wide) such as concrete slabs, etc., are classified as 'Large Boulders'. To ensure accuracy of data entry, place a '0' in front of all decimal points (i.e., '0.01'). **Be sure to measure all particles that are close to 2 mm in diameter to avoid misclassifying small particles.**

Table 1: Substrate Descriptions and Size Categories

Material	Description	Size to be Recorded
'Unconsolidated Clay'	Very hard packed when dry and sticky when wet	'0.01'
'Consolidated Clay'	Hard even when wet, slippery, gray in colour, often laminated	'0.011'
'Silt'	Feels soft like a powder or flour	'0.05'
'Sand'	Gritty, sizes >0.05 and < 2 mm	'0.10'
'Bedrock'	Exposed bedrock	'1111'
<u>Measured particles</u>	<u>Between 2 mm and 1000 mm!</u>	<u>Median axis</u>
'Large Boulders'	> 1000 mm but not attached to bedrock	'1001'

Median Axis

There are three axes to every particle. The median axis represents the intermediate width of any particle (Figure 2). Rocks will often lie with the median axis at right angles to the flow.

Measure and record 'Stream Width (m)' which is the wetted width of the stream (i.e., subtract the width of islands and include undercuts), to the nearest tenth of a metre.

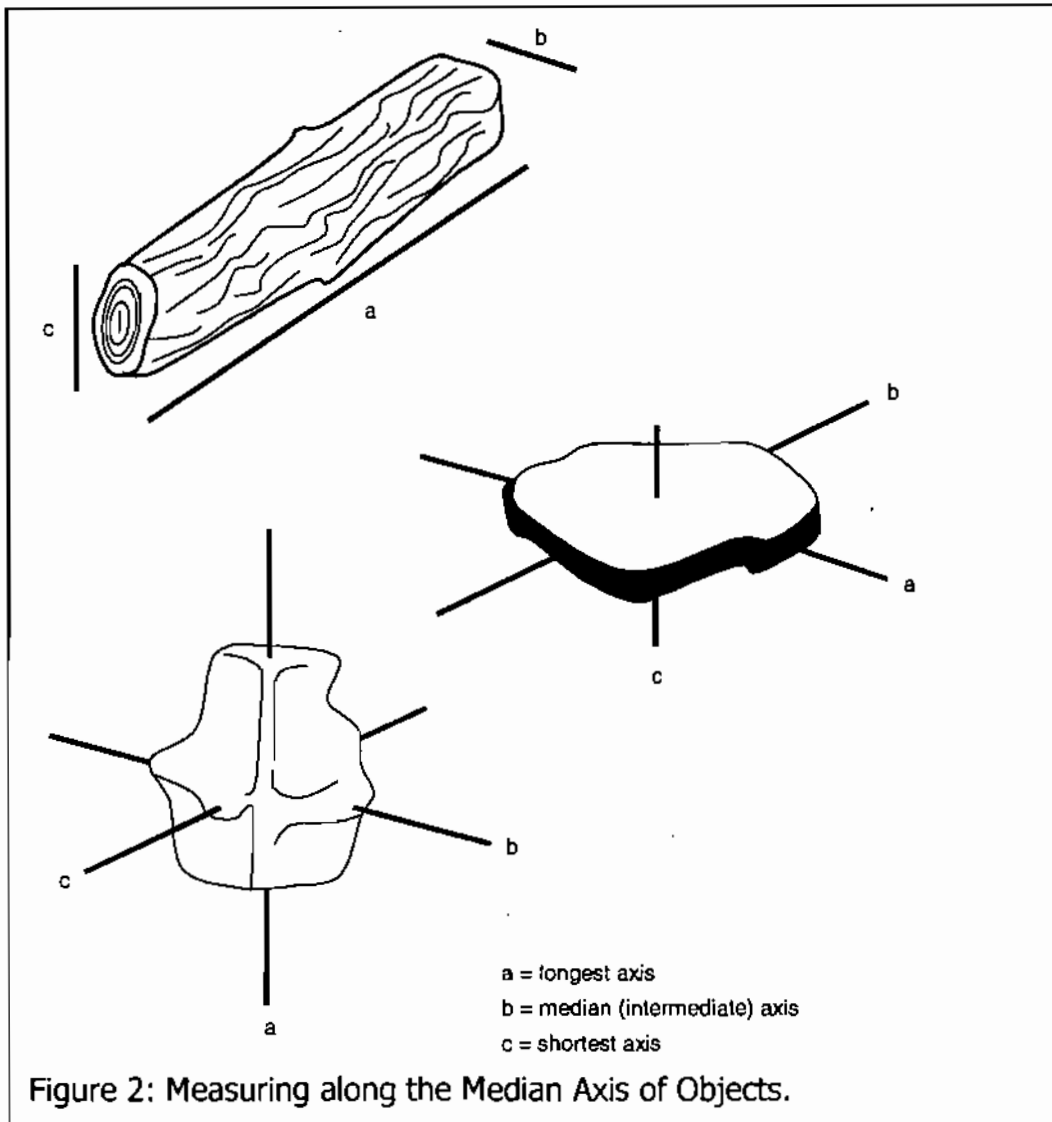
3.6 Sample Sorting and Preserving

3.6.1 Preparing the Sample for Processing

Sieve collected materials through 500 µm mesh to remove fine particulate matter (which clouds sorting trays and makes sorting much more difficult). Rinse off and discard wood, rocks, leaves and other large materials; release any non-benthos animals that were caught in the net. Weigh or measure the total sample and record as 'Total' under 'Size of Kick Sample Collected (ml or gm)'. Since this measure is used to determine the relative portion of the sample that was identified, the water can be decanted or included in the weight/volume measurement depending on the option selected for processing the benthos sample (i.e., preserved or live). However, it is critical that the sample be measured in the same state (e.g., water decanted versus water not decanted), prior to and after processing.

After weighing or measuring the total sample, if clearly more than 500 animals were collected, randomly split the sample using the methods outlined in S2.Appendix 1:Bucket Method for

Splitting a Sample. The volume or weight of the portion discarded should be noted on the back of the field form, so that the total 'Portion Not Picked' can be determined later.



3.6.2 Processing the Sample

There are a number of options available for processing the benthos sample. The study design will dictate which of the following options are selected:

- preserved or live
- laboratory or field picking

Transect, Travelling Kick and Sweep Survey for Macroinvertebrates
edited May 2007

- Marchant box or spoon sub-sampling
- use of a microscope or no use of a microscope
- taxonomic level desired
- specimen archiving or discarding

3.6.2.1 Live or Preserved

If the sieved sample is to be preserved it should be transferred to a labelled container and enough preserving solution should be added to cover the animals. Seal the jar tightly and swirl gently to ensure all the sample gets mixed with the preserving solution. Each jar is labelled with a stream name, site code, sample number, the collection area number, the number of sample jars taken, the date, and the type of preserving solution used (usually alcohol). Place a label both on the lid of the jar and inside the jar (i.e., ideally on waterproof paper, with pencil). If the sample will be processed live, add water and keep the sample cool until it is processed. Live samples should be processed within 48 hours.

3.6.2.2 Picking the Sample

If a Marchant box (i.e., Marchant 1989) is being used and the sample has been preserved, rinse the sample with water and transfer to the box. Otherwise, gently stir the collected material and take a random sub-sample of one spoonful of material. Put the sub-sample into a sorting tray. Add clean water to the tray.

Marchant Box Method

The standard sub-sampling box is a modified Marchant design consisting of an approximately 27 x 27 x 15 cm box that is divided into 100 cells and has a water tight lid. Wash the sample from the sieve into the Marchant Box and fill with water to a depth just below the height of the walls dividing the cells. Water depth is important. In the case of live samples, water deeper than the dividing walls will allow animals to swim between the cells once the contents have been randomized. Less water will make it difficult to distribute the sample among the 100 cells. Close and fasten the lid. Invert and gently mix the sample with side-to-side rocking motions. Right the box quickly and set on a level surface to let contents settle into cells. Using random numbers for the 10 columns and 10 rows, randomly select one or more cells and transfer contents to a suitable container or Petri dish using a pipette (or turkey baster), vacuum pump or aspirator and suction flask, or similar method.

The cell-extraction method used for Marchant sub-sampling strongly influences sample-processing time. Consider the costs of more sophisticated equipment such as aspirators, pumps, suction flasks, and tubing in relation to the improved efficiency resulting from their use. Using an aspirator and suction flask may be the best balance between minimal cost and extraction efficiency.

Pick out organisms one at a time using either fine tweezers or an eyedropper. Identify each organism to the taxonomic level desired using either the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form, S2.Appendix 2: Identifying Macroinvertebrates, Voshell (2002) or other published keys. Record the abundance on the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form or a customized tally sheet³. If samples are to be archived, place the identified organisms into one or more sample jars that contain 70% alcohol. The sub-sample is considered adequately 'picked' when no more animals are found in one to three minutes.

Animals that cannot be identified should not be included in the tally. They should be set aside and identified by an expert. To be counted, a specimen must have enough intact body parts to permit its identification and it must have a head. Larval husks and empty shells and cases are not counted.

Continue processing sub-samples until 100 animals have been picked or the whole sample has been picked. **Pick the entire sub-sample that contains the 100th animal.** This ensures that the samples are not biased towards larger animals.

***Example:** One spoonful of material provided 50 organisms. A second spoonful provided 62 organisms. The sampling can be terminated after the second spoonful has been processed because greater than 100 organisms was obtained in the two complete sub-samples.*

If samples are taken back to the laboratory for identification, remove excess silt and debris and keep samples cool to prevent death of invertebrates. Live benthos should be identified within 48 hours. If identification is carried out on preserved samples, the taxonomist will record the organisms present on a tally sheet to the level of taxonomy specified by the project objectives. Once this tally sheet is received, the results should be transferred to the Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form for use in comparative analysis. Record the number of each type of organism in the appropriate boxes on the data form.

3.7 Determining the Percent of Sample Processed

Once sorting is completed, measure (weight or volume) the remains of the kick sample and record this measurement in the 'Portion Not Picked:' box if the sample was not split. If the sample was split, the 'Portion Not Picked' will be the total of the weight or volume of the remaining kick sample in addition to the weight or volume of the portion that was discarded (i.e., recorded on the back of the field form).

Example: 1000 ml of kick sample (and water) was measured. More than 500 organisms were observed, so the sample was split and 500 ml of kick sample (and water) was discarded in the stream. After 112 organisms were identified, 100 ml of sample (and water) remains. The 'Portion Not Picked' equals 600 ml (500 ml + 100 ml).

This information is used to estimate invertebrate abundance in the sampling area⁴.

On the field form, circle 'Field' or 'Lab' depending on the location where benthos are identified.

3.8 Tips for Applying this Module

Mayfly gills insert dorso-laterally on the abdomen; stoneflies have less obvious gills which are located on other parts of the body (e.g., thorax, underside of abdomen, underside of the head).

Check casings for the presence of caddisflies. Count caddisflies only, not empty cases.

Learn to characterize the organisms by their mode of movement: swimming, crawling or flexing, as this can help identify many of the taxa.

4.0 DATA MANAGEMENT

Upon returning from the field;

1. Create a backup hard copy (i.e., photocopy) of field forms, and store in a place separate from the original.
2. Enter the data into a digital storage system, such as HabProgs, and save backup copies in a separate location from the master copy.

By storing the data digitally in HabProgs, the data can be shared with a large number of users province-wide. Data sharing will facilitate the refinement and development of habitat suitability models, and this will improve habitat management practices and policies. Efforts are underway to develop a database for storing lower level taxonomy data. Users should contact Ministry of the Environment, Ontario Benthic Biomonitoring Network for more details.

³ If identification below Order level is desired, a customized tally sheet will need to be developed.

⁴ # macroinvertebrates/m² = # organisms counted * 100 / %sample processed

5.0 LITERATURE CITED







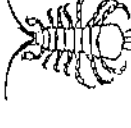
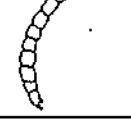
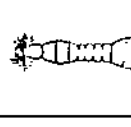


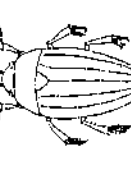




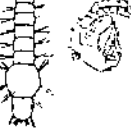
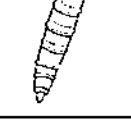






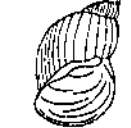

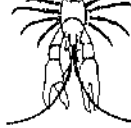
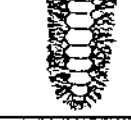


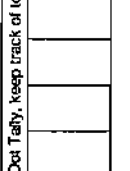
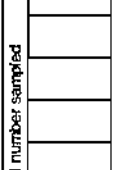
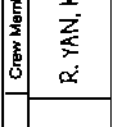
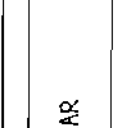

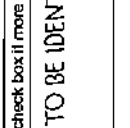
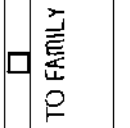
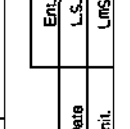
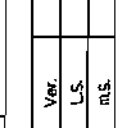
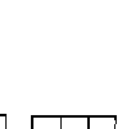
- Jones, C., K.M. Somers, B. Craig, and T. Reynoldson. 2004. Ontario Benthos Biomonitoring Network Protocol Manual, Version 1.0. Ontario Ministry of Environment, Dorset, Ontario.
- Marchant, R. 1989. A subsampler for samples of benthic invertebrates. *Bulletin of the Australian Society of Limnology* 12: 49-52.
- Voshell Jr., J.R. 2002. *A Guide to Common Freshwater Invertebrates of North America*. McDonald and Woodward Publishing Company, Blacksburg, Virginia. 442 pp.
- Stanfield, L. W. (Ed.). 2003. *Guidelines for Designing and Interpreting Stream Surveys: A Compendium Manual to the Ontario Stream Assessment Protocol. Version 1.1* Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Aquatic Research and Development Section, Picton.

Appendix 1

Example Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form

Transect Travelling Kick and Sweep Survey for Macroinvertebrates
edited May 2007

Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form

Stream Name WILMOT CREEK	Date (YYYY/MM/DD): 2000/07/18	Dist. Sampled (m): 13.5	Sample Preserved? (Yes/No) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No		Identified in (circle): Field <input type="checkbox"/> Lab <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		Median sizes of substrate particles randomly chosen from collection area (mm)
Stream Code: W(1)	Water Depth (mm.): 250	Stream width (m): 4.5	<input type="checkbox"/> Rapid Survey	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Stationary Kick Survey	Transect Kick and Sweep	Mesh Size (microns): 251-500	17 UJU 25 37 10 UJU 7 58 11 75
Site Code: 3CDW	Hydraulic Head (mm.): 110	Sampling Time (sec): 100	Sorting Method (circle): Unsifted <input type="checkbox"/> Merchant Box <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		Sift Type (circle): Square <input type="checkbox"/> Surber <input type="checkbox"/> D-net <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
			No. of Bottles 1	Habitat Sampled (circle): Riparian <input type="checkbox"/> Pool <input type="checkbox"/>	Size of Kick Sample Collected (mt or gm) Total: 1050	Portion not picked: 100	
	0.4 - 3.0 mm Acarina (Water Mites)	3					
	1 - 100 mm Oligochaeta (Aquatic Earthworms)						
	1 - 100 mm Nematoda (Roundworms)	1					
	25 - 90 mm Megaloptera (Hairgrammites)	4					
	2 - 40 mm Coleoptera (Beetles)	13					
	10 - 45 mm Trichoptera (Crane Flies)	7					
	10 - 26 mm Zygoptera (Damselflies)	2					
	5 - 100 mm Hirudinea (Leeches)						
	5 - 20 mm Amphipoda (Scuds)	4					
	5 - 300 mm Isopoda (Aquatic Sowbugs)	4					
	2 - 20 mm Chironomidae (Blood Worms)	19					
	2 - 50 mm Culicidae (Mosquitoes)						
	15 - 40 mm Hemiptera (True Bugs)	2					
	15 - 40 mm Tabanidae (Horse and Deer Flies)						
	3 - 15 mm Simuliidae (Black Flies)						
	10 - 45 mm Tipulidae (Crane Flies)	7					
	2 - 5 mm Hydra (Coelenterates)						
	10 - 25 mm Lepidoptera (Aquatic Moths)						
	10 - 150 mm Decapoda (Crayfish)						
	2 - 250 mm Pelecypoda (Clams)	3					
	2 - 70 mm Gastropoda (Snails)						
	2 - 50 mm Trichoptera (Caddisflies)	30					
	10 - 26 mm Zygoptera (Damselflies)	2					
	5 - 50 mm Plecoptera (Stoneflies)	22					
	2 - 70 mm Gastropoda (Snails)						
	2 - 250 mm Pelecypoda (Clams)	3					
	10 - 150 mm Decapoda (Crayfish)						
	10 - 25 mm Lepidoptera (Aquatic Moths)						
	2 - 5 mm Hydra (Coelenterates)						
	15 - 40 mm Tabanidae (Horse and Deer Flies)						
	Misc. Diptera (Misc. True Flies)	11					
	10 - 150 mm Decapoda (Crayfish)						
	10 - 25 mm Lepidoptera (Aquatic Moths)						
	2 - 50 mm Culicidae (Mosquitoes)	11					
	5 - 20 mm Amphipoda (Scuds)	4					
	5 - 300 mm Isopoda (Aquatic Sowbugs)	4					
	2 - 20 mm Chironomidae (Blood Worms)	19					
	3 - 15 mm Simuliidae (Black Flies)						
	Misc. Diptera (Misc. True Flies)	11					
	2 - 5 mm Hydra (Coelenterates)						

Dot Tally, keep track of total number sampled

Crew Members:

R. YAN, K. SALAR

Comments, check box if more on back

SAMPLE TO BE IDENTIFIED TO FAMILY IN LAB

Date	Init.	Ent.	Ver.	Corr.
		L.S.	L.S.	L.S.
		Lms.	m.s.	m.s.

ONTARIO STREAM ASSESSMENT PROTOCOL

SECTION 3

Fish Community Sampling

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Module Code	Title	Type
S3.M1	Fish Community Sampling Using Screening, Standard and Multiple Pass Electrofishing Techniques	Screening Surveys and Diagnostic Surveys

INTRODUCTION

This section describes standard electrofishing methods for sampling fish communities in streams.

The first module, Fish Community Sampling Using Screening, Standard and Multiple Pass Electrofishing Techniques (S3.M1), describes three electrofishing approaches. The three approaches are described in one module, as the procedures are similar, with the exception of sampling effort. These electrofishing approaches are variations of the Zippen (1958) methodology. This module can be applied reliably in wadeable (i.e., generally < 1.0 m deep), non-turbid streams with rock (hard) substrates where the objective of the study is to characterize the fish community at a site or across several sites.

There are currently no standard protocols for sampling fish in deeper, soft-bottomed or turbid streams. Furthermore, it is recognized that some species or life stages of species, will require different sampling strategies than are described in S3.M1, Fish Community Sampling Using Screening, Standard and Multiple Pass Electrofishing Techniques.

LITERATURE CITED

Zippen, C. 1958. The removal method of population estimation. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 22:82-90.

ONTARIO STREAM ASSESSMENT PROTOCOL

SECTION 3: MODULE 1

Fish Community Sampling Using Screening, Standard and Multiple Pass Electrofishing Techniques¹

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0	INTRODUCTION.....	1
2.0	PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES.....	3
3.0	FIELD PROCEDURES.....	4
3.1	Differences in Sampling Approaches	4
3.2	Electrofishing Survey Methods.....	5
3.3	Processing Fish.....	7
3.4	Preserving Sampled Fish	8
3.5	Recording Data.....	9
3.6	Recording the Area Sampled	10
3.7	Fish Species Confirmation	11
3.8	Tips for Applying this Module	11
4.0	DATA MANAGEMENT	12
5.0	LITERATURE CITED.....	12

APPENDICES

- Appendix 1. Example Fish Sampling Forms
- Appendix 2. Fish Identification Codes

¹ Author: L. W. Stanfield

1.0 INTRODUCTION

This module describes how to conduct electrofishing surveys. Electrofishing is a common technique used to collect information on stream fish communities or populations. It is popular because it is non-lethal, can be performed relatively quickly, can be applied in a standardized way, and most fish are vulnerable to the gear.

In this module, three standard approaches are described that vary in the amount of sampling effort required. Since the approaches are very similar, they are described in one module. A brief overview of the three approaches is provided to assist in the selection of the appropriate method. Procedural differences are outlined in Section 3.1, Differences in Sampling Approaches.

The standard approaches are recommended for use in wadeable, hard-bottomed streams. Each approach requires that all habitats within the site boundaries are sampled. Water levels should be near baseflow conditions for maximum efficiency. Winter sampling poses additional problems such as ice build-up on equipment.

The completion of S1.M1, Defining Site Boundaries and Key Identifiers and S1.M2, Screening Level Site Documentation, are mandatory when using this module.

This module complements the Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources (OMNR) Backpack (Class II) electrofishing course and the provincial electrofishing policy (Electrofishing Equipment and Operating Guidelines and Procedures, OMNR Official Procedure Manual FI.3.01.01). Surveyors must meet all of the guidelines and safety requirements applicable to their office when conducting electrofishing surveys.

Screening Survey:

This approach is used to generate a list of the common fish species at a site. This approach characterizes fish communities at the site provided all habitats are sampled. It also provides a qualitative assessment of species abundance at a site.

This approach does not provide quantitative estimates of population abundance and should not be used when a comprehensive species list is required. In light of the low sampling effort, there is a high probability that rare species will not be captured. The screening survey methodology is not recommended for 'trend through time' surveys.

Standard Single Pass Survey:

This approach can be used to produce a comprehensive fish species list for a site. It will characterize the fish community and provide a qualitative assessment of species abundance at the site.

In some situations, this approach can also be used to determine salmonine biomass and/or population size. The biomass/population size must be previously calibrated, using the Multiple Pass Survey. Sixty percent of the population must be captured in the Standard Single Pass Survey. This approach has been shown to be effective in determining salmonine biomass in waters with high conductivity using well trained crews (Jones and Stockwell 1995). If these conditions cannot be met, the multiple pass survey is recommended for determination of salmonine biomass/populations.

Multiple Pass Survey:

Standard three-pass removal surveys (e.g., Zippen 1958) are used to estimate population size of individual fish species at a site. These surveys produce lower variances in catches than single pass surveys. This provides the ability to detect differences in catches over time or between sites. Assumptions of this approach and ways to address them are:

1. Emigration from and immigration to the site must be negligible. Block(barrier)nets placed at the top and bottom of the site will ensure this condition is met.
2. The probability of capture during a pass is the same for each fish. Applying appropriate sampling effort (see Section 3.2, Electrofishing Survey Methods) and sampling all habitats within a site will help. Attempt to capture all fish observed with equal intensity, regardless of species or size.
3. The probability of capture remains constant between passes. Using the same effort (measured as shocker seconds) and crew on each pass will ensure that this condition is met.

This approach maximizes the probability of obtaining declining catches with each pass. Population estimates can then be calculated for all species and age groups. This approach also offers the greatest probability of capturing all species within a site. When catches do not decline (because of lower catchability rates for some species, Mahon 1980), catch per unit effort can be derived.

Use of Block(barrier)nets

Blocknets must be used during Multiple Pass Surveys and may be used for Single Pass Surveys. To install blocknets, pound T-bars or poles into the stream bottom at the top and bottom of the site. Place the net on the upstream side of the poles and tie it well above the water level. The net should be anchored to the stream bottom with materials heavy enough to prevent it from being lifted as debris collects in the net (and increases the drag). Surveyors should ensure that there are no escape routes. Minimize disturbance by not walking into the sample site except where necessary. Do not take any boulders for anchoring the net from within the site.

2.0 PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES

This module requires a crew of two to five people. The number varies depending on the technique used, the size of the stream and the abundance of fish that will be sampled.

Pre-field activities should include:

- Obtaining a "Licence to Collect Fish for Scientific Purposes" from OMNR
- Landowner contact
- Documentation of site access and appropriate stream identifiers (see section 1)
- Equipment check

The following equipment is required²:

1. Fish Sampling form(s) on waterproof paper (if possible)
2. Pencils
3. Backpack electrofisher
4. Charged batteries or gasoline, as appropriate
5. Anode pole
6. Electrofishing nets (2 or 3)
7. Chest waders for all crew members
8. Polarized glasses and hats for all crew members
9. Electrofishing gloves for all crew members
10. Aquarium dip nets (2-4)
11. Buckets for holding fish (6-10)
12. Bowl of sufficient size for weighing fish
13. Weighing scales (different capacities)
14. Measuring board

² It is recommended that crews take backup equipment as this type of survey often results in frequent breakdowns, especially with batteries, electrofishers, nets, and weighing scales.

15. Sampling box with Whirl-Pak® bags
16. Collection labels
17. Preserving solution for specimens
18. Fish identification keys
19. Tape measure

Additional equipment for multiple pass surveys includes:

20. Seine or small mesh gill nets
21. Sufficient number of poles (T-bars) to span the stream with approximately 1 m spacing between poles
22. Pole driver or sledge hammer
23. Materials to anchor the bottom of the net to the stream bottom to prevent fish escape³

Optional items include cellular/satellite phone, spare anode ring and/or pole, tool kit with wrench and screw drivers, spare gloves and chest waders, wader repair kit, two to three buckets with screened sides for flow-through circulation or portable power source with water pump and hoses to circulate water and fish immobilizing agents.

Crews should adhere to safety precautions and requirements set forth by their employers /managers i.e., first aid kit, first aid training, travel plan, buddy system, mobile phone etc.

3.0 FIELD PROCEDURES

Define and document the site boundaries and location following the procedures described in S1, Site Identification and Documentation.

3.1 Differences in Sampling Approaches

The main differences in the three sampling approaches are summarized in Table 1. Effort expended by field crews during a sampling pass greatly influences the outcome of the survey. Table 1 provides the basic sampling intensity guidelines for the three different protocols.

³ Boulders from outside the site or from the floodplain are the easiest to use for this task, but crews need to have alternatives for streams where these materials are not available.

Table 1. Sampling Techniques for Screening, Single Pass and Multiple Pass Electrofishing Surveys.

Approach	Intensity	Effort	Blocknets	Survey Technique	Release of Fish
Screening	Single pass Low (2-5 sec/m ²)	20 to 30 min	Not used	Emphasis on coverage of all habitats	into site
Single Pass	Single pass High (7-15 sec/m ²)	45 min to 2 hrs	Optional	*Attempt to capture all fish observed and 60-70 % of entire population	into site
Multiple Pass	Multiple pass Moderate (5-10 sec/m ²)	3 to 8 hrs	Top and bottom	Attempt to capture 50-60 % of fish each pass	outside site

* In waters with low conductivity, it is unknown if this level of intensity/effort is sufficient to meet this criteria.

3.2 Electrofishing Survey Methods

Prior to starting the survey, enter the water 5 to 10 m downstream of the bottom of the site, adjust the settings on the electrofisher and test the electrofisher to ensure that it is working properly. Move to the bottom of the site. Zero the timer on the electrofisher, record the start time, shocker setting and begin sampling.

The anode operator usually carries the bucket with the fish while the netter(s) position themselves in escape routes, usually on either side of the anode. The amount of time spent in each habitat should be adjusted to optimize catches, however surveyors should ensure that shallower, less complex habitats are also sampled (see Figure 1).

Extra time should be spent sampling areas of instream cover (i.e., undercut banks, macrophyte beds, unembedded large rocks, woody material) as these areas likely harbour fish.

Use only enough current to immobilize the fish. All fish should be netted and retained. Minimize the disturbance to instream habitat while electrofishing.

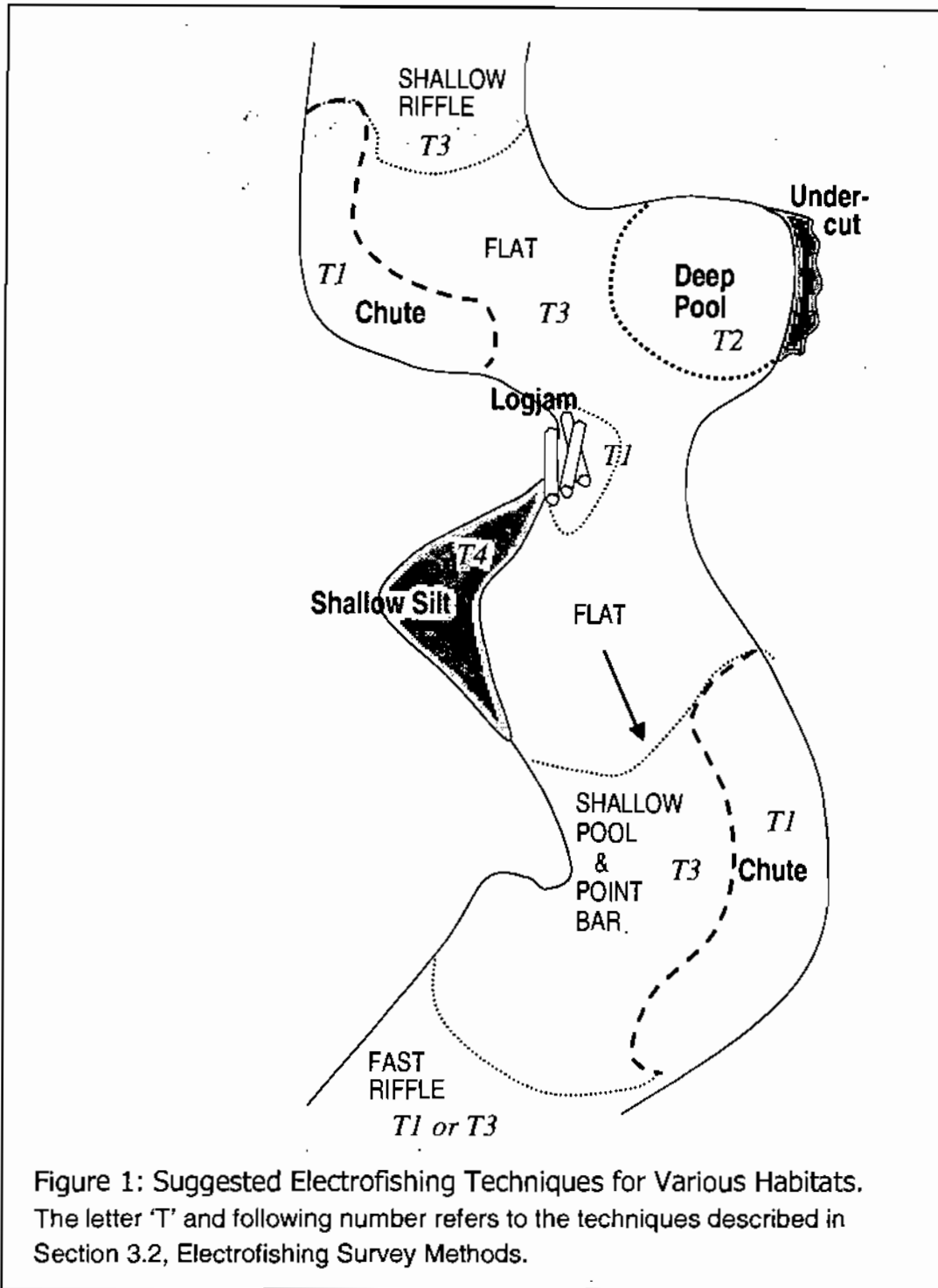



Figure 1: Suggested Electrofishing Techniques for Various Habitats. The letter 'T' and following number refers to the techniques described in Section 3.2, Electrofishing Survey Methods.

The following techniques are useful when sampling different habitat types.

Technique 1: In very fast water (i.e., chutes), place the nets at obvious escape routes, making sure they touch the stream bottom. Then, place the anode approximately 1 to 1.5 m upstream of the nets. Turn the power on and draw the anode to the nets. Check the nets for fish. Repeat this process across the fast water.

Technique 2: In deep pools and log jams, experiment with different techniques to pull the fish towards the netter(s) (i.e., place anode ring on bottom of stream and pull up and towards the netter(s), or place the anode as far forward as safely possible and draw back).

Technique 3: In areas that have relatively uniform depth and substrate (i.e., shallow riffles and flats), and sufficient flow to draw the fish to the nets, begin sampling at one side and move across the stream at right angles to the flow. Move the anode in a regular pattern to cover all of the stream bottom within 1 m of the sampler (i.e. .

Technique 4: To capture lamprey in silty backwater habitats, try pulsing the electrofisher (i.e., turning power on and off in rapid succession).

For multiple pass surveys, release all processed fish downstream of the site after they have been processed. Leave sufficient time between passes for the stream to stabilize (approximately one hour). The interval between passes can be used to enumerate and identify captured fish.

3.3 Processing Fish

To maintain temperature and oxygen levels, all fish should be kept in a flow-through holding tank downstream of the site. The catch should be periodically emptied into this holding tank. Alternatively, the fish could be held in a container placed in a shaded area and the water changed regularly until the pass is complete.

When species identification is obvious, sort all fish into bins according to species (otherwise sort to the lowest taxonomic level possible⁴). It may be prudent to divide the catches of species into size groupings (e.g. young of year, yearlings, etc.)⁵.

⁴ In Ontario, the Ministry of Natural Resources (OMNR), Department of Fisheries and Oceans and the Royal Ontario Museum (ROM) have started working to develop a fish identification certification program. This partnership would certify individuals in fish identification at different levels of expertise.

Process the fish according to the objectives of the project. Three options are described below:

1. At minimum, record the number of fish in each grouping/species and either a bulk weight (nearest gm) or a representative sample of total lengths⁶.
2. Obtain a representative sample of each species and measure individual lengths and weights of each fish. All remaining fish are counted and weighed in bulk by species.
3. Individual length and weight information are collected from all fish.

For all fish that cannot be positively identified to species, preserve a subsample for laboratory verification.

3.4 Preserving Sampled Fish

Each family group sample should be preserved in 10% buffered formalin and placed in separate Whirl-Pak® bags, jars or resealable bags (doubled). For each bag of preserved fish, record the following:

1. Site identification information (i.e., 'Stream Name', 'Stream Code', 'Site Code')
2. 'Date'
3. 'Bag No' (number consecutively, i.e., '1' of '5')
4. 'Batch #' (the individual identification number used for this record on the fish sampling form)
5. 'Type of Sample' (i.e., whether it represents a random or specific sample)
6. 'No Org' (number of organisms in each bag)
7. 'Suspected Contents' (the family or species code used to identify the fish catch (common name is fine)).
8. 'Collector' (the person who identified the sample).

Use waterproof paper and an HB pencil for labels. The information recorded should correspond to the information recorded in the Fish Sampling Form.

⁵ The following codes are used in HabProgs to describe size groupings: 0 - unsorted or mixed sizes/ages of fish; 1 - young of the year salmonines with total length less than 100 mm; 2 - salmonines with total length greater than 100 mm.

⁶ Total length can be used to estimate individual weight. Therefore, the sample size should be large enough to capture the average size of fish in the sample.

Example Fish Sample Label

Stream Name: WILMOT CREEK Stream Code: WM1 Site Code: 3CDW
Date: 97/08/10 Sample: 1 Bag No: 1 of 5 Batch #: 1 of 4
Type of Sample: RANDOM No Org: 5
Suspected Contents: MOTTLED SCULPIN Collector: K. RYAN

3.5 Recording Data

Record the 'Stream Name', 'Stream Code', 'Site Code' and 'Sample' number on the Fish Sampling Form (see Appendix 1). Samples are consecutively numbered within a calendar year. Record the 'Run' number as applicable (e.g., Run 1 of 1).

Record all data pertaining to the sampling methods used and all survey results on the Fish Sampling Forms. The intent of the survey methods data is to document the factors in each survey that might influence catch. Record the type of electrofisher used and the settings (voltage, frequency and pulse width). Record any deviations from the recommended techniques in the appropriate boxes.

- 'Inexperienced Sampler' indicates that at least one of the crew members did not meet Level 1 certification according to the OMNR electrofishing policy
- 'Imprecise Weigh Scale Used' indicates that the unit used did not have a least 0.5 g accuracy
- 'All Habitats Not Sampled' indicates that some habitat could not be sampled
- 'Upstream Blocknet Used' indicates that a net was used in a single pass survey to reduce escapement from the site.

Record the time that the crew began electrofishing ('Start Time') and the time that they finished ('Stop Time') using the 24-hour clock. Calculate the duration in minutes and record this under 'Elapsed Time'. Also record the electrofishing seconds ('Shocker Sec') from the electrofishing unit, the names of the 'Shocker' and 'Netters', and the number of pages ('Page __ of __') associated with the sample. If more than one page is required, record the site identification data and the date on each page.

Data for individual fish ('Individual fish data') and bulk samples ('Bulk fish data') are recorded as follows:

Individual fish data:

- 'Id #', a unique number that is consecutively recorded (beginning at 1) for each fish
- 'Species', a unique number that refers to each species or family of fish (a list of Ontario fish species codes is provided in Appendix 2)

The first time that the species code is used, record the common name or an acceptable acronym⁷ (as listed in Appendix 2) in the 'Remarks' column. This will provide a backup in case the wrong number was recorded or the number is illegible. There are also columns to record whether the individual fish weight was included in a bulk sample ('B'), whether scales ('S') or otoliths ('O') were taken and if the sample was preserved ('P'). Record any other information on the fish including diseases or malformities in the 'Remarks' column.

Bulk fish data:

- 'Batch #', sequentially identify each bulk sample
- 'Species or Family', code for unidentifiable groups
- 'Number of fish', number of individuals counted
- 'Bulk Weight (gm.)', bulk weight to the nearest gram
- '# Pres.', number preserved
- 'Bag #', allows more than one bag to be recorded per batch (i.e., bags 4 and 5)

Finally, record the name of the person who identified the fish in the field 'Field Id. Name'. If several people were involved, record the person who was responsible for quality control.

Bulk Weights

Bulk weights are obtained by sorting fish into similar species or groups and weighing them as a group. Count the number of fish in the bulk sample. Net all of the fish and allow the water to drain. Place all of the fish into a tared weighing bin and record the bulk weight of the sample to the nearest gram. The weighing bin should contain enough water to cover the fish, this will reduce handling stress.

3.6 Recording the Area Sampled

Site area must be measured so effort and catch can be estimated per unit area (m²). If Point Transect Sampling for Channel Structure, Substrate and Bank Conditions (S4.M2) is being

⁷ For common species, surveyors often use short forms that include distinct letters from the species name, e.g., rainbow trout RBT, mottled sculpin MSC etc. (see Appendix 2). Acronyms should be defined on the field form to prevent misunderstandings.

conducted at this site in the same year, then site length and widths will be available and new measurements are not necessary (place an 'X' in the box titled 'Channel Morphology Data Available').

If this data is not available, an estimate of sample area is required. Chain the length of the site midstream. Measure 10 wetted stream widths (i.e. subtract the width of islands and include undercuts) at approximately even distances along the length of the site. Record the results of these measurements under 'Site Length (m.)' and Stream Width ('Widths (m.)') on the Fish Sampling Form.

3.7 Fish Species Confirmation

Preserved fish need to be identified by a knowledgeable/certified individual. Contact the ROM or OMNR Fisheries Section for a list of certified taxonomists. Provide a photocopy of the original Fish Sampling Form so the contents can be recorded on the form, either under the bulk fish data or on the back of the form (see example in Appendix 1). Record the name of the taxonomist and their level of certification (if applicable) on the form under 'Lab Identification'.

The following protocol is suggested for correcting bulk sample identifications:

1. If a bag contains a mixture of two or more species of the same genus, rerecord the data for that sample to the genus level (e.g., if the bag contains longnose and western blacknose dace, record as *Rhinichthys* - code '226').
2. If a bag contains several species of different genera, rerecord the data to the lowest taxonomic level that appropriately describes the sample (e.g., northern redbelly dace, creek chub and bluntnose minnow would be recorded as minnow family - code '180').
3. Record a weight and count for the appropriate code. For Lab Identification Results, add the new species and counts, but leave the weight box empty.

The weight and count data should be accurate to the level of identification. Crews should staple a copy of the sheet used for lab identification to the original field sheet, changing codes on the field sheets as necessary. In Examples C and D in Appendix I, the Species or Family number for the Bulk Sample 1 (Bag # 1) would be changed from 380 (sculpins) to 381 (mottled sculpin) to reflect the lab identification results.

3.8 Tips for Applying this Module

Avoid overcrowding fish in buckets to reduce mortality from stress and lack of oxygen.

Routinely change the water in all buckets.

Allow sufficient time for anaesthetized fish to recover before releasing them.

Expect to find unfamiliar species at a site. Although mortality should be minimized, preserve representative fish so that identifications can be confirmed.

Laminate and tape the species codes to the back of the clipboard.

While electrofishing, it is important to maintain a high level of interest and alertness among crew members to ensure that effort remains constant. This is usually accomplished by constant verbal communication amongst crew members.

Use Mandrak and Crossman (1992) as a guide to species distribution within the study area and preserve new species that are caught as voucher specimens.

4.0 DATA MANAGEMENT

Upon returning from the field;

1. Create a backup hard copy (i.e., photocopy) of field forms, and store in a place separate from the original.
2. Enter the data into a digital storage system, such as HabProgs, and save backup copies that are stored in a separate location from the master copy.

By storing the data digitally in HabProgs, the data can be shared with a large number of users province-wide. Data sharing will facilitate the refinement and development of habitat suitability models, and this will improve habitat management practices and policies. To meet the requirements of the "Licence to Collect Fish for Scientific Purposes", a report on fish species collected must be sent to OMNR.

5.0 LITERATURE CITED

- Jones, M.L. and J.D. Stockwell. 1995. A rapid assessment procedure for enumeration of Salmonine populations in streams. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management* 15:551-562.
- Mahon, R. 1980. Accuracy of catch-effort methods for estimating fish density and biomass in streams. *Environmental Biology of Fishes*. 5:343-360.

Mandrak, E. and E. J. Crossman. 1992. A checklist of Ontario freshwater fishes. Royal Ontario Museum, Toronto, Canada 176 pp.

Zippen, C. 1958. The removal method of population estimation. *Journal of Wildlife Management* 22:82-90.

Appendix 1
Example Fish Sampling Forms

Example A:

Note that the field identification was carried out by a Certificate Level 2, therefore each of these taxa could be identified to species. No new taxa were identified for this watershed, therefore no fish were preserved. One netter was inexperienced (was not certified with the appropriate number of hours of experience). No channel morphology data was collected in the same year, therefore site length and width data was collected.

Fish Sampling Form

Stream Name WILMOT CREEK		Date (YYYY/MM/DD) 1996/06/24	Sample 1	Run _L of _L	Shocker S. TRUTTA		
Stream Code WMI	Start Time 1030	Stop Time 1145	Netters E. LUCIUS, C. BAIRD				
Site Code 3CDW	Elapsed Time 75	Shocker Sec 2755	Model No. 12B	# Anodes 1	Voltage 300	Frequency 60 Hz	Pulse 4 ms

Individual fish data				B: Bulk P: Preserved		O: Otolith S: Scale		Bulk fish data						
Id#	Species	Length -Total -Fork (circle)	Weight (gm.)	B	P	Species Name/ Remarks	Batch #	Species or Family	Group Num.	Number of Fish	Bulk Weight (gm.)	# P r e s.	Bag #	Species Name/ Remarks
1							1	076	0	10	24			RBT
2							2	078	0	2	4			BRN
3							3	210	0	7	20			WESTERN BLACKNOSE DACE
4							4	212	0	4	30			CREEK CHUB
5							5	211	0	2	12			LONGNOSE DACE
6							6	163	0	3	150			WHITE SUCKER
7							7	209	0	2	12			FATHEAD MINNOW
8							8	198	0	2	9			COMMON SHINER
9							9	381	0	30	102			M. SCULPIN
10														
11														
12														
13														
14														
15														
16														
17														
18														
19														
20														
21														
22														

Field Id. Name: S. TRUTTA	Cert. Level 2
Lab Id. Name:	Cert. Level

Channel Morphology Data Available Yes
 If not, measure the station length and 10 widths No

Site Length (m) 45.5

#	Widths (m.)	#	Widths (m.)
1	5.6	6	5.0
2	5.8	7	5.4
3	6.0	8	5.7
4	4.8	9	6.7
5	4.5	10	8.0

Date and Initials when entered in computer

	Date	Init.
Entered	11/6/01/01	ST
Verified	11/12/01/20	ST
Corrected	11/16/01/01	CB

Deviations. Put X in all boxes that are true

Inexperienced sampler: All Habitats Not Sampled:
 Upstream Blocknet Used: Imprecise Weigh Scale Used:

Explanations: FIRST TIME NETTING FOR C. BAIRD, HE LEARNED QUICKLY

Continued on Back?
 Yes No

Example B:

Note that the field identification was carried out by a Certificate Level 1, and the taxa captured were identifiable to species at this level. No new taxa were identified for this watershed, therefore no fish were preserved. Channel morphology data was collected in the same year, therefore no site length or width data was collected.

Fish Sampling Form

Stream Name WILMOT CREEK		Date (YYYY/MM/DD) 1996/06/24		Sample 1	Run _L of _L	Shocker S. TRUTTA		
Stream Code WMI		Start Time 1030	Stop Time 1145	Netters E. LUCIUS, C. BAIRD				
Site Code 3CDW		Elapsed Time 75	Shocker Sec 2755	Model No. 12B	# Anodes 1	Voltage 300	Frequency 60 Hz	Pulse 4 ms

Individual fish data				B: Bulk P: Preserved		O: Otolith S: Scale		Bulk fish data							
d#	Species	Length (Total Fork) (circle)	Weight (gm.)	B	P	Species Name/ Remarks		Batch #	Species or Family	Group Num.	Number of Fish	Bulk Weight (gm.)	# Pres.	Bag #	Species Name/ Remarks
1	076	115	40			RBT									
2	076	78	7			-									
3	076	75	6			-									
4	076	253	475			-									
5	076	215	376			-									
6	076	130	85			-									
7	076	73	7			-									
8	076	70	6			-									
9	076	68	3			-									
10	076	60	2			-									
11	078	210	301			BRN									
12	078	195	270			-									
13	078	65	3			-									
14	078	95	17			-									
15	163	150	42			WHITE SUCKER									
16	163	122	31			-									
17	163	201	77			-									
18															
19															
20															
21															
22															

Field Id. Name: S. TRUTTA	Cert. Level 1
Lab Id. Name:	Cert. Level

Channel Morphology Data Available Yes
 If not, measure the station length and 10 widths No

Site Length (m.)			
#	Widths (m.)	#	Widths (m.)
1		6	
2		7	
3		8	
4		9	
5		10	

Date and Initials when entered in computer		
	Date	Init.
Entered	1996/10/10	ST
Verified	1996/10/20	ST
Corrected	1996/1/10	CB

Deviations: Put X in all boxes that are true

Inexperienced sampler: All Habitats Not Sampled:

Upstream Blocknet Used: Imprecise Weigh Scale Used:

Explanations:

Continued on Back?

Yes No

Example C:

This field record shows a combination of individual and bulk data. Note that the field identification was carried out by a Certificate Level 1, therefore cyprinidae and sculpins were preserved. The crew separated *Rhynchichthys sp.*, as they were confident that this group was either long- or western blacknose dace. Total lengths of young of year (< 100 mm) rainbow and brown trout were bulk weighed and recorded as Group 0. Scale samples were taken from representative fish in the sample.

Fish Sampling Form

Stream Name WILMOT CREEK		Date (YYYY/MM/DD) 1999/06/24	Sample 1	Run 1 of 1	Shocker S. TRUTTA
Stream Code WIMI	Start Time 1030	Stop Time 1145	Notes E. LUCIUS, C. BAIRD		
Site Code 3CDW	Elapsed Time 75	Shocker Sec 2755	Model No. 12B	# Anodes 1	Voltage 300
				Frequency 60 Hz	Pulse 4 ms

Individual fish data				B: Bulk P: Preserved		O: Otolith S: Scale		Bulk fish data					# Pres.	Bag #	Species Name/ Remarks	
Id#	Species	Length (Total Fork (circle))	Weight (gm.)	B	P	O	S	Batch #	Species or Family	Group Num	Number of Fish	Bulk Weight (gm.)				
1	076	115	40		X				1	076	J	10	24		RAINBOW TROUT	
2	076	78	7		X				2	078	I	2	4		BROWN TROUT	
3	076	75	6		X				3	380	0	30	102	6	1	SCULPIN
4	076	253	475		X				4	226	0	9	32	9	2	RHYNCHITHYS
5	076	215	376		X				5	180	0	8	41	8	3	CYPRINIDAE
6	076	130	85		X				6	163	0	3	150			WHITE SUCKER
7	076	73	7		X											
8	076	70	6		X											
9	076	110	28		X											
10	078	210	301		X											BRN
11	078	195	270													
12	078	80	10													
13	078	95	17													
14	077	130	35		X											NO CLIPS ATS
15	77	125	32		X											NO CLIPS ATS
16	177	120	30		X											NO CLIPS ATS
17	076	65	-		X											RBT
18	076	63	-		X											
19	076	68	-		X											
20	076	60	-		X											
21	076	61	-		X											
22	076	58	-		X											

Field Id. Name: **S. TRUTTA** Cert. Level: **1**

Lab Id. Name: _____ Cert. Level: _____

Date and initials when entered in computer

Entered	176/10/10	ST
Verified	176/10/10	ST
Corrected	176/10/10	CB

Channel Morphology Data Available Yes
 If not, measure the station length and 10 widths No

Site Length (m) **45.5**

#	Widths (m.)	#	Widths (m.)
1	5.6	6	5.0
2	5.8	7	5.4
3	6.0	8	5.7
4	6.3	9	6.7
5	4.5	10	8.0

Deviations: Put X in all boxes that are true

Inexperienced sampler: All Habitats Not Sampled:

Upstream Blocknet Used: Imprecise Weigh Scale Used:

Explanations: _____

Continued on Back?

Yes No

Example D:

Lab identification results are recorded on this field sheet. Note that the bag number must be recorded to enable summary reports to accurately record results to the most accurate level of identification. The summary report will be able to report that the bulk catch of sculpins were of one species i.e., mottled sculpin, as long as the bag number and number of fish are recorded.

Fish Sampling Form

Stream Name WILMOT CREEK		Date (YYYY/MM/DD) 1996/06/24	Sample 1	Run L of L	Shocker S. TRUTTA	
Stream Code WMI	Start Time 1030	Stop Time 1145	Netters E. LUCIUS, C. BAIRD			
Site Code 3CDW	Elapsed Time 75	Shocker Sec 2755	Model No. 12B	# Anodes 1	Voltage 300	Frequency 60 Hz
					Pulse 4 ms	

Individual fish data				B Bulk P: Preserved		O: Otolith S: Scale		Bulk fish data									
Id#	Species	Length (Total Fork (circle))	Weight (gm.)	B	P	O	S	Species Name/ Remarks	Batch #	Species or Family	Group Num.	Number of Fish	Bulk Weight (gm.)	# P r e s.	Bag #	Species Name/ Remarks	
																	1
2	076	78	7					-	2	078	1	2	4			BROWN TROUT	
3	076	75	6					-	3	380	0	30	102	6	1	SCULPIN	
4	076	253	475					-	4	226	0	9	32	9	2	RHYNCHITHYS	
5	076	215	376					-	5	180	0	8	41	8	3	CYPRINIDAE	
6	076	130	85					-	6	163	0	3	150			WHITE SUCKER	
7	076	73	7					-	LAB IDENTIFICATION RESULTS								
8	076	70	6					-	3	381		6	-		1	MOTTLED SCULPIN	
9	076	110	28					-	4	210		7	-		2	WESTERN BLACKNOSE DACE	
10	078	210	301					BRN	4	211		2	-		2	LONGNOSE DACE	
11	078	195	270					-	5	212		4	-		3	CREEK CHUB	
12	078	80	10					-	5	198		2	-		3	COMMON SHINER	
13	078	95	17					-	5	209		2	-		3	FATHEAD MINNOW	
14	077	130	35		X			NO CLIPS ATS									
15	77	125	32		X			NO CLIPS ATS									
16	177	120	30		X			NO CLIPS ATS									
17	076	65	-		X			RBT									
18	076	63	-		X			-									
19	076	68	-		X			-									
20	076	60	-		X			-									
21	076	61	-		X			-									
22	076	58	-		X			-									

Field Id. Name: S. TRUTTA	Cert. Level 1
Lab Id. Name: S. GIBBS	Cert. Level 2
Date and initials when entered in computer	
Entered	1996/10/10 S1
Verified	1996/10/20 S1
Corrected	1996/11/10 CB

Channel Morphology Data Available Yes
 If not, measure the station length and 10 widths No

Site Length (m) 45.5

#	Widths (m.)	#	Widths (m.)
1	5.6	6	5.0
2	5.8	7	5.4
3	6.0	8	5.7
4	4.8	9	6.7
5	4.5	10	3.0

Deviations: Put X in all boxes that are true

Inexperienced sampler: All Habitats Not Sampled:

Upstream Blocknet Used: Imprecise Weigh Scale Used:

Explanations: ALL LAB IDENTIFICATION RESULTS HAVE BEEN ENTERED INTO THE DATABASE - VERY FEW FISH MISSED

Continued on Back?
 Yes No

Example E:

Partial printout of a data entry screen illustrating how to enter laboratory identified specimens. Note data with a bag number and no weight data indicate they are laboratory identified fish. This information is essential for accurate summary statistics.

Fish Sample Data Entry Form

Stream Name: Year: Shocker Seconds: Voltage:
 Stream Code: Date: Stop Time: Model Num ber: Frequency:
 Site Code: Sample: Blasted Time: # of Anodes: Pulse:

Run: of Shocker: Netter:

Individual fish data

Total Length Weight (mm.) (gm.) ?

ID	Species	Length (mm.)	Weight (gm.)	?	Remark
1	76	115	40		RBT
2	76	78	7		
3	76	75	6		
4	76	253	475		
5	76	215	376		
6	76	130	85		
7	76	73	7		
8	76	70	6		
9	76	110	28		
10	78	210	301		ENT
11	78	80	10		
12	78	95	17		
13	77	130	35	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ATS NO CLIPS
14	77	125	32	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ATS NO CLIPS
15	77	120	30	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ATS NO CLIPS
16	76	65		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	RBT YOY
17	76	63		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
18	76	68		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
19	76	60		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	

Bulk fish data

Batch #	Species #	Grp. #	of weight Fish (gm.)	Pres. #	Bag #	Remark
1	76	1	10	24	0	RBT
2	380	0	30	102	6	1 SCULPIN
3	226	0	9	32	9	2 RHYNCHTHYS
4	180	0	8	41	8	3 CYPRINIDAE
5	163	0	3	150	0	WHITE SUCKER
6	381	0	6		1	MOTTLED SCULPIN
7	210	0	4		2	WESTERN B LACKING
8	211	0	5		2	LONGNOSE DACE

Add a New Fish Species Code to the Code List

Check if channel morphology measurements taken.
 If not, enter here Length (m.): # Width (m.):

Enter the name(s) of person(s) responsible for identifying fish
 Name: Cert:

Print Verification Copy
 Close Form

Deviations: Put check in all boxes that are true
 Experienced sampler: All Habitat Not Sampled:
 Upstream Blocknet Used: Imprecise Weigh Scale:



Appendix 2

Fish Identification Codes

ONTARIO STREAM ASSESSMENT PROTOCOL

SECTION 4

Assessing Physical Processes and Channel Structure

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Module Code	Title	Type
S4.M1	Rapid Assessment Methodology for Channel Structure	Screening Surveys
S4.M2	Point-Transect Sampling for Channel Structure, Substrate and Bank Conditions	Assessment Surveys and Diagnostic Surveys for some variables
S4.M3	Bankfull Profiles and Channel Entrenchment	Diagnostic Surveys
S4.M4	Reconnaissance Surveys of Stream Discharge	Screening Surveys
S4.M5	Measuring Stream Discharge Quantitatively	Assessment Surveys and Diagnostic Surveys
S4.M6	Estimating Stream Discharge and Rapid Assessment Methodology for Measuring Hydrologic Response to Storm Events	Screening Surveys

INTRODUCTION

The modules in this section provide standard methodologies for assessing habitat in wadeable streams. The data collected will allow analysis of the channel structure (e.g., cover, substrate), channel processes (e.g., hydrology, sediment transport), and the stream's suitability for biota. Standardizing data collection procedures enables comparisons to be made across spatial and temporal scales by reducing error and controlling biases. Providing standard methodologies that vary in the accuracy of the data collected offers flexibility for users to accommodate different study designs.

A summary of the procedures, the effort required to implement them, and the accuracy of data collected for each are provided below. Additional details are provided in the Introduction section of each module.

Some of the modules in this section require the use of transects. These can be used to collect data for more than one module (i.e., modules can be applied individually or in conjunction with each other).

Accepted standard protocols in this section include:

S4.M1: Rapid Assessment Methodology for Channel Structure

This module is designed to provide visual estimates of channel structure, substrate and bank condition. The Rapid Assessment Methodology for Channel Structure (RAM) adapts the point-transect approach, by visually classifying the habitat along transects. RAM can be completed in much less time than it would take to complete the full point-transect method (S4.M2, see below) and produces a more repeatable assessment than conventional visual assessments. RAM is best applied to studies that are designed to evaluate overall conditions across spatial scales.

S4.M2: Point-Transect Sampling for Channel Structure, Substrate and Bank Conditions

This module provides screening level and diagnostic techniques to evaluate the physical conditions important to biota in wadeable streams. Screening level techniques are described for evaluating riparian conditions, bank vegetation, sinuosity, bankfull width, confinement and velocity. Diagnostic techniques offer more precision to quantify channel roughness, low flow width and depth, substrate composition and diversity, amount of wood material, instream cover and vegetation and degree of undercutting. The sampling effort applied for each attribute is determined by the level of precision required to demonstrate the relationships between biota and physical habitat characteristics. This module can be used for studies to evaluate change in conditions across temporal or spatial scales.

S4.M3: Bankfull Profiles and Channel Entrenchment

This module describes a quantitative method for measuring the bankfull cross-sectional profile. Techniques for recording channel entrenchment (i.e., a measure of channel confinement within the floodplain) are also outlined.

Identifying the bankfull level requires a basic understanding of stream dynamics. While the methods described in this module are intended to provide reliable and repeatable measures, they require interpretative skills. Further, bankfull profile measurements are more easily applied on stable channels. This module is best applied as a monitoring or assessment tool for evaluating changes in the channel profile that may result from geomorphic processes.

S4.M4: Reconnaissance Surveys for Stream Discharge

This module contains instructions for estimating discharge on wadeable streams using qualitative methods. These methods are used mainly for reconnaissance purposes as they confirm the presence of flow, provide a measure of relative discharge, and information on the suitability of sites for more rigorous sampling. The use of these preliminary observations will ensure that field studies are planned and conducted effectively and efficiently.

Data collected using this module will have higher error rates than more quantitative surveys as outlined in S4.M5. This module is best applied by surveyors experienced in measuring discharge at sites.

S4.M5: Measuring Stream Discharge Quantitatively

This module contains instructions for measuring discharge on wadeable streams, using the Volume/Time Method and the Area Times Velocity Method. The data are useful for long-term monitoring and impact assessment studies. These procedures can be used for characterizing baseflow conditions or for determining a point-in-time response to a storm event.

S4.M6: Estimating Stream Discharge and Rapid Assessment Methodology for Measuring Hydrologic Response to Storm Events

This module describes an economical and reliable method of measuring the maximum depth of water over a period of time (i.e., typically through a storm event). These methods collect screening level information about the flashiness of a stream and are suitable for large-scale surveys which require an evaluation of many sites. This module can provide an indicator of the watershed's response time and pattern to a storm/drought event.

ONTARIO STREAM ASSESSMENT PROTOCOL

SECTION 4: MODULE 1

Rapid Assessment Methodology for Channel Structure¹

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0	INTRODUCTION.....	1
2.0	PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES.....	1
3.0	FIELD PROCEDURES.....	2
3.1	Recording the Site Identification Information.....	2
3.2	Defining the Site Boundaries.....	2
3.3	Setting up Transects and Observation Points.....	2
3.3.1	Channel Structure.....	3
3.3.2	Instream Cover.....	4
3.3.3	Substrate Types.....	5
3.3.3.1	Point Particle.....	5
3.3.3.2	Maximum Particle.....	6
3.3.4	Habitat Stability.....	7
3.3.4.1	Mean Width at Crossover.....	7
3.3.4.2	Mean Depth at Crossover.....	7
3.3.4.3	Maximum Particle Size.....	7
3.3.4.4	Bank Stability.....	7
3.4	Tips for Applying this Module.....	8
4.0	DATA MANAGEMENT.....	8
5.0	LITERATURE CITED.....	9

APPENDICES

- Appendix 1. Training Crews in the Use of RAM
- Appendix 2. Developing Calibration Ratios for RAM
- Appendix 3. Example Rapid Assessment Methodology Field Form

¹ Authors: L. W. Stanfield and M. L. Jones

1.0 INTRODUCTION

Techniques for conducting screening level assessments of fish habitat conditions are described in this module. While this methodology is defensible and variance can be quantified, data collected using this tool are mostly visual and are therefore inherently biased. A procedure for calibrating the biases is also described.

This module provides a Rapid Assessment Methodology (RAM) which is a screening level characterization of stream habitat at a site. Data collected includes substrate, depth, instream morphology and bank stability. The RAM incorporates the point-transect approach which improves repeatability over conventional non-point transect visual assessments (Hawkins et al. 1993). It is best applied in studies that have one of the following objectives:

- to evaluate a large number of sites with limited time and resources
- conduct a screening level investigation of habitat suitability at a site for specific fish species.

If more accurate results are required a full point-transect method should be considered (S4.M2, Point-Transect Sampling for Channel Structure, Substrate and Bank Conditions).

2.0 PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES

A typical habitat survey of a site should take between 10 to 20 minutes. A two-person crew is recommended for safety. Field surveys should follow a training program (see Appendix I).

Pre-field activities should include:

- Landowner contact
- Documentation of site access and appropriate stream identifiers (see Section 1, Site Identification and Documentation)
- Equipment check

The following equipment is required:

1. RAM Field Forms on waterproof paper
2. Pencils
3. Metre stick
4. Tape measure
5. Maps

Optional equipment includes:

6. Calculator
7. Hip chain
8. Flagging tape
9. Compass
10. Site marking equipment and
11. Camera

Crews should adhere to safety precautions and requirements set forth by their employers /managers i.e., first aid kit, first aid training, travel plan, buddy system, mobile phone etc.

3.0 FIELD PROCEDURES

Procedures outlined below include defining site boundaries, recording site information, and measurement of channel features, bank conditions and substrate.

3.1 Recording the Site Identification Information

The module should be done in conjunction with S1.M1, Defining Site Boundaries and Key Identifiers and S1.M2, Screening Level Site Documentation. Additional information required depends on the objectives of the study and resources available.

Record the 'Site Type' as a calibration (C) or survey (S) site. A calibration site is one at which both RAM and the point-transect methodology data are collected and used to develop the correction factors for the RAM data (Appendix 1 and 2).

3.2 Defining the Site Boundaries

The site boundaries are defined as per S1.M1. If no accurate data on site length are available, record the approximate length of the site (± 3 m). This is accomplished by either chaining up the centre of the stream (most accurate) or by pacing up the channel or the banks, depending on site conditions. Record the site length on the Site Identification Form, mark with an asterisk (*), if anything other than chaining was used to obtain this measurement, and include an explanation in the 'Comments' section indicating that the site length was estimated. On the RAM Field Form (Appendix 3), record the appropriate unique identifiers for the site (see S1.M1).

3.3 Setting up Transects and Observation Points

Begin at the downstream end of the site and walk upstream (observing and recording the habitat conditions as you go) until the top of the site is reached. If chaining is used to measure

site length, crews may mark the transect locations on the banks during the return trip to the bottom of the site. Transects should be evenly spaced along the site (i.e., about 10 transects, one every 4 to 5 m for a site that is 40 m in length).

Beginning at the first downstream transect, visually locate six or more observation points along the transect. Depth, velocity and point substrate measurements are made directly below the observation point, whereas cover and maximum particle size measurements are made within a visualized 30 cm ring centered on the observation point (referred to as the 'observation area').

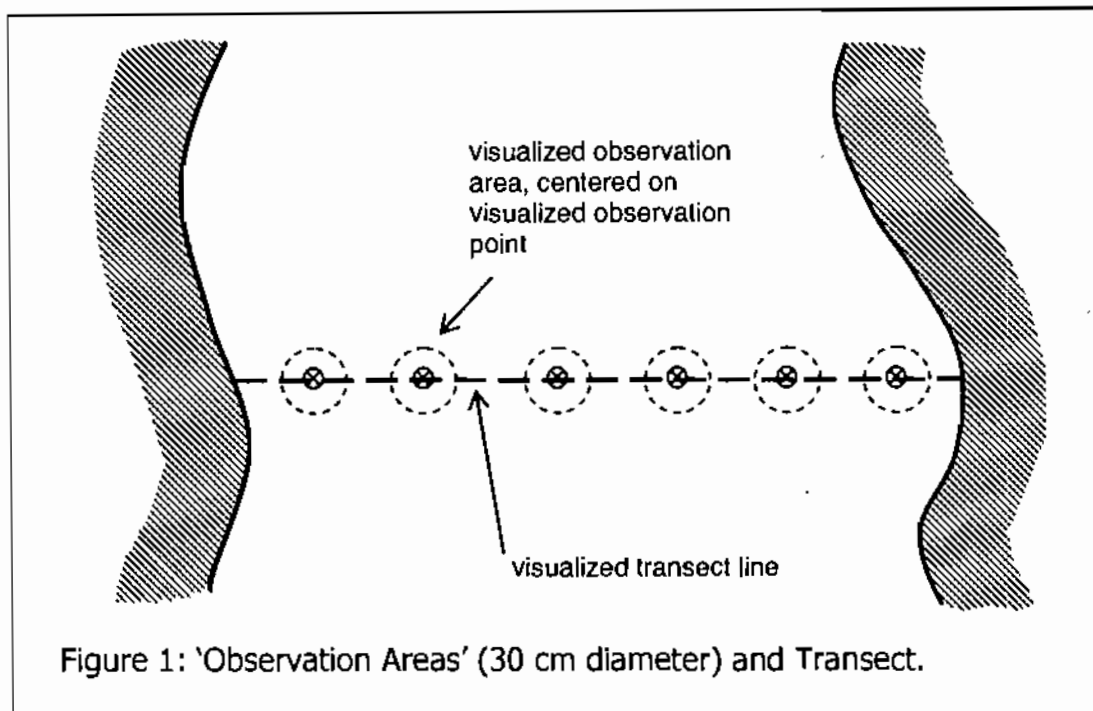


Figure 1: 'Observation Areas' (30 cm diameter) and Transect.

3.3.1 Channel Structure

A variety of techniques may be used to collect channel structure data, depending on the experience of the crew and the complexity of habitat. Techniques include collecting most of the data from shore in relatively homogenous sites or by walking across each transect, stopping at each observation point to collect data.

At each observation point measure hydraulic head (velocity) to classify habitat into four categories: pools, glides, slow riffles and fast riffles (Table 1). Then measure/estimate water depth to classify points into shallow, moderate, intermediate or deep habitats (Table 2). Finally, determine whether there is unembedded cover present or absent. Cover is assessed within a visualized 30 cm ring centered on the observation point (see section 3.3.2 Instream Cover of

this module). Combine these three measures (hydraulic head, depth and cover) to classify and record each observation in the 'Channel Structure' section of the RAM Field Form using the dot tally method (one dot per observation point).

Hydraulic Head

The difference in height of water between the front and back of a vertically held ruler that is placed at right angles to the flow of water (see S4.M2, Point-Transect Sampling for Channel Structure, Substrate and Bank Conditions for more details).

Table 1: Descriptions of Habitat Categories (adapted from Aadland et al. 1991).

Habitat Categories	Descriptions
'Pools'	hydraulic head of 0 to 3 mm
'Glides'	hydraulic head of 4 to 7 mm (evidence of little turbulence and moderate velocities)
'Slow Riffles'	hydraulic head of 8 to 17 mm (fast velocities)
'Fast Riffles'	hydraulic head greater than 17 mm (very fast velocities)

Conducting a Dot Tally ('Box Ten')

Dot tallies are used as a convenient means of recording data when a number of categories are being counted simultaneously. One dot or line represents a single observation. **Four** dots are used to form the outside of a box. Then **four** lines are used to form the outside of the box and finally **two** lines are used to form a cross for a total of **ten** observations per filled box. Make sure the dots are large enough that they aren't mistaken for photocopy imperfections.

3.3.2 Instream Cover

Measure cover within a visualized 30 cm ring centered on the observation point. Record and document the occurrences and all types of unembedded cover present (i.e., cover with interstitial spaces that enable small fish to hide underneath the object) within each sample area, using the dot tally method (Table 2). For example, if there is a boulder and log at one observation point record **one** dot in each of the boxes for 'Cover Types': 'Round Rock' and 'Wood'.

Instream Cover

A cover particle is any object that touches the water within the sample area, is **at least 100 mm wide** along the median axis and of sufficient density to block >75 % of sunlight from reaching the stream bottom. A cover particle can consist of a mat of materials such as twigs,

macrophytes, or the bank. The mat must still meet the median diameter size and light penetration restrictions.

Table 2: Definitions for Cover Types.

Cover Type	Description
'Flat Rock'	The longitudinal axis is at least twice as long as the shortest axis, i.e., ratio of longitudinal axis/shortest axis > 2.
'Round Rock'	The longitudinal axis is less than twice as long as the shortest axis, i.e., ratio of longitudinal axis/shortest axis < 2.
'Wood'	Living or dead woody materials (includes mats of twigs, shrubs).
'Macrophytes'	Living aquatic and terrestrial non-woody plants.
'Bank'	Bank material which contain soils (fine materials) i.e., undercuts and slumped banks or parts of banks which have become dislodged and are now lying in the main channel.
'Other'	Any other type of material not covered by the above categories (e.g. tires, refrigerators, cars).

Flat versus Round Rocks

Flat and round rocks are recorded separately based on the different levels of suitability of these cover types for various species of fish (Ed Crossman, Royal Ontario Museum, pers. comm.).

3.3.3 Substrate Types

This section assesses the substrate and sediment transport characteristics of the site, within the context of the type of parent material available to the stream. There are two types of channels, bedrock and alluvial. Bedrock streams can either be erodible (shale) or not (granite). Alluvial streams have parent material of either fine (sand), medium (gravel), or coarse (cobble) particulate materials. In order to understand the relationship of parent substrate materials and bedload transport, measurements and comparisons are made between **maximum particle** and **point particle** sizes.

3.3.3.1 Point Particle

Across each transect, visually estimate the percentage of substrate (in 10% increments) as fines (sand), gravel, cobble or bedrock. Record the percentages using the dot tally procedure, where each dot accounts for 10% of the transect. For example, if the proportions are sand (10%), gravel (80%) and cobble (10%), there would be one dot for each of fines and cobble, and eight dots for gravel. There should be a total of 10 dots per transect, and 100 dots when 10 transects are completed. If the technique of walking across each transect is used, surveyors may choose to evaluate substrate below each observation point as a more accurate alternative.

3.3.3.2 Maximum Particle

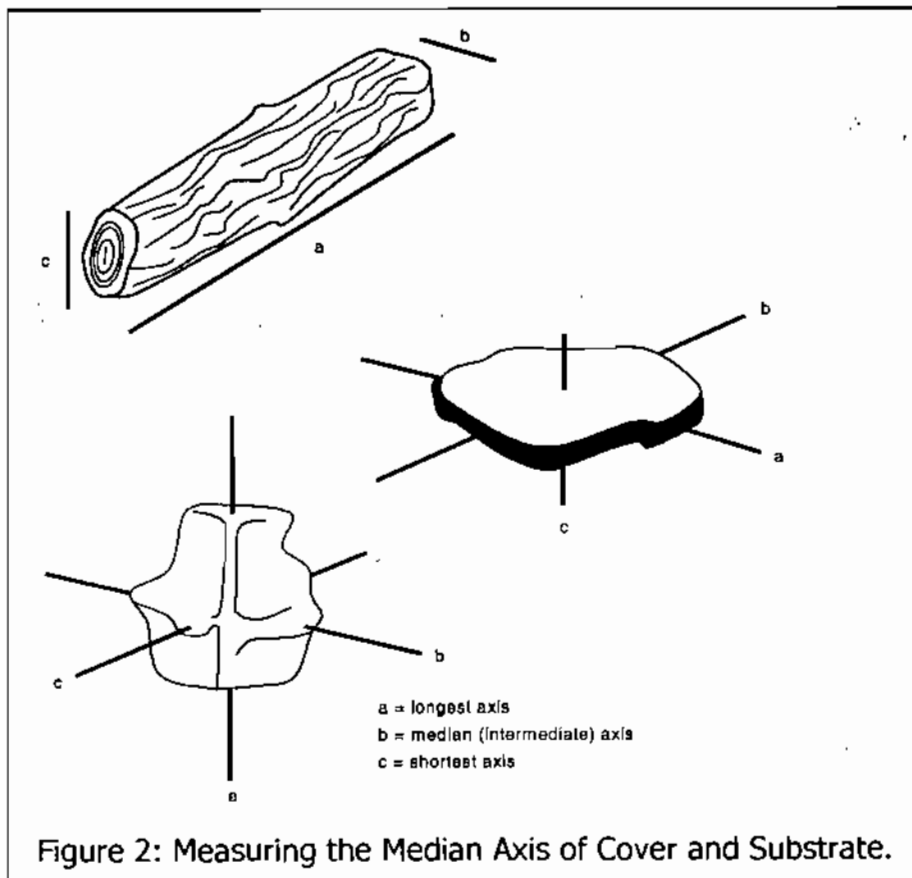
At each observation area (i.e., 30 cm circular sampling area) on the transect, estimate and record (dot tally) the maximum particle size observed based on substrate categories listed in Table 3.

Table 3: Descriptions of Substrate Categories adapted from Dodge et al (1984).

Substrate Categories	Median Axis of Largest Particle Observed is
'Fines' (sand, silt, clay)	< 2 mm.
'Gravel'	2 to 100 mm.
'Cobble'	101 to 1000 mm.
'Bedrock'	> 1000 mm.

Median Axis

There are three axes to every particle. The median axis represents the intermediate width of any particle (Figure 2). Rocks will often lie with the median axis at right angles to the flow.



3.3.4 Habitat Stability

This section provides guidance on how to measure 'Mean Stream Width', 'Mean Depth at Crossover', 'Maximum Particle Size', and 'Bank Stability (i.e., 'Eroding Bank', 'Vulnerable Bank', 'Protected Bank', 'Deposition Zone')'.

3.3.4.1 Mean Width at Crossover

At the bottom of the site (i.e., at crossover point), measure and record the wetted width of the stream in the box marked 'Mean Stream Width (m)'. Measure to the nearest tenth of a metre.

3.3.4.2 Mean Depth at Crossover

At the same crossover transect estimate the average water depth. Water depth at crossover points should be relatively uniform across the channel. The measurement could be taken using several techniques (e.g., measurement of several points across the transect with a metre stick, use of a wading rod). Record the water depth to the nearest 5 mm, (e.g. a water depth of 17 mm should be recorded as 15 mm).

3.3.4.3 Maximum Particle Size

Within the site boundaries, find and measure the largest rock that has been moved by the stream. Ignore rocks that are likely to be erratics or other rocks in the stream that have obviously been in place for long periods of time. For example, if erosion is evident on either side of the rock, it should not be included in this measure. If there are several rocks that are similar in size, a representative rock should be selected. Measure and record the median axis (to the nearest mm) in the 'Maximum Particle Size' box on the RAM Field Form.

3.3.4.4 Bank Stability

Categorize both banks of each transect using the following categories (Table 4). Record using the dot tally method.

Table 4: Descriptions of Bank Stability Categories.

Bank Stability Categories	Interface between Water and Bank	Bank Soil/Substrate	Characteristics of Bank
'Eroding Bank'	Steep, >45°	erodible materials	undercut (by at least 5 cm) or shows signs of recent slumping (i.e. no or little vegetation present)

Bank Stability Categories	Interface between Water and Bank	Bank Soil/Substrate	Characteristics of Bank
'Vulnerable Bank'	Steep, >45°	erodible materials	shows no recent signs of erosion (i.e., undercuts or slumping) and protected by a mat of live vegetation
'Protected Bank'	Steep, >45°	non-erodible materials (e.g., rock, boulders or hardened clay)	vegetation may or may not be present, includes banks armoured by humans
'Deposition Zone'	Gentle, <45°	generally, materials which have been deposited by the river during its flood condition	

3.4 Tips for Applying this Module

Crews using this module should have experience with the point-transect methodology. It is strongly recommended that crews be trained and have enough field experience to ensure repeatability.

Project managers should establish a training program for crews at the outset of the study and a follow-up assessment to ensure that data are acceptable (Appendices 2, 3).

Data should be recorded while proceeding up the stream and then summarized before leaving the site.

4.0 DATA MANAGEMENT

Upon returning from the field;

1. Create a backup hard copy (i.e., photocopy) of field forms, and store in a place separate from the original.
2. Enter the data into a digital storage system, such as HabProgs, and save backup copies that are stored in a separate location from the master copy.

By storing the data digitally in HabProgs, the data can be shared with a large number of users province-wide. Data sharing will facilitate the refinement and development of habitat suitability models, and this will improve habitat management practices and policies.

If data has been collected at calibration sites use the procedures described in Appendix 3 to develop correction factors for the variables of interest to the project.

5.0 LITERATURE CITED

- Aadland, L.P., C.M. Cook, M.T. Negus, H.G. Drewess and C.S. Anderson. 1991. Microhabitat preferences of selected stream fishes and a community-oriented approach to instream flow assessments. Investigational Report No. 406. Minnesota Department of Natural Resources, Section of Fisheries.
- Dodge, D.P., G.A. Goodchild, I. MacRitchie, J.C. Tilt and D.G. Waldriff. 1984. Manual of Instructions. Aquatic Habitat Inventory Surveys. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Fisheries Branch, Official Procedures Manual.
- Doloff, C.A., D.G. Hankin and G.H. Reeves. 1993. Basinwide estimation of habitat and fish populations in streams. General Technical Report SE-83. United States Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Southeastern Forest Experimental Station.
- Hawkins, C. P., J. L. Kreshner, P.A. Bisson, M.D. Bryant, L.M. Decker, S.V. Gregory, D.A. McCullough, C.K. Overton, G.H. Reeves, R.J. Steedman and M.K. Young. 1993. A Hierarchical Approach to Classifying Stream Habitat Features. Fisheries. 18(6):3-12.

Appendix 1

Training Crews in the Use of RAM

RAM data is most valuable when it can be collected by a crew in a consistent manner such that strong correlations can be established between it and more rigorous methods (i.e., S4.M2, Point-Transect Sampling for Channel Structure, Substrate and Bank Conditions). We recommend the following procedures for training field crews in the use of this module to maximize the utility of the data collected:

Carry out the point transect survey and RAM at as many transects as needed for the crew to feel confident in their results. Ensure that the types of habitat assessed cover the range expected in the overall study.

1. Set up a transect line and mark the location of each observation point.
2. Using the criteria on the RAM Field Form, visually classify the instream habitat and substrate at each observation point and then rate the bank conditions as to their vulnerability to erosion.
3. Repeat the process at each observation point and on the banks using the point transect methods described in S4.M2, Point-Transect Sampling for Channel Structure, Substrate and Bank Conditions.
4. Compare the results of the two methods, discussing where results differ and why.
5. Repeat this process until there is congruence between the two methods. Compare results for each category of habitat at the end of each transect and again at the completion of the training period. All visual observations should be within 1 category of the point-transect data and there should be at least 90% agreement in the number of classes determined using each method (i.e., number of shallow pools using point transect / RAM should exceed 0.9).
6. As a final stage, we recommend that several transects be evaluated before the tape measure is set up, to ensure that crews are able to visually establish the appropriate spacing for both transects and observation points.

The time required to train crews will depend greatly on their experience. Managers should be prepared to allocate at least two sites (one day) for this exercise.

Appendix 2

Developing Calibration Ratios for RAM

Introduction

Here we describe how the methods of Doloff et al. (1993) can be used to develop calibration coefficients for data collected using the point transect methodology (S4.M2) and RAM (S4.M1). This enables users to develop a higher degree of accuracy in their estimates of habitat than is generally possible if only RAM is used. This task requires four steps:

- establishing calibration and study sites and the sampling sequence
- collecting field data
- establishing the calibration coefficients
- application of correction factors to data and calculate confidence limits

Step 1: Establishing calibration and study sites and the sampling sequence

Project managers must determine (randomly) the larger of 10 sites or 10 % of total sample sites. These will become locations where both RAM and the point transect methods will be applied. These sites are referred to as calibration sites. Establish a sampling schedule that balances logistics with the need to spread the collection of calibration site data randomly across the duration of the study.

Note: If multiple crews are used on a survey and there are consistently different biases (i.e., one crew is always high and the other low we recommend that independent calibration be developed for each crew. Any site within your study area or comparable areas of geology can be used as calibration sites for your crews, provided the habitat does not measurably change between the two sample periods. Therefore it may be possible for studies to use data from other studies to develop calibration ratios as a cost saving measure.

Step 2: Field Data Collection

Collect the field data, ensuring that at any calibration site, the RAM data is collected first. Only after the RAM has been collected for the entire site should the point transect surveys be initiated.

Step 3: Developing Calibration Ratios

After entering and verifying that all data is correct, extract the appropriate data required for the study and summarize the results. The data points should be plotted and the R^2 value between the methods should be greater than 0.50. If it is not, do not attempt to create calibration coefficients. Use data from the calibration sites to develop calibration coefficients for each attribute of interest as follows:

$$\hat{Q} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n m_i}{\sum_{i=1}^n x_i}$$

where,

m_i = point transect habitat variable for each calibration site i , $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$

x_i = RAM estimate of habitat variable for each site i , $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$

For example, the results of a point transect and RAM survey for the percent cover are shown below:

Point Transect:	10, 15, 17, 3, 68, 23, 24, 14, 9, 12 = 195
RAM	5, 10, 20, 0, 50, 10, 20, 20, 10, 10 = 155

The calibration ratio for this variable would be:

$$\hat{Q} = 195/155 = 1.26$$

Step 4: Application of correction factors to data and calculate confidence limits

The adjusted habitat scores (\hat{M}) for the study can be estimated by multiplying the mean value for the attribute from all of the sites in the study (T_x) by the calibration ratio (\hat{Q}).

$$\hat{M} = T_x \hat{Q}$$

For example if the mean estimate of cover for the entire data set was 24, then the corrected estimate would be:

$$1.26 \cdot 24 = 30$$

This technique is only appropriate for large-scale basin wide surveys as it does not correct individual site biases.

The uncertainty of the estimate for each habitat attribute for the entire survey data set can be calculated from sample data using:

$$\hat{V}(\hat{M}) = \frac{N(N-n)}{n(n-1)} \sum_{i=1}^n (m_i - \hat{Q}_i)^2$$

where

N = the total number of sites surveyed using the point transect technique

n = the total number of sites surveyed using the RAM

m_i = measured estimate of the habitat variable i .

\hat{Q}_i = predicted estimate of habitat variable i .

This equation approximates the variance (\hat{V}) for large sample sizes (i.e., > 10 samples). This equation shows that the variance depends on two very different factors, sample size and consistency in application of the RAM. First, variance decreases as the sample size increases, a manager can always reduce variance in the study by increasing the proportion of the sites sampled, using both the point transect and RAM. Second, the summation term expresses the squared differences between the habitat attributes measured using the point transect and RAM. The more closely correlated the results of the two methods are, the lower the variance will be. The other way to reduce variance is to ensure that the field procedures for measuring the RAM and transect methods are applied consistently for all sample sites.

The 95 % confidence intervals for the habitat attributes can be estimated using the following:

$$\hat{M} \pm t_{0.05, n-1} \sqrt{\hat{V}(\hat{M})}$$

For more information on this technique see Doloff et al. (1993).

Note: Check the data for obvious errors and outliers and either correct or delete as appropriate.

Appendix 3
Example Rapid Assessment Methodology Field Form

Rapid Assessment Methodology Field Form

Stream Name: WILMOT CK	Stream Code (Unique Code): W(1)	Year: 1997	Sample #: 1	Date: (YY/MM/DD): 17/09/10	Site Type (C - Calibration, S - Survey): C
Site Code: 3CDW					

Channel Structure Crew: S. TRUTTA S. SALAR

Depth (mm)	Pools (Hydraulic Head = 0 - 3 mm)		Glides (Hydraulic Head = 4 - 7 mm)		Slow Riffles (Hydraulic Head = 8 - 17 mm)		Fast Riffles (Hydraulic Head > 17 mm)	
	No Cover	Cover Present	No Cover	Cover Present	No Cover	Cover Present	No Cover	Cover Present
0 - 100 mm	••••	••••	••••	••••	••••	••••	••••	••••
101 - 200 mm	□	••••	□	••••	□	••••	••••	••••
201 - 500 mm	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
501 - 1000 mm								
> 1000 mm								
Total # Points	13	6	12	4	14	8	3	0

Instream Cover

Cover Types	Flint Rock	Round Rock	Wood	Macrophytes	Bank	Other
Number of Points	•	□	••••	•	••	•

Substrate Types	Fines (<= 2 mm)	Gravel (2 - 100 mm)	Cobble (> 100 mm)	Bedrock
Maximum Particle	□□□□□□□□	□□□□□□□□	□□□□	••
Point Particle	□	□□□□□□□□	□□□□	••

Bank Stability	Mean Stream Width (m): 5.5	Mean Depth at Crossover (mm): 25	Maximum Particle Size (mm): 250
----------------	----------------------------	----------------------------------	---------------------------------

Bank Stability	Mean Stream Width (m)	Mean Depth at Crossover (mm)	Maximum Particle Size (mm)
Eroding Bank	•	Angle > 45°, erodible soil, undercut or bare soil	
Vulnerable Bank	□	Angle > 45°, erodible soil, no sign of recent erosion	
Protected Bank		Angle > 45°, non-erodible material / soil	
Deposition Zone	□	Angle < 45°, (gradual slope from river), fine grained sediments	

Enter dates and initials when data entered in computer.	
Entered	Date
Verified	Initi.
Corrected	

ONTARIO STREAM ASSESSMENT PROTOCOL

SECTION 4: MODULE 2

Point-Transect Sampling for Channel Structure, Substrate and Bank Conditions¹

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0	INTRODUCTION.....	1
2.0	PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES.....	1
3.0	FIELD PROCEDURES.....	3
3.1	Overview of Sampling Procedures.....	3
3.2	Site Length, Minimum Width and Number of Transects.....	4
3.3	Determining the Longitudinal Spacing of Transects.....	6
3.4	Setting Up the Transect and Measuring the Active Channel Width.....	6
3.5	Describing the Banks.....	9
3.5.1	Undercuts.....	9
3.5.2	Bank Angle.....	10
3.5.3	Bank Composition.....	13
3.5.4	Bank Vegetation Cover and Type.....	14
3.5.4.1	Dominant Vegetation Type.....	14
3.5.4.2	Rooted Vegetation Measurement.....	16
3.6	Point Measurements Along the Transect.....	17
3.6.1	Water Depth.....	18
3.6.1.1	Islands and Large Rocks.....	19
3.6.1.2	Undercuts, Log Jams and Other Obstructions.....	20
3.6.2	Hydraulic Head.....	20
3.6.3	Cover for Fish.....	22
3.6.4	Aquatic Vegetation.....	24
3.6.5	Substrate Particle Size Distribution.....	25
3.6.5.1	Point Particle Size.....	25
3.6.5.2	Maximum Particle Size.....	26
3.7	Recording Stream Bearing.....	26
3.8	Measuring to the Next Transect.....	26
3.9	Tips for Applying this Module.....	26
4.0	DATA MANAGEMENT.....	27
5.0	LITERATURE CITED.....	27

APPENDICES

Appendix 1. Example Channel Morphology Data Form

¹ Authors: L. W. Stanfield, J. Parish and M. Stoneman

1.0 INTRODUCTION

The data collected using this module can be used to compare physical conditions of streams spatially or temporally. It can also be used to identify limiting features of the physical habitat. The procedures within this module can be completed individually (e.g., to evaluate only substrate) but it is recommended that the entire module be completed. The advantage of this module over the RAM is that all data collected are actual measurements which improves accuracy and allows for a wider range of statistical interpretation of the data because the data are not bound by pre-determined categories. This module also provides the user an opportunity for post-survey interpretation of the data.

Transects established for this module can also be used for S4.M1, Rapid Assessment Methodology for Channel Structure, S4.M3, Bankfull Profiles and Channel Entrenchment and S4.M5, Measuring Stream Discharge Quantitatively.

2.0 PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES

A three-person (two surveyors, one recorder) crew can complete the survey in two to three hours. A fourth person will expedite the process as they can establish transects while others take measurements. Since most of the time-consuming measurements occur at the ends of the transects (i.e., bank angle, bank vegetation, undercuts etc.), smaller streams will take longer to complete because more transects are required.

Pre-field activities should include:

- Landowner contact
- Documentation of site access and appropriate stream identifiers (see Section 1)
- Equipment check

For this module, the following equipment is required:

1. Channel Morphology Data Form(s) (preferably on waterproof paper)
2. Pencils
3. Metre sticks (two, at least one metre stick must be wooden)
4. Tape measures (two, 30 m or longer)
5. Bank grid (see definition below)
6. Cover ring (30 cm diameter ring mounted on a pole; Figure 1)
7. Flagging tape
8. Spikes or tent pegs (four, 25 cm long) or two bungee cords

Point-Transect Sampling for Channel Structure, Substrate and Bank Conditions
edited May 2007

- 9. Ruler (clear, 3 mm thick by 25 mm wide, 25 cm long)
- 10. Compass
- 11. Calculator (waterproof, or in re-sealable bag)

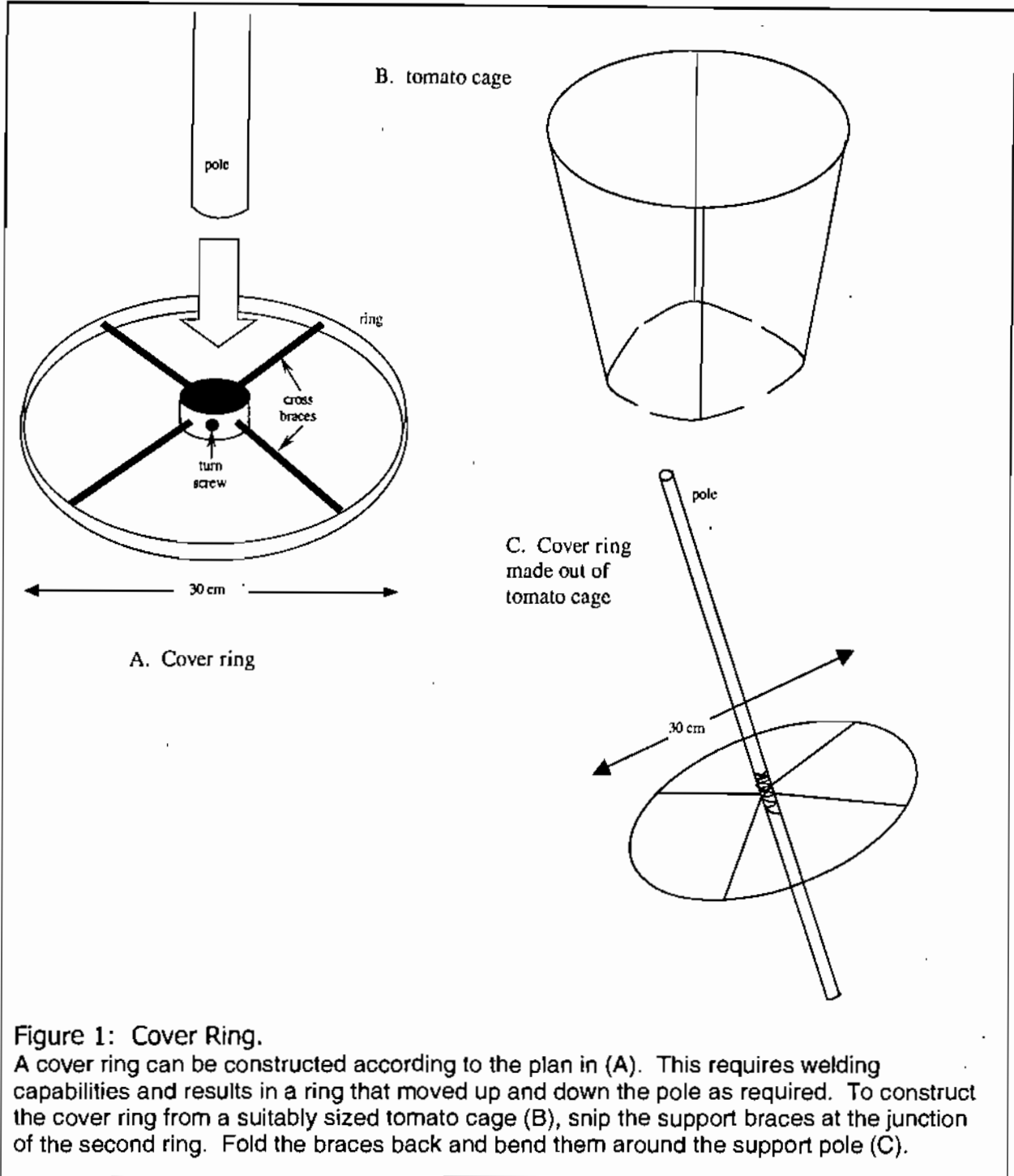


Figure 1: Cover Ring.

A cover ring can be constructed according to the plan in (A). This requires welding capabilities and results in a ring that moved up and down the pole as required. To construct the cover ring from a suitably sized tomato cage (B), snip the support braces at the junction of the second ring. Fold the braces back and bend them around the support pole (C).

Crews should adhere to safety precautions and requirements set forth by their employers /managers i.e., first aid kit, first aid training, travel plan, buddy system, mobile phone etc.

Optional equipment includes: bank profile tool (Figure 11), and field calipers. To mark the upstream and downstream boundaries of the site, four metal rods (i.e., Rebar, approximately 1 m in length) can be used.

3.0 FIELD PROCEDURES

This module should be completed in conjunction with S1.M1, Defining Site Boundaries and Key Identifiers and S1.M2, Screening Level Site Documentation. Additional information required depends on the objectives of the study and resources available. The survey always begins at the bottom (downstream) end of the site and proceeds sequentially to the top. Each transect begins on the left bank (as determined while looking upstream). The data collection process is detailed below.

3.1 Overview of Sampling Procedures

Step 1: Ensure that site boundaries S1.M1, Defining Site Boundaries and Key Identifiers, Section 3.2, Identifying the Site Boundaries have been established and a sketch of the site can be completed (refer to S1M3 Assessment Procedures for Site Feature Documentation, Section 3.2, Making a Site Sketch).

Step 2: Determine the 'Minimum Width (m)' of the stream. This is used in conjunction with the 'Site Length (m)' for determining the 'Number of Transects' required, their longitudinal spacing ('Transect Spacing (m)'), and the number of points for each transect ('Number of Points/Transect (N)').

Step 3: At the bottom of the site, establish the first transect.

Step 4: At each transect, measure the 'Active Channel Width', assess the bank characteristics and vulnerability to erosion, generate a cross-sectional profile of the banks: measure the horizontal depth of undercuts ('Amount of Undercut'), 'Bank Angle', bank (substrate) composition ('Bank Particle Median Diameters'), vegetative cover ('# of Vegetated Squares on Bank'), and the 'Dominant Vegetation Type'.

Step 5: Record the following data at each observation point along each transect: water depth ('Depth'), 'Hydraulic Head', 'Cover Types Present', whether or not the cover is embedded ('Cover Quality'), 'Aquatic Vegetation Type Present', substrate particle size immediately below the observation point ('Particle Sizes', 'Point'), and largest substrate particle within the cover ring ('Particle Sizes' 'Maximum in Ring').

Point-Transect Sampling for Channel Structure, Substrate and Bank Conditions
edited May 2007

Step 6: At each transect, record the stream bearing ('Compass Bearing').

3.2 Site Length, Minimum Width and Number of Transects

Site length is measured by chaining up the centre of the stream. Ensure that the lower and upper boundaries of the site are clearly marked. One person stands at the bottom of the site in the middle of the stream to mark the starting point. A second person proceeds upstream until the stream changes direction (or until the end of the tape is reached). The second person then marks the point, measures the distance, and waits for the first person to reach the mark before proceeding upstream to the next mark location (Figure 2). At the centre of each curve in the stream, the second person should mark the location and call for the first person to move up. Do not simply stretch the rope around the corners, as it will not be measuring up the middle. This process is repeated until the total site length is measured.

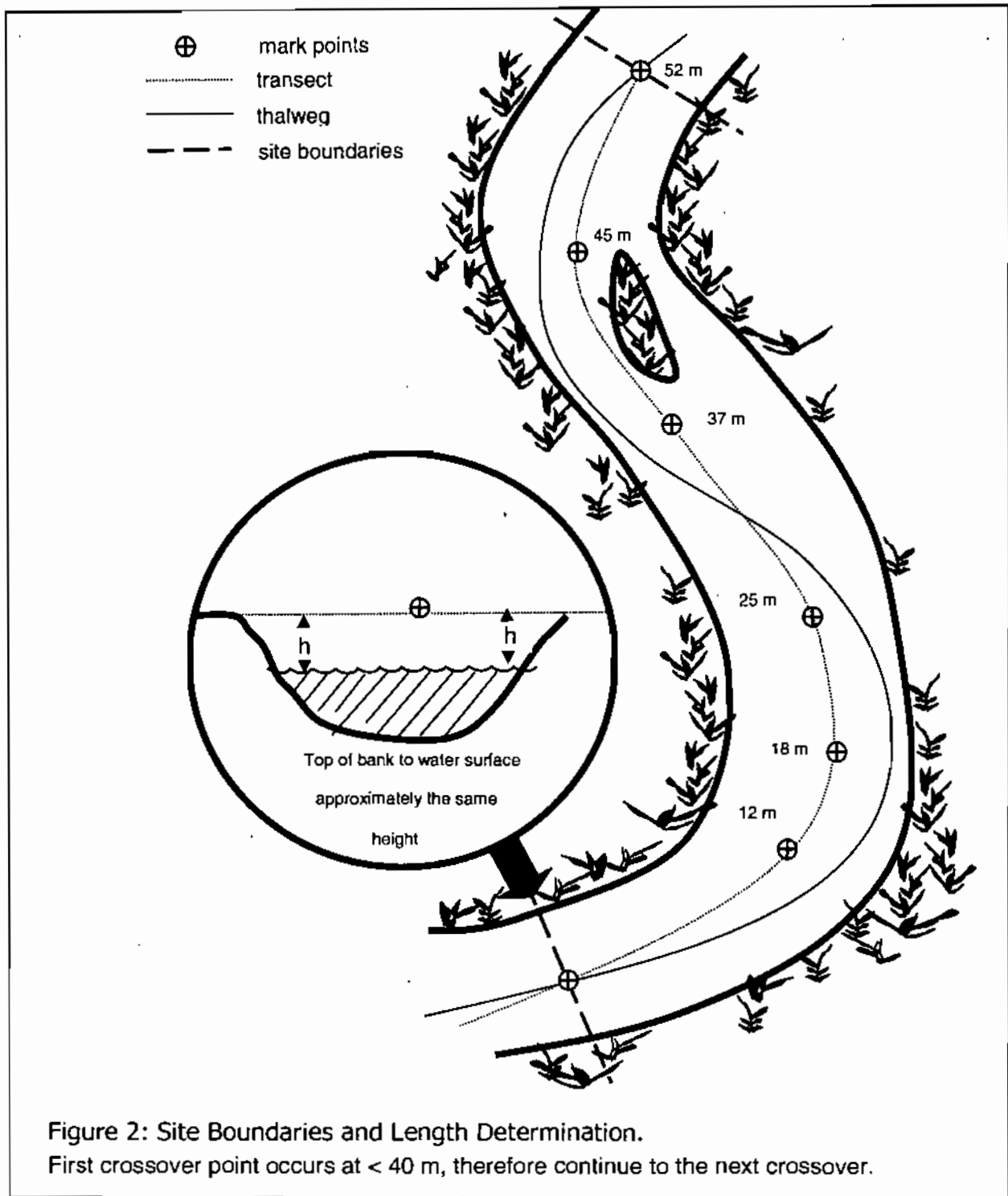
Record the site length in metres on the Site Identification and Channel Morphology Data Forms (i.e., 48 m).

The number of transects required and the number of observation points per transect is determined by the minimum width of the site. If the stream is greater than 3 m wide throughout the site, use ten transects and six observation points per transect; otherwise, measure the stream width at the narrowest location and refer to Table 1.

Table 1: Relationship Between the Minimum Stream Width and the Number of Observation Points Required per Transect.

Minimum Stream Width (m)	Number of Transects	Number of Observation Points per Transect
> 3.0	10	6
1.5 - 3.0	12	5
1.0 - 1.5	15	3
< 1.0	20	2

Record the 'Minimum Width (m)', 'Number of Transects', and the 'Number of Points/Transect (N)' on the first sheet of the Channel Morphology Data Form. If the stream width is greater than 3 m, record '>3 m'.



3.3 Determining the Longitudinal Spacing of Transects

To determine transect spacing within the site, divide the length of the site by the number of transects required minus one (i.e., 'Transect Spacing' = 'Site Length' / (Number of Transects' - 1)). For example, if a site is 52 m long and requires 10 transects, the transects would be spaced at 5.8 m ($52/(10-1) = 5.8$ m). Transects would be situated at the 0, 5.8, 11.6, 17.4, 23.2, 29.0, 34.8, 40.6, 46.4 and 52.2 m marks. The actual transect location can be rounded to the nearest metre. Record the 'Transect Spacing' on the Channel Morphology Data Form (Appendix 1). Transect locations should not be shifted.

3.4 Setting Up the Transect and Measuring the Active Channel Width

Transects should be established perpendicular to the general direction of flow (Figure 3). To set up a transect, stake both ends of a tape measure into the banks so that it is reasonably level and taut. Always start on the left side of the river while facing upstream.

Hint: To save time when doing bank measurements locate the ends of the tape at least 1.5 m back from the edge of the bank (Figure 4). There are many tools that can be used to secure the tape to the bank including bungee cords, quick release clamps, long spikes, surveyor and gardening stakes. Ensure that the tools are well marked with bright colours.

Measure and record the active channel width (see definition below) on the Channel Morphology Data Form. Divide the active channel width by the number of observation points (Table 1) to determine panel width. Sampling will be conducted at the mid-point of each panel and these points are referred to as observation points. (see example below and Figure 4). If an observation point falls on an island or point bar within the active channel, treat it as an observation point and record the appropriate information. Mark the location of each observation points on the tape measure using flagging tape before taking any measurements.

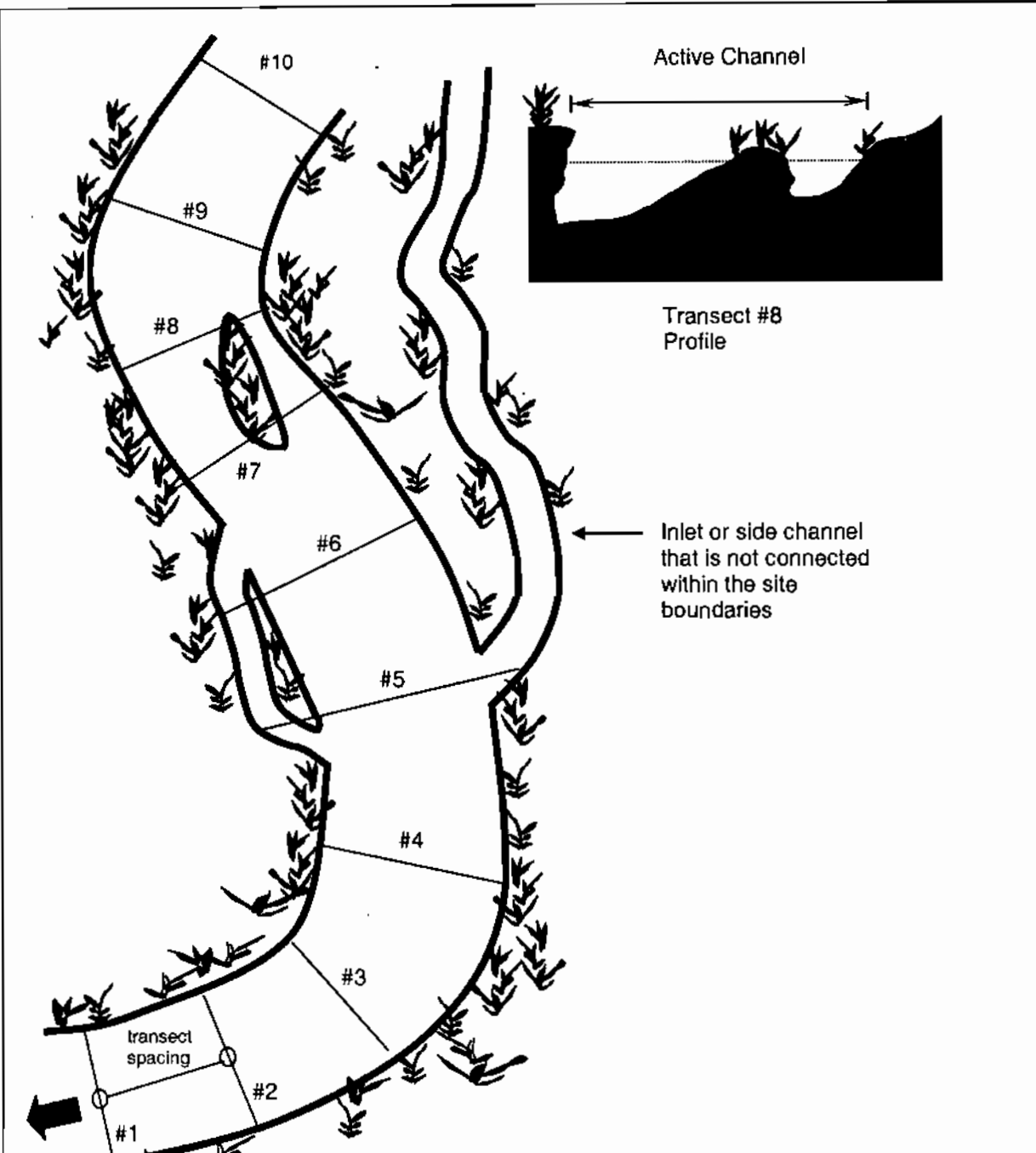
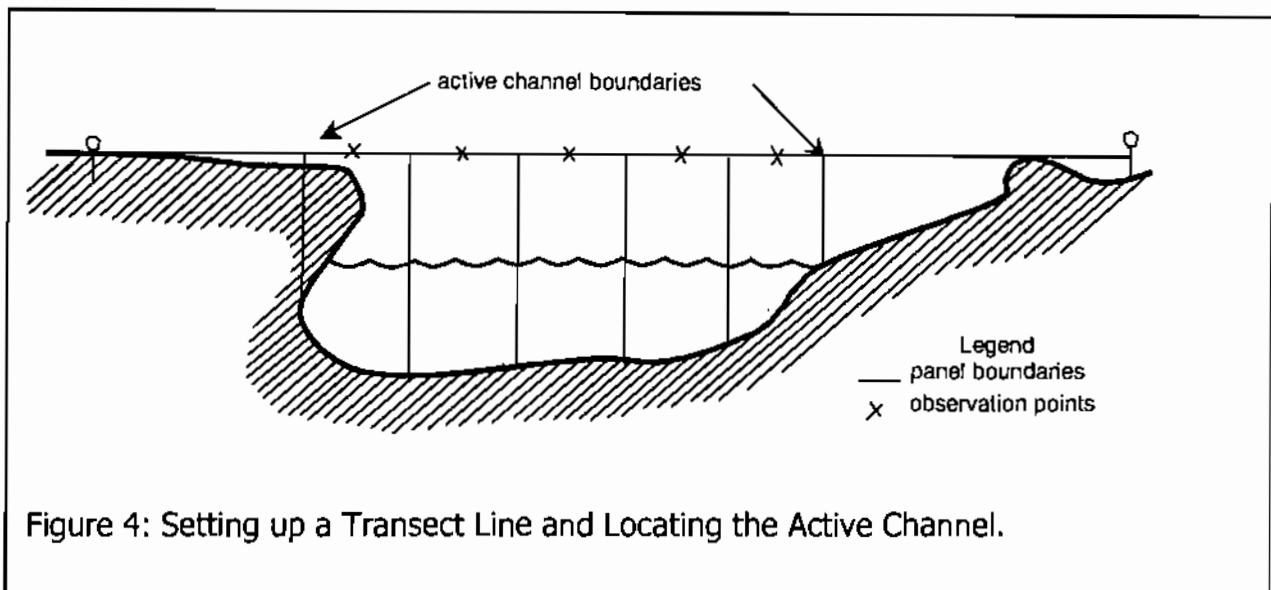


Figure 3: Setting up a Transect Sampling Design.

The thalweg can often be used to assist in determining the appropriate orientation of the transect (angle relative to channel). Transect lines 5 and 6 cross a side channel that is connected within the site and 8 crosses an island. These are considered a part of the active channel. Transect line 5 crosses a side channel that is not connected within the boundaries of the site; and this side channel is therefore not considered to be part of the



Active Channel

The active channel is the area between the two outside banks, which includes all connected water at the time of the survey. This includes actively flowing as well as stagnant areas provided there is no land barrier that separates it from the main channel. The transect boundaries are at the bank-water interface (i.e., where the water meets the land; when undercuts are present, see Figures 4 and 5).

Rules for defining the active channel:

1. Side channels or braids are included if both the inlet and outlet occur within the sample site.
2. The mouth of a tributary is included only if it located on a transect
3. Backwater pools (wet areas adjacent to the active channel that are fed by intergravel flow) are included if they are located within the high flow channel, are located below the top of bank, and there is visible flow from the pool into the stream.
4. Mid-channel bars and islands are included in the cross section (Figure 3).

Observation Point Calculation Example

For a stream that has an active channel width of 2.9 m wide, and low variance in velocity, five panels are sampled. The point spacing would be $2.9/5 = 0.58$. This number actually represents the boundary of a set of panels that transect the stream, with each observation point located in the centre of each panel. To determine the actual location of the observation points, divide the first panel in half, and for each additional location add 0.58. The first observation point would be at 0.29 m (i.e., $0.58/2 = 0.29$). The second point would be at $0.29 + 0.58 = 0.87$ m. The complete list of observation points is 0.29, 0.87, 1.45, 2.03 and 2.61 m.

Note: Observation point locations are dependent on whether the tape extends beyond the bank water interface. For example if the left bank water interface occurs at 1.5 m on the tape then the first observation point for the above example would be at the 1.79 m mark on the tape.

Hint: To help identify the location of the observation points along each transect, tie strands of flagging tape on the tape measure so that they can be easily slid into position to mark each observation point.

Hint: Always double-check the spacing of the flagging tape before starting to record the data.

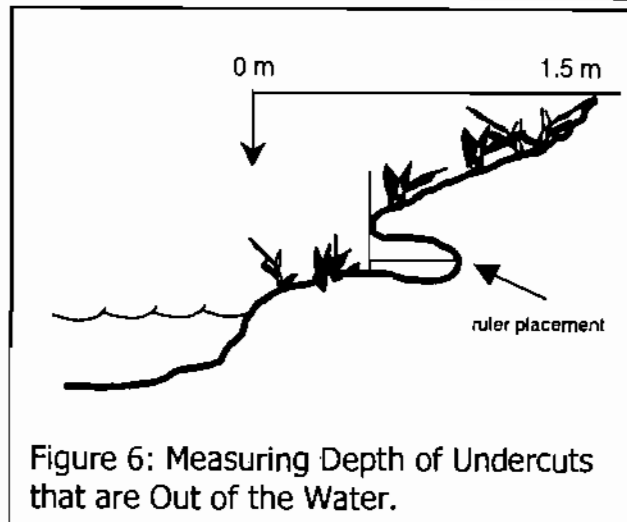
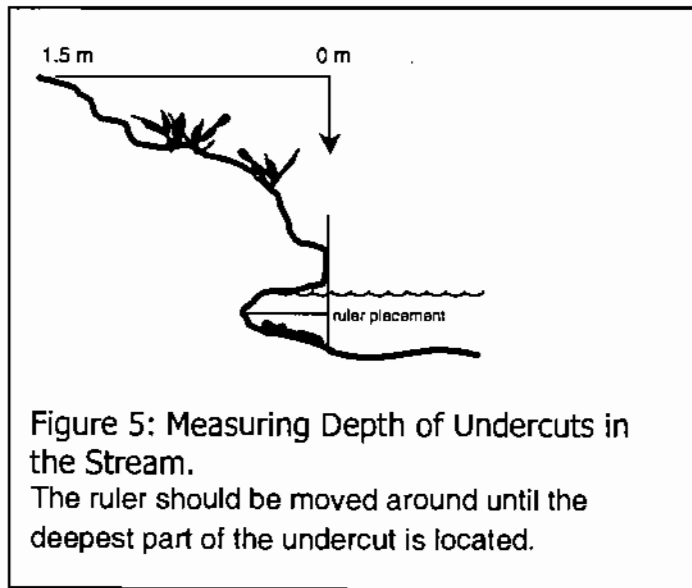
3.5 Describing the Banks

Measurements of bank undercuts, angle, composition and bank vegetation are made along a 1.5 m extension of the transect line² described in Section 3.4, Setting Up the Transect and Measuring Stream Width (see also Figures 5 and 6). Note that all depth or height measurements are to be made in millimeters.

3.5.1 Undercuts

Undercut banks are measured if they occur on the transect line as described in Section 3.3. Note that undercut banks may be out of the water. Only record undercuts if they are greater than 50 mm. Measure and record the maximum depth of the undercut as follows (Figures 5 and 6):

1. Place a straight edge vertically against the outermost protruding edge of the bank.
2. Place a ruler into the deepest part of the undercut perpendicular to the straight edge.
3. Record the depth of the undercut in the box marked 'Amount of Undercut', to the nearest 10 mm. If the depth of the undercut exceeds 1000 mm, record as '1001', signifying that the depth is greater than 1000 mm.



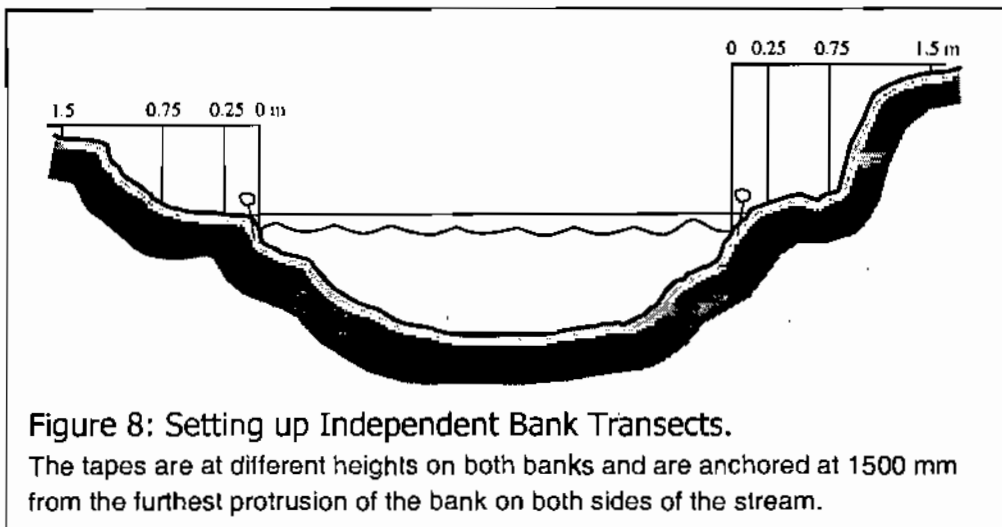
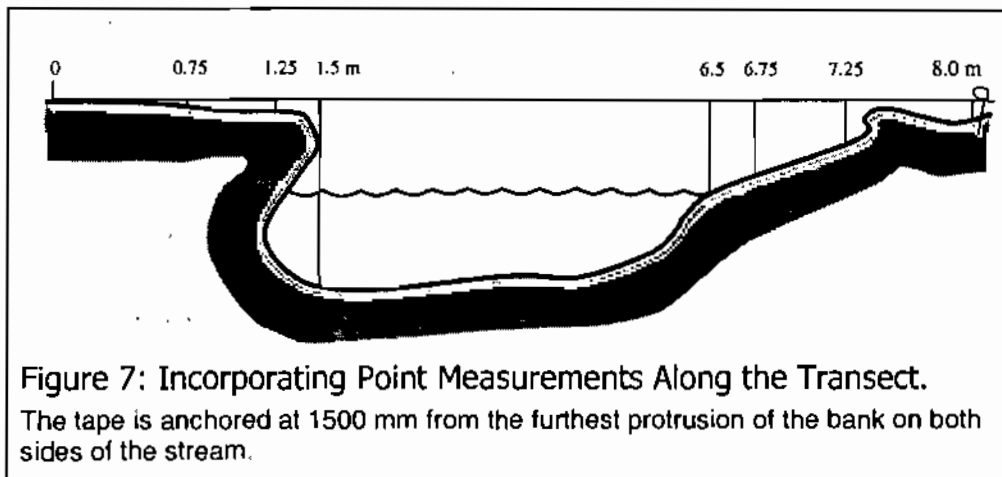
² Note, the height of the transect extensions may differ from the original transect line. The 1.5 m extensions do not have to be at the same height on both banks.

3.5.2 Bank Angle

Bank angle is a measure of the slope of the bank which can be used in determining stream bank stability. Four height measurements taken at predetermined horizontal distances from the bank edge are used to determine bank angle.

General principles to be followed are outlined below.

Bank angle is measured from a short profile of the left and right banks of the stream. The profile is obtained by setting a level horizontal line (tape) above the bank extending a minimum of 1.5 m inland from the furthest protrusion of the bank into the stream (Figures 7 - 10) and measuring the distance of the tape to the bank surface. Each bank measurement is independent and the height of the tape does not have to be the same on both sides of the stream.



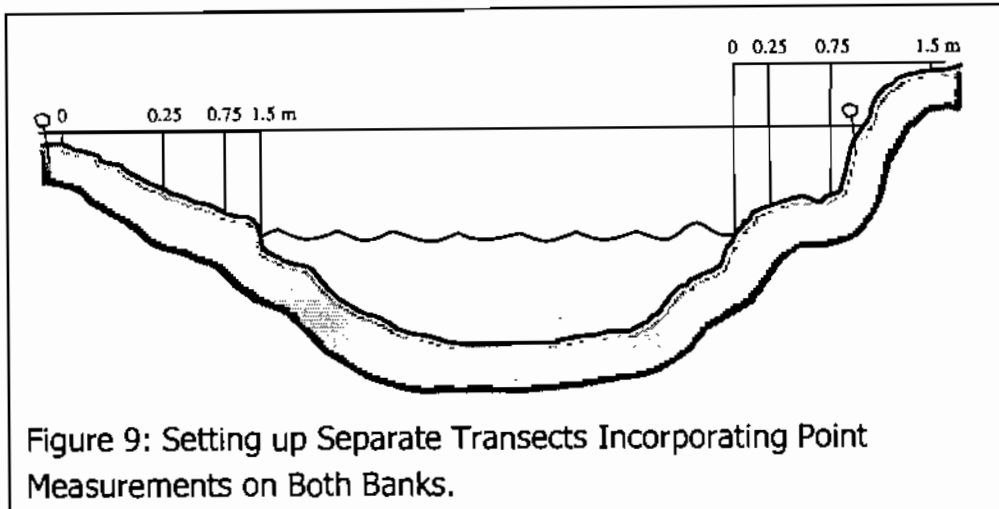


Figure 9: Setting up Separate Transects Incorporating Point Measurements on Both Banks.

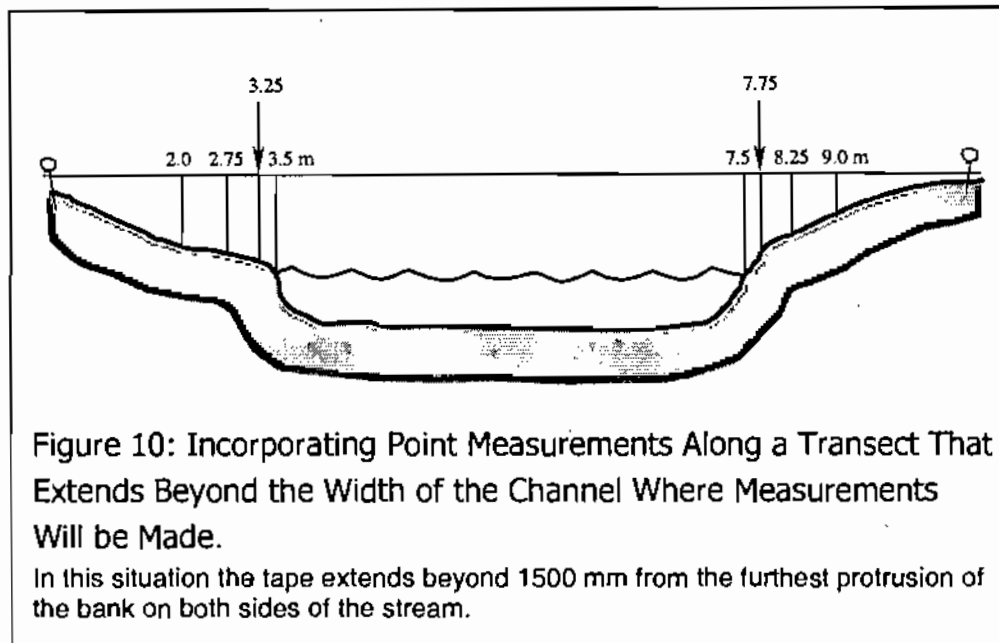


Figure 10: Incorporating Point Measurements Along a Transect That Extends Beyond the Width of the Channel Where Measurements Will be Made.

In this situation the tape extends beyond 1500 mm from the furthest protrusion of the bank on both sides of the stream.

Four vertical measurements are taken from the horizontal tape down to the bank. These vertical measurements are taken at the 0.0 and at 0.25, 0.75 and 1.5 m from the furthest protrusion of the bank into the stream. If any of the vertical heights are greater than 2 m within the transect, the bank is steep and the appropriate box should be marked with an 'X' (i.e. '>2m' for Left or Right Bank) under 'Bank to Tape Height'. No additional vertical height measurements are required if this condition exists.

Different techniques may be used to take measurements that will be used to calculate bank angle (e.g. transect line (Figures 7 - 10) or bank profile tool (Figure 11)). The application of any of these methods will be dictated by existing bank conditions.



Staff from the Toronto and Region Conservation Authority designed a tool to assist them with measuring the bank profiles. The tool consists of two pieces of wood (one with a slot cut through the middle), connected by a wing nut so that it can swivel and move vertically. Ruler markings can be put on the vertical piece to help with the first height measurement and the locations (0.25, .75 and 1.5 m) of the observations points should be marked on the horizontal piece. A small level(s) can be placed on the wood to ensure the tool is at 90°. An adaptation of this device is to hang three tailor tape measures at the appropriate locations on the horizontal bar that can easily be read off as to the height from the ground to the bar.

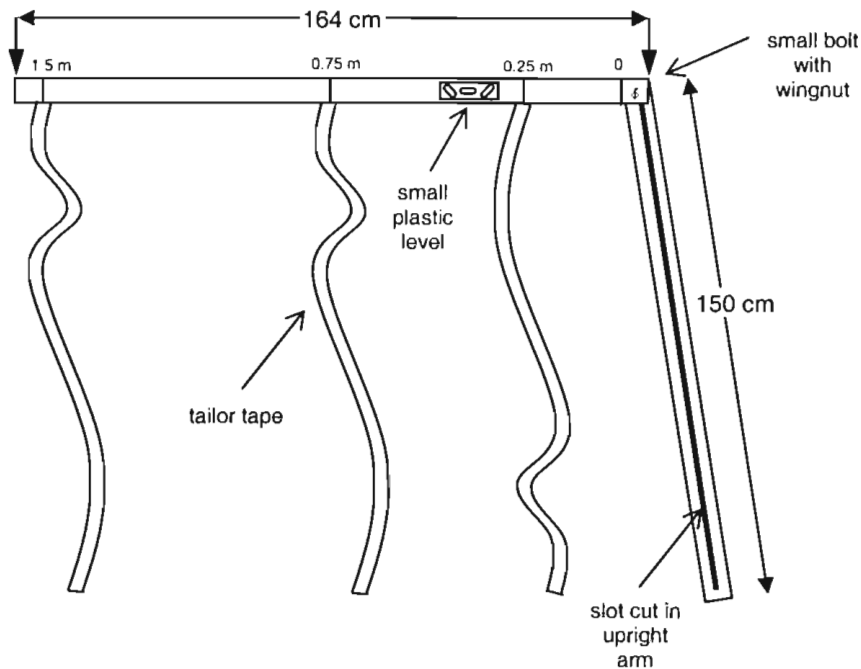


Figure 11: Schematic and Photo of Bank Profile Tool.

Where undercuts are present, the measurements begin at the furthest protruding edge of the bank (i.e., the height measurement at 0.0 m would be from the tape to the stream bottom (Figure 7).

Record each of these measurements to the nearest 5 mm on the 'Bank Angle' section of the Channel Morphology Data Form (Appendix I).

Hint: A vertical measurement greater than 1000 mm may be taken by joining two metre sticks end to end.

Hint: If the transect intersects a tree, move the transect to the nearest side. If a log or brush pile interferes with the vertical measurements, adjust the placement of the metre stick or bank profile tool.

3.5.3 Bank Composition

This section describes how to determine the soil composition of the banks. The type of substrate that makes up a bank influences its stability; silt and sand are more vulnerable to erosion.

At the four points where the bank angle was measured (i.e., 0.0, 0.25, 0.75 and 1.5 m from the active channel boundary), determine the substrate immediately below each point. While looking away, randomly select a particle and measure the median axis. If the median axis of the material is between 2 mm and 1000 mm, record this measurement on the Channel Morphology Data Form for the left and right bank; otherwise record standard sizes found in Table 2. Remove undecomposed organic material (e.g. leaves, sticks), before making substrate measurements. Decomposed organic material should be classified as silt.

Median Axis

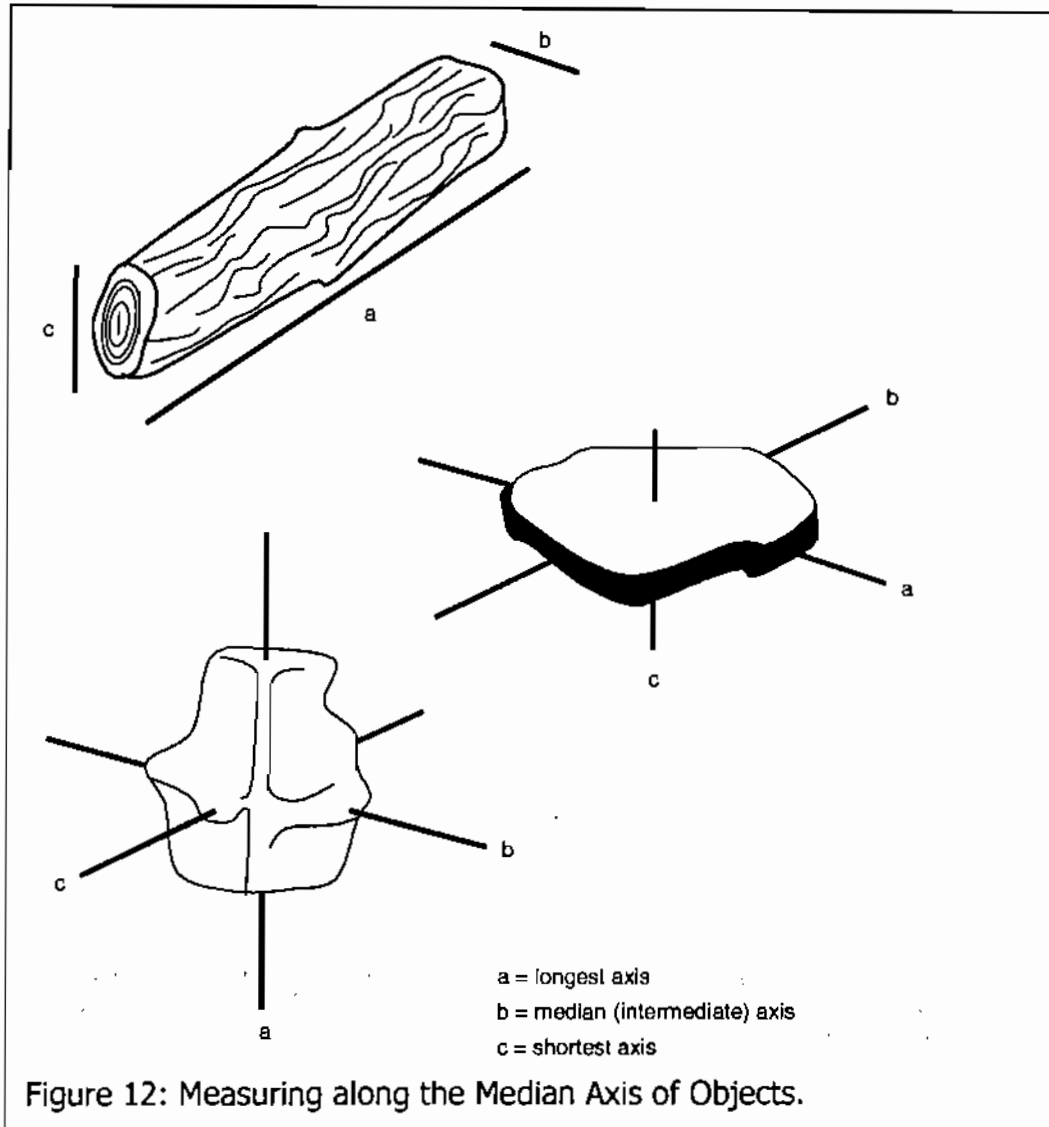
There are three axes to every particle. The median axis represents the intermediate width of any particle (Figure 12). Rocks will often lie with the median axis at right angles to the flow.

Table 2: Substrate Descriptions and Size Categories.

Material	Description	Size to be Recorded
'Unconsolidated Clay'	Very hard packed when dry and sticky when wet	'0.01'
'Consolidated Clay'	Hard even when wet, slippery, gray in colour, often laminated	'0.011'
'Silt'	Feels soft like a powder or flour	'0.05'
'Sand'	Gritty, sizes >0.05 and < 2 mm	'0.10'
'Bedrock'	Exposed bedrock	'1111'
Measured particles	Between 2 mm and 1000 mm.	Median axis
'Large Boulders'	> 1000 mm but not attached to bedrock	'1001'

Note that large material (i.e., greater than 1000 mm wide) such as concrete slabs, etc., are classified as 'Large Boulders'. To ensure accuracy of data entry, place a '0' in front of all decimal points (i.e., '0.01'). **Be sure to measure all particles that are close to 2 mm in diameter to avoid misclassifying small particles.**

Point-Transect Sampling for Channel Structure, Substrate and Bank Conditions
edited May 2007



3.5.4 Bank Vegetation Cover and Type

This section describes how to identify the dominant vegetation type and measure the amount of rooted vegetation on each bank.

3.5.4.1 Dominant Vegetation Type

The 'Dominant Vegetation Type' is assessed within a rectangular plot (2 m x 1 m) which extends 1 m upstream and 1 m downstream of the transect line and 1 m back from the furthest protruding edge of the bank (Figure 13). The dominant vegetation type within the plot is determined using a hierarchical system that is based on the largest vegetation type found: Forest > Scrubland > Meadow > Cultivated > None (the vegetation types are defined in Table 3

below). For example, if a plot includes a tree and a patch of long grass, it would be classified 'Forest'. If the tree were outside the plot, it would be classified as 'Meadow'.

Hint: On the Channel Morphology Data Form, put an 'X' in only **one** box under 'Dominant Vegetation Type'.

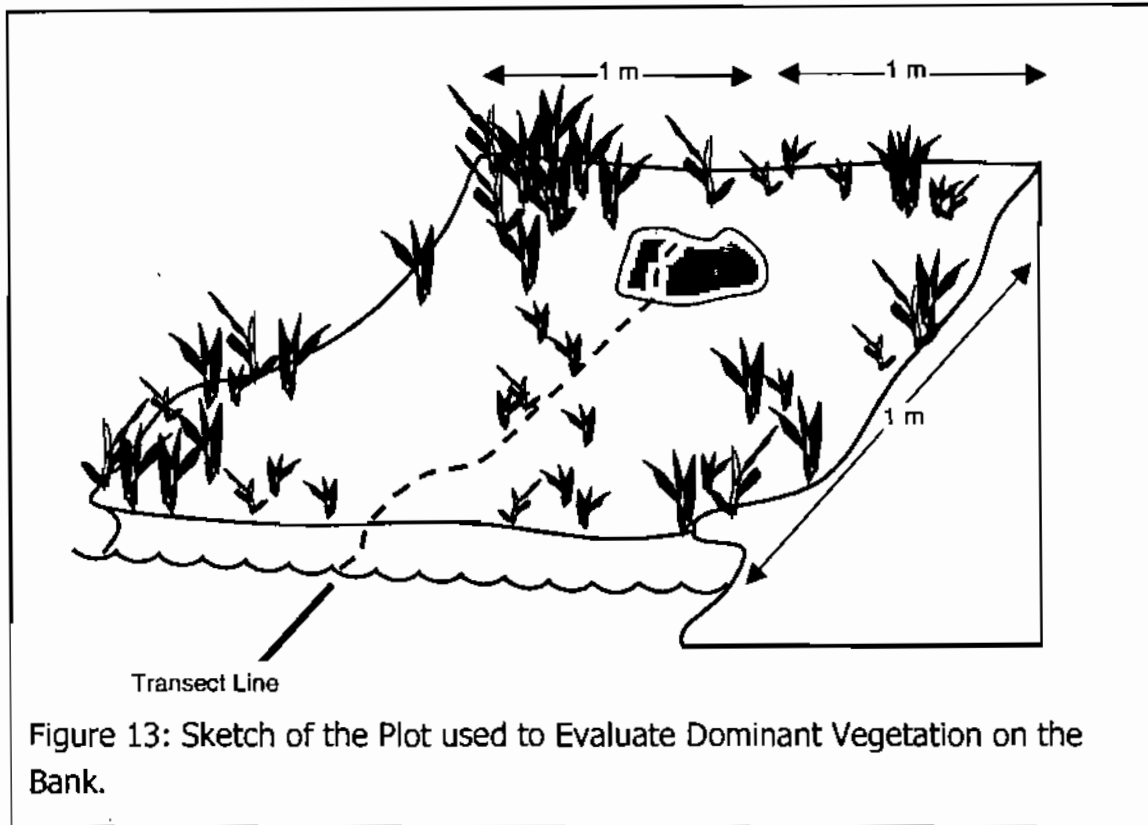


Figure 13: Sketch of the Plot used to Evaluate Dominant Vegetation on the Bank.

Table 3: Bank Vegetation Types.

Vegetation Type	Description
'None'	> 75% of the plot has no vegetation.
'Cultivated'	Manicured lawns and actively farmed lands.
'Meadow'	Unmanicured grasses and sedges, no woody vegetation in the plot.
'Scrubland'	Small trees or shrubs interspersed with grasses and sedges, a transitional area between meadow and forest.
'Forest'	At least one large tree (i.e., at least 10 cm diameter at breast height, or 5 m in height) within the block.

3.5.4.2 Rooted Vegetation Measurement

The bank grid is used to quickly estimate the extent of rooted vegetation that acts to stabilize substrate on each bank. Starting at the bank-water interface, lay the bank grid up the bank along the transect line (Figures 14 and 15).

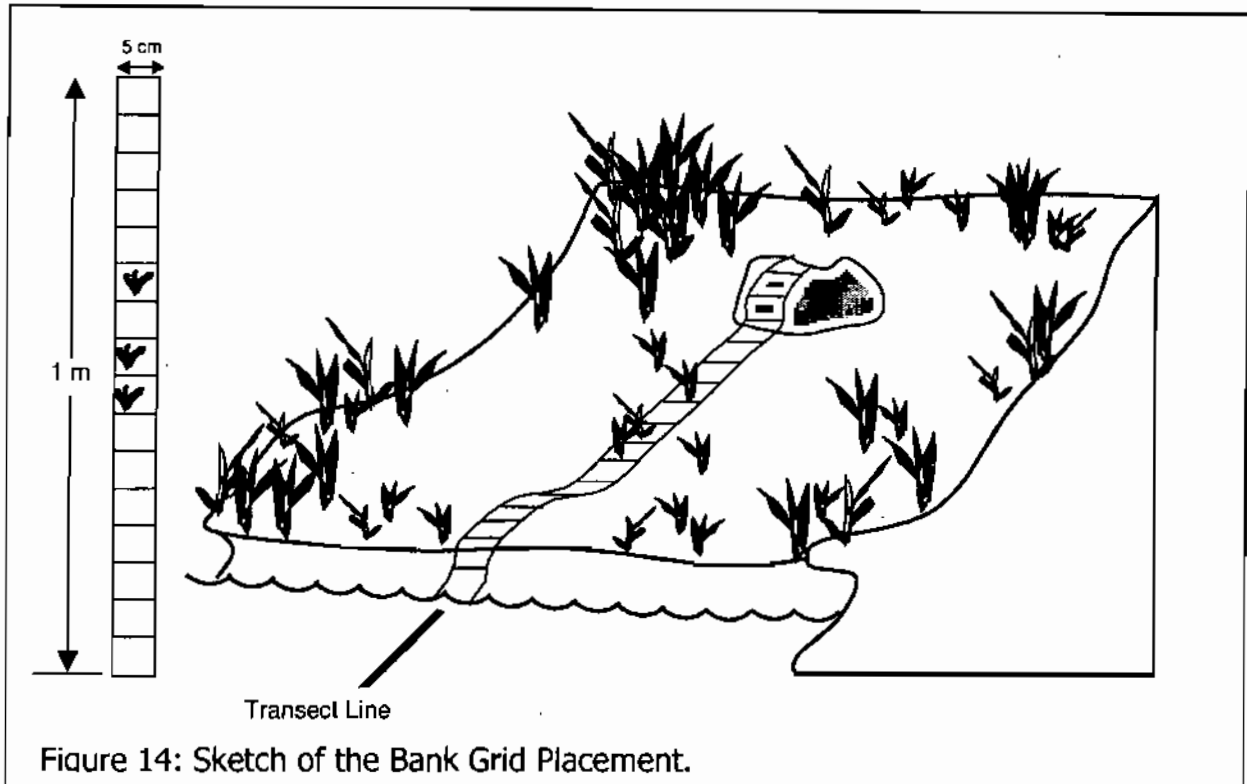


Figure 14: Sketch of the Bank Grid Placement.

Bank Grid

A bank grid is used to record the amount of living bank vegetation and provides quantitative and repeatable measurements. A bank grid measures 100 cm long by 5 cm wide, and is comprised of 16 (6.25 cm) blocks. Flexible plastic mesh such as C-Flex (manufactured by TENAX) has been used successfully by the Great Lakes Salmonid Unit, but any strong mesh that is of the appropriate size would work. Lengths of C-Flex may be available from L. Allin or L. Stanfield of the OMNR.

Count the number of grid cells that have any **live** rooted vegetation growing within the cell. One blade of grass rooted in the soil constitutes live vegetation in a grid cell, but grass hanging or lying over a cell are not included. **Live roots and moss are also considered live vegetation. Algae and lichens are not considered in this measurement.** To qualify as having no live vegetation, all of the soil or substrate in the grid cell must be barren, covered with dead material, or covered with lichens.



Figure 15: Measuring Vegetated Squares with a Bank Grid.

Hint: Where dead materials cover the soil or vegetation is matted down, pull back the material to see whether the soil is exposed or whether live material is growing underneath.

Record the number of grid cells with live vegetation in the box marked '# of Vegetated Squares on Bank', on the Channel Morphology Data Form.

3.6 Point Measurements Along the Transect

The following six measurements should be made in the stream, at each of the previously identified observation points (i.e., Section 3.4 Setting Up the Transect and Measuring Stream Width) along the transect (Figure 4; specific details in each section below):

- Water depth (or negative height, for islands and other protruding features)
- Hydraulic head
- Cover (amount and type)
- Aquatic Vegetation
- Point Particle Size
- Maximum Particle Size

Obtain a depth and hydraulic head estimate from every point. For observation points that fall on islands, large exposed rocks, etc., measure the negative height, vegetation cover and particle sizes.

3.6.1 Water Depth

At each observation point, stand a wooden metre stick on the pavement boundary (see definition below) with the thin edge facing into the current (Figure 16). If the ruler lands on a boulder or other object above the pavement boundary which is less than 30 cm in diameter (i.e., smaller than the diameter of the cover ring) move the ruler to the nearest edge of the object and measure the water depth at the pavement layer. If the object is larger than 30 cm in diameter, measure the water depth at the observation point. Ensure that the ruler is straight and that it does not dig into the substrate. Always measure the height of water from the mid-point of the ruler (in higher velocity areas, the water will differ in height between the upstream and downstream edges of the ruler).

Pavement Boundary

The pavement boundary represents the bottom of the active flowing channel and is identified as the point where substrate particles form a fairly uniform layer across the bottom (Figures 16 and 17). This may be difficult to determine in areas dominated by coarse material. In these instances, put the ruler between the coarse material to the lowest layer of material that is visible.

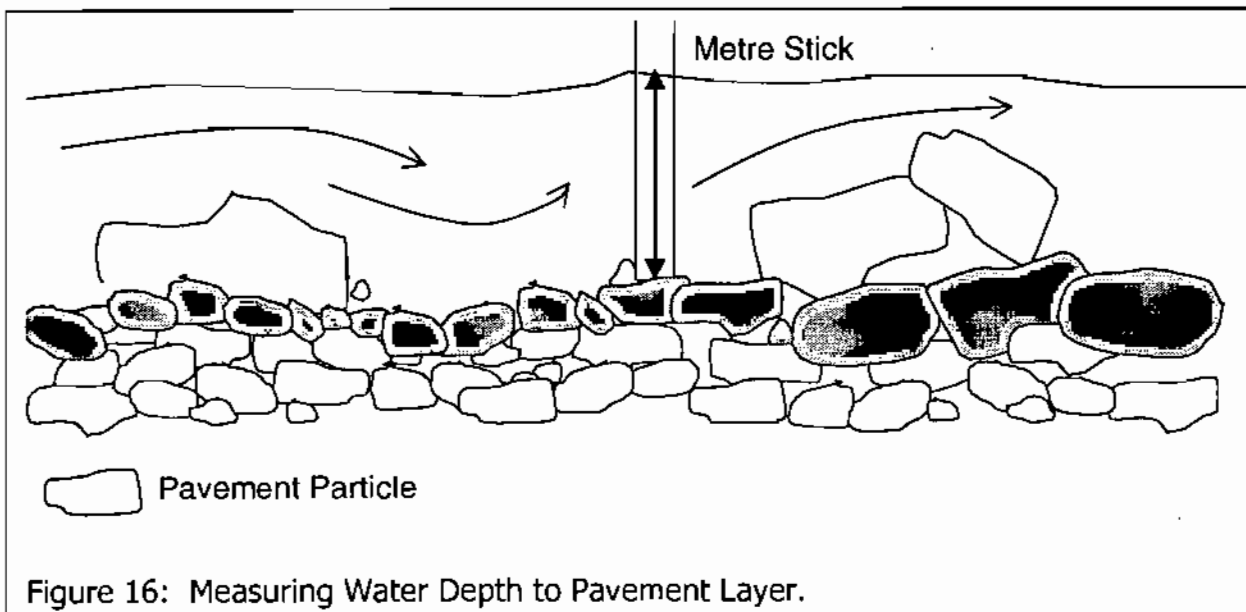


Figure 16: Measuring Water Depth to Pavement Layer.



Figure 17: Photograph of Pavement Distinction.

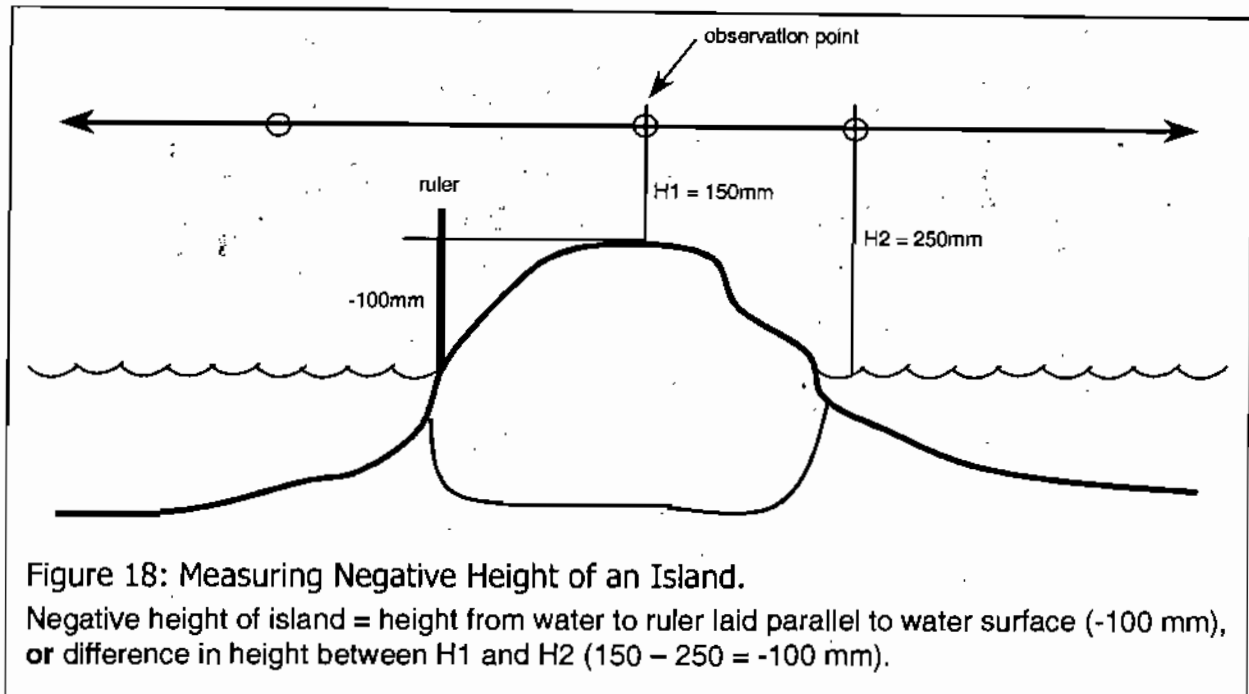
Record the water depth in mm in the column marked 'Depth' on the Channel Morphology Data. This measure should be recorded to the nearest 5 mm. If the water is deeper than 1000 mm, record '1001' mm. If for safety reasons water depth cannot be measured or estimated, record '-999' in the 'Depth' field.

3.6.1.1 Islands and Large Rocks

Mid-channel islands, bars, and large exposed rocks (i.e., any solid object with a median diameter greater than 30 cm) are measured as negative height. These characteristics contribute to the complexity and roughness of the channel and are used for three-dimensional habitat modeling.

There are two methods to measure the negative height, one for small features and another for braided channels and large islands.

Small features: lay a level ruler across the feature at the observation point and use a second ruler to measure its height above the water level (Figure 18).



Braided channels and large islands: stretch a tape measure across the feature (level the tape by setting it at right angles to the flow and setting it at a uniform height) and measure the height from the water to the tape (H2) and from the island to the tape (H1). The difference between the two heights is the negative depth (or height) at this observation point. Record the height as a **negative** number in the column marked 'Depth'.

3.6.1.2 Undercuts, Log Jams and Other Obstructions

When an observation point falls on an undercut or some other obstruction, record the depth of water under the obstruction (Figure 19). Adapt available tools as necessary (e.g., flexible metal rulers, poles) to measure the depth.

3.6.2 Hydraulic Head

Hydraulic head is measured at each observation point as a surrogate for velocity (adapted from Henderson 1970). If more accurate velocity information is required (e.g., flow monitoring or discharge calculation), a velocity meter can be used to complement the hydraulic head data. These procedures are described in S4.M5, Measuring Stream Discharge Quantitatively.

At the observation point, turn the wooden ruler so that it is vertical and the **wide side with the markings is on the downstream side** (Figure 20). The ruler will create a barrier to flow causing the water to climb the upstream side of the ruler. Avoid standing in front or too close behind the ruler as this can obstruct the flow. The height the water climbs is referred to as the hydraulic head. If there is no difference in water level between the front and back of the ruler then hydraulic head is 0, indicating very low velocity. If a difference in height is observed, then

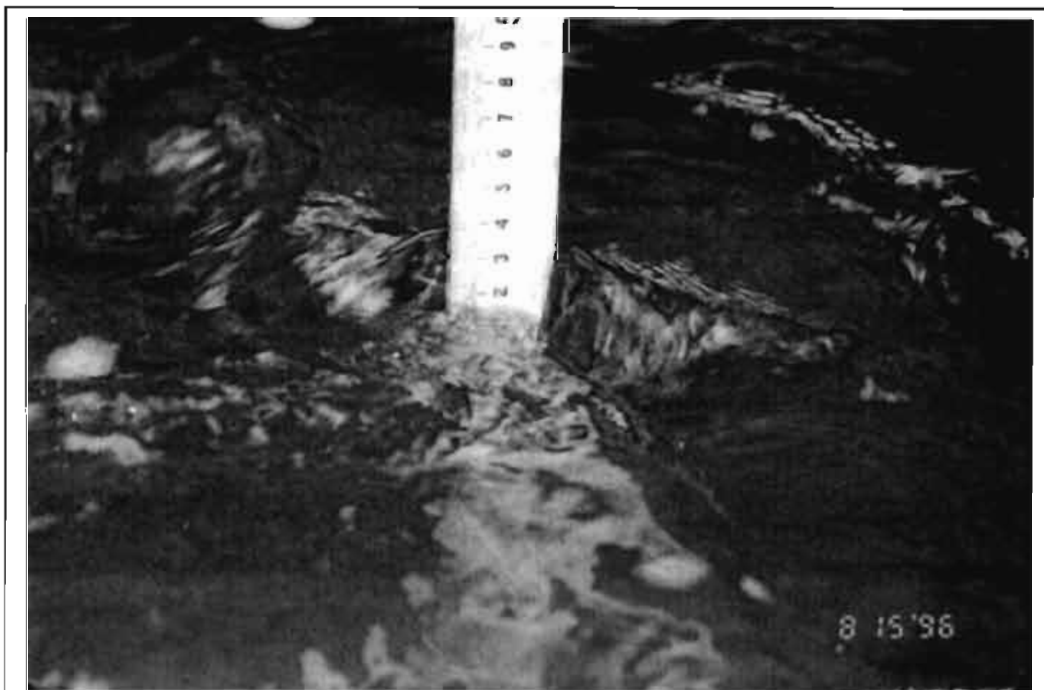
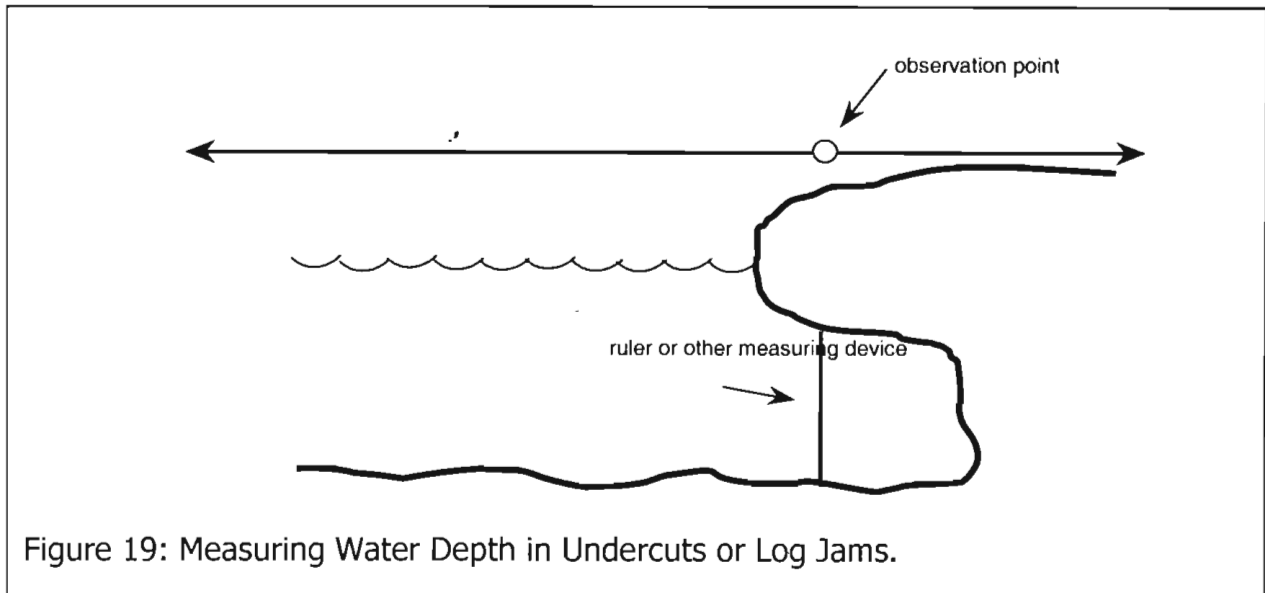


Figure 20: A Point Measurement of Hydraulic Head.

The upstream reading is measured as 35 mm, the downstream as 16 mm, therefore the hydraulic head is 19 mm, which should be recorded as 20 mm (rounded to nearest 5 mm).

measure the height difference between the front and back of the ruler (Figure 20). Measure the maximum height difference observed over a 3-5 second period. Record the hydraulic head to the nearest 5 mm in the box marked 'Hydraulic Head' on the Channel Morphology Data Form.

It may be easier to use a pencil or finger to mark the locations on the ruler and then measure the differences out of the water. At higher velocities, there will be greater variability in the height differential (i.e., the hydraulic head will pulse up and down). Where the water depth is greater than 1 m, brace the ruler on your toe or knee and record the hydraulic head.

3.6.3 Cover for Fish

Cover is traditionally the most difficult attribute of stream habitat to measure repeatably. Cover presence is determined and classified by its quality and type. This technique uses a 30 cm ring attached to a rod by cross bars (Figures 1, 21) to produce repeatable measurements (Stanfield and Jones 1998).

Instream Cover

A cover particle is any object that touches the water within the sample area, is **at least 100 mm wide** along the median axis and of sufficient density to block >75 % of sunlight from reaching the stream bottom. A cover particle can consist of a mat of materials such as twigs, macrophytes, or the bank. The mat must still meet the median diameter size and light penetration restrictions.

Place the centre of the pole on the observation point. Look for any cover which is in the water and in the ring (i.e., within or in contact with the ring). If observation points fall on mid-channel islands, bars or large exposed rocks, cover should still be determined as these areas may be used by fish under conditions of higher flow.

The cover quality is determined with respect to embeddedness. Unembedded cover provides overhead and velocity protection for small fish and has at least a 4 cm overhang. Embedded cover provides only a velocity refuge and has less than a 4 cm overhang (e.g., the interstitial spaces around the cover object are filled with material). This can either be determined visually or by feeling around the object to determine whether there is at least 4 cm of overhang. When an observation is recorded as having only embedded material, this means that this area is not suitable habitat for burrowing fish.

Record the data for each observation point in the 'Cover Quality' box as follows:

- 0 = no cover is present
- 1 = only embedded cover is present
- 2 = at least some unembedded cover is present

Point-Transect Sampling for Channel Structure, Substrate and Bank Conditions
edited May 2007

There should only be one number for each observation point.



Figure 21: Cover Ring (30 cm in diameter), Showing the 'Observation Area'.

Hint: Determine whether mats are sufficiently dense by placing a hand under the mat and estimating whether greater than 75% of light is blocked. The cover material must be in contact with the water within the observation area. Finally, for any materials and particularly for wood, measure the median axis on the branch that is **within the observation area**. In other words, if the observation area contains a 1 cm wide branch of a large tree, this would not be considered as cover. Conversely, if the observation area contains a 12 cm wide branch of a large tree, this would be considered cover.

Once the cover quality has been determined, list all the cover types corresponding to the cover quality (cover types are defined in Table 4). For example, if there is an unembedded flat rock and an embedded log, only record the unembedded flat rock. If a point has an unembedded flat rock and an unembedded log, both are recorded. Similarly, if an embedded log and an embedded flat rock are present, record both types. See the Channel Morphology Data Form for these examples.

Table 4: Definitions for Cover Types.

Cover Type	Description
'Flat Rock'	The longitudinal axis is at least twice as long as the shortest axis, i.e., ratio of longitudinal axis/shortest axis > 2.
'Round Rock'	The longitudinal axis is less than twice as long as the shortest axis, i.e., ratio of longitudinal axis/shortest axis < 2.
'Wood'	Living or dead woody materials (includes mats of twigs, shrubs).
'Macrophytes'	Any living aquatic and terrestrial non-woody plants.
'Bank'	Bank material which contain soils (fine materials) i.e., undercuts and slumped banks or parts of banks which have become dislodged and are now lying in the main channel.
'Other'	Any other type of material not covered by the above categories. Typically, this includes tires, refrigerators, cars, etc.

Hint: On the Channel Morphology Data Form, ensure that dashes are placed in cover categories that are not present; i.e., empty boxes indicate that an attribute was not assessed, not that it was not present.

3.6.4 Aquatic Vegetation

At each observation point, record the presence of any of the following vegetation types which are rooted within the 30 cm ring or attached to substrate or wood within the 30 cm ring: 'Filamentous Algae', 'Non-Filamentous Algae', 'Moss', 'Macrophytes', 'Watercress', 'Grass', and 'Terrestrial Plants' (Table 5).

Table 5: Definitions for Aquatic Vegetation Types

Vegetation Type	Description
'Filamentous Algae'	Filamentous green algae, have hair-like filaments, are slimy to the touch, and are often attached to rocks.
'Non-Filamentous Algae'	Non-filamentous green algae are slimy to the touch with no hair-like filaments.
'Moss'	Small plants (2-20 cm) found in a matted colony on coarse substrate and wood. They are distinguished from plants by the absence of a distinctive stem or true leaves. The plant feels rougher than most vascular plants or algae and the rhizoids anchoring the plant are finer than typical plant roots.
'Macrophytes'	Many different species, all are rooted in the stream bottom and have obvious stems or leaves or filaments (examples: <i>Veronica</i> spp., pondweed, tape grass, arrowhead, bulrush and cattail).

Point-Transect Sampling for Channel Structure, Substrate and Bank Conditions
edited May 2007

Vegetation Type	Description
'Watercress'	Dark green, non-woody stems with flat, broad, opposite compound leaves with 3 to 9 leaflets per stem. Often found in large clusters along margins of stream. They are indicators of groundwater inputs and are also nitrate fixers.
'Grass'	Terrestrial grasses (as opposed to tape grass or eelgrass) which are growing in the stream. Terrestrial grasses tend to be found at the margins of the stream.
'Terrestrial Plants'	Firm stemmed plants that occasionally grow on the margins of streams, such as jewelweed, stinging nettles, poison ivy, willow, dogwood, etc.

Hint: On the Channel Morphology Data Form, ensure that dashes are placed in vegetation categories that are not present; i.e., empty boxes indicate that an attribute was not assessed, not that it was not present.

Often, vegetation and particularly moss that is attached to the sides of boulders, cannot be seen. Therefore, pick up and closely examine the substrate for vegetation. Slime and algae must be differentiated by rubbing the objects (see Table 5). A thin layer of slime is not considered vegetation, unless green algae are found when the rock is rubbed.

Note: Crews have had difficulty distinguishing between fine silt, slime and brown algae, therefore recording brown algae and slime is not required.

If any of the macrophytes can be identified, record their common names in the comments box of the Channel Morphology Data Form.

3.6.5 Substrate Particle Size Distribution

In this section, point particle and maximum particle size are measured at each observation point. If observation points fall on mid-channel islands, bars or large exposed rocks particle size distribution should still be determined as these areas may be used by fish under conditions of higher flow.

These measures are used to characterize the stream for its suitability for various species and to provide information on geomorphic characteristics (i.e., sediment transport and sorting).

3.6.5.1 Point Particle Size

Select and remove the particle immediately below the observation point and measure its width along its median axis (Figure 12); for very large particles measurements may be taken in the stream. If the median axis of the material is between 2 mm and 1000 mm, record this measurement on the Channel Morphology Data Form; otherwise record standard sizes found in

Table 2. Remove undecomposed organic material (e.g. leaves, sticks), before making substrate measurements. Decomposed organic material should be classified as silt.

3.6.5.2 Maximum Particle Size

After centering the 30 cm ring on the observation point, select the largest particle within or touching the ring and measure its width along the median axis. If the median width is less than 2 mm, estimate its size using the criteria provided in Table 2. Record the particle size in the box entitled 'Maximum in Ring' on the Channel Morphology Data Form.

Hint: If there is a mixture of smaller particles within the 30 cm ring, such as silt/sand or clay/silt, catalogue point particle size as the smaller particle size (e.g., silt (0.05)), and the maximum particle size as the largest particle size (e.g., sand (0.10)). This is to avoid biasing the sample.

3.7 Recording Stream Bearing

Compass bearings are used to produce scaled maps of the stream channel.

Facing upstream, lay the compass anywhere on the transect tape, lining up the bottom edge of the compass with the tape (i.e., so that the bearing is perpendicular to the transect). Turn the dial on the compass until the north arrow is lined up with the north needle. Then, read and record the compass bearing to the nearest degree on the Channel Morphology Data Form. Using this method, 0° is magnetic north.

3.8 Measuring to the Next Transect

After completion of the measurements for the transect, check over the results to ensure they are complete and legible. Measure the distance to the next transect along the mid-point of the stream, before removing the tape measure. Set up the next transect (Figure 3).

Hint: Use two tape measures, leaving the first transect in place while the second one is set up. This way, the recorder gets additional time to check for problems with data collected on the previous transect. If problems arise, it is much easier to redo the measurements if the tape is still up, rather than having to set up the transect again.

3.9 Tips for Applying this Module

Remember that left and right banks are identified while looking upstream.

Learn to identify stinging nettles and poison ivy. Wear elbow-length rubber gloves for doing the vegetation grid count where these species are common.

On every data form, record the standard site identification data and the sample number. On the first sheet, also record the 'Site Length', 'Minimum Width', and the calculated 'Transect Spacing'.

Remember that a sample consists of one full set of data for each module, regardless of how many days it takes to do it.

Make sure that all fields have data recorded before taking down the tape measure.

Record '-99' ('-999' for depth) to indicate that a measurement could not be performed.

Finally, record any irregularities in the way the data were collected in the 'Comments' field.

4.0 DATA MANAGEMENT

Upon returning from the field;

1. Create a backup hard copy (i.e., photocopy) of field forms, and store in a place separate from the original.
2. Enter the data into a digital storage system, such as HabProgs, and save backup copies that are stored in a separate location from the master copy.

By storing the data digitally in HabProgs, the data can be shared with a large number of users province-wide. Data sharing will facilitate the refinement and development of habitat suitability models, and this will improve habitat management practices and policies.

5.0 LITERATURE CITED

Henderson, F.H. 1970. Open Channel Flow. MacMillan, New York, NY.

Stanfield, L. and M.L. Jones. 1998. Guidelines for evaluating fish habitat in Wisconsin streams. Gen. Tech. Rep. NC-164. U.S. Department of Agriculture.

Appendix 1

Example Channel Morphology Data Form

Please note that this example is from a transect that includes a bank profile measurement on the left bank (extends 1500 mm beyond the bank).

Channel Morphology Data Form

Stream Name: **WILMOT CREEK** Stream Code: **WMI** Site Code: **3CDW** Year: **2000** Date: (YYYY/MM/DD): **00/09/01** Transsect # **1** of **10**

Transsect and Point Layout

Use this table to determine the number of transects and points required, given the minimum stream width.

Minimum Width (m.)	# Transects at Site	Points / Transect (N)
> 3.0	10	6
1.5 - 3.0	12	5
1.0 - 1.49	15	3
< 1.0	20	2

Calculate the transect spacing from the site length and number of transects:

Minimum Width (m.) > 3 Site Length (Number of Transects - 1) Site Length (m.) 52 Transect Spacing (m.) 5.8

Number of Transects 10

Number of Points/Transect (N) 6

Active Channel Width (W) (m.) 3.4

Point Spacing (m.) .56

Point Spacing / Active Width W (m.)

Spacing, S = # Points per Transect

First point is S/2 from the left bank

Compass Bearing: 3

Particle Size Codes
(Measure all particles between 2.00 mm and 1000 mm.)

Material	Size
Unconsolidated Clay	0.01
Consolidated Clay	0.011
Silt	0.05
Sand	0.10
Large Boulders	1001
Bedrock	1111

Point Number	Location (m.)	Measure depth and hydraulic head to nearest 5 mm.	Particle Sizes (mm.)		Cover Quality (-99, 0, 1, 2)	Types Present			Aquatic Vegetation Types Present																															
			Depth (mm.)	Hydraulic Head (mm.)		W	R	R	F	R	M	B	O	FL	AL	SS	MC	WC	GR	TR																				
1	1.78	5	0	3	12																																			
2	2.34	45	5	18	135	X																			X															
3	2.90	95	15	400	400																				X															
4	3.46	40	10	.10	180																				X															
5	4.02	70	30	5	40	X																				X														
6	4.58	15	5	12	120	X																				X														

Bank	Bank Angle				Amount of Undercut (mm.)	# of Vegetated Squares on Bank (out of 16)	Dominant Vegetation Type: Put X in the box of the dominant type in the 1 x 2 m. area. Put - in all others.			Cover Quality -99 = Not Measurable 0 = No Cover 1 = Embodied Cover 2 = Unembodied Cover																													
	> 2m	250 mm.	750 mm.	1500 mm.			None	Cultivated	Meadow		Scrubland	Forest																											
Left	—	850	600	240	0	8		X																															
Right	—	700	420	180	0	12				X																													
Bank Particle Median Diameter (mm.)	Left	240	10	3	1																																		
Right	120	50	20	3																																			

Comments: CLAY EXPOSED ON LEFT BANK

Enter dates and initials when data entered in computer

Date	Init.
00/09/01	JG
00/09/01	AC
00/02/01	SG

ONTARIO STREAM ASSESSMENT PROTOCOL

SECTION 4: MODULE 3

Bankfull Profiles and Channel Entrenchment¹

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0	INTRODUCTION	1
2.0	PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES	2
3.0	FIELD PROCEDURES.....	3
3.1	Bankfull Profile Procedure	3
3.1.1	Determining Transect Location to Identify Bankfull Level.....	3
3.1.2	Identifying the Bankfull Level	5
3.1.2.1	Visual Indicators of Bankfull Level Method	5
3.1.2.2	Minimum Width:Depth Ratio Indicator Method	6
3.1.3	Setting up the Transect Cross-section	8
3.1.4	Measuring the Water Level and Depth Profile Across the Channel	11
3.2	Channel Entrenchment Procedure.....	13
3.3	Tips for Applying this Module	13
4.0	DATA MANAGEMENT	15
5.0	LITERATURE CITED.....	15

Appendices

- Appendix 1. Example Diagnostic Indicators of Channel Stability Field Form
- Appendix 2. Examples of Visual Indicators of the Bankfull Level

¹ Authors: L. W. Stanfield and J. Parish

1.0 INTRODUCTION

This module outlines methodologies for measuring bankfull profile and the entrenchment of wadeable streams.

In alluvial streams, bankfull stage (i.e., depth of flow) is defined as the point at which the channel is completely full just prior to flows overtopping the banks and occupying the floodplain (Wolman and Leopold 1957). The flows at bankfull stage are typically considered the channel forming flows.

In streams flowing through channels that are affected by bedrock, roots and woody material, large glacial deposits etc., an equivalent to the bankfull stage (trim line depth) is identified as the upper limit of a regularly scoured zone and a distinct change in vegetation.

Stream surveys are rarely conducted during the bankfull stage of flow because of the risk to safety of surveyors etc. Usually the depths of flow during conditions that enable sampling and measurement-taking are lower than bankfull stage flow and this parameter must therefore be estimated (Newbury and Gaboury 1993). This module provides methods for consistently and accurately measuring the bankfull level, providing an approximation of bankfull stage flow.

This module also provides methodologies for measuring entrenchment, the degree to which the stream is restricted from accessing the floodplain, or how incised the stream is within the valley (i.e., the valley width/bankfull width). Entrenchment width is the width of the flood-prone area of a channel at twice the height of its maximum bankfull depth from the channel bed. If the channel is not entrenched this may be a very high value in low relief landscapes.

This module builds on data collected in S4.M2, Point-Transect Sampling for Channel Structure, Substrate and Bank Conditions, and is used to assess channel processes and diagnose potential channel instability. It also provides a means of quantifying the rate of change in the channel width:depth profile.

Although the bankfull profile may be used to estimate channel forming discharge in certain cases, the procedure required for this is not covered in this manual. This module provides an evaluation of the bankfull profile that is independent of the flow conditions in the stream. Bankfull profile is more reliable for monitoring changes in the channel geometry and stability than the profiles produced in S4.M2, Point-Transect Sampling for Channel Structure, Substrate and Bank Conditions.

The bankfull profile methods have been tested for repeatability by comparing the measurements made by inexperienced and experienced crews. The test results showed a high degree of consistency.

This module can be used independently or in conjunction with S4.M5, Measuring Stream Discharge Quantitatively, and/or S4.M2, Point-Transect Sampling for Channel Structure, Substrate and Bank Conditions (i.e., at all or a subset of the transects).

2.0 PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES

A crew of two to three people is required to complete this module in 10 to 15 minutes per transect.

Pre-field activities should include:

- Landowner contact
- Documentation of site access and appropriate stream identifiers (see Section 1)
- Equipment check

The following equipment list is required:

1. 'Diagnostic Indicators of Channel Stability' forms on waterproof paper
2. Pencils
3. Metre sticks (two)
4. Tape measures (two, 30 m long)
5. Flagging tape
6. Spikes (four, 25 cm long), tent pegs (four) or bungee cords (two)
7. Calculator (waterproof or in resealable bag)

Crews should adhere to safety precautions and requirements set forth by their employers /managers i.e., first aid kit, first aid training, travel plan, buddy system, mobile phone etc.

The application of this module is determined by study design. Sampling design should consider transect location (i.e., regular spacing or just on crossovers), number of bankfull profile measurements, site length, and number of sites to be sampled. Adding additional transects to the study design reduces the error of the measurement for the entire site.

3.0 FIELD PROCEDURES

This module must be completed in conjunction with S1.M1, Defining Site Boundaries and Key Identifiers and S1.M2, Screening Level Site Documentation. Record the site identification data ('Stream Name:', 'Stream Code', 'Site Code'), the 'Sample #:', the 'Site Length (m):', the calculated 'Transect Spacing (m):' and the "Transect # ____ of ____" in the site identification area on the Diagnostic Indicators of Channel Stability field form (Appendix 1). Use one form per transect. Ensure that transect numbers are consistent with other modules being applied at the same site.

3.1 Bankfull Profile Procedure

The bankfull profile protocol is most effective when completed on crossovers². An overview of the data collection procedures is described below:

1. Use previously established site boundaries to determine the location for the bankfull profile (where applicable)
2. Identify the bankfull level (where applicable)
3. Establish the transect, measure the channel width and determine spacing for observation points
4. Measure the height of the channel at all appropriate locations on the transect
5. Repeat Steps 1-4 for remaining transects as defined by the study design

3.1.1 Determining Transect Location to Identify Bankfull Level

The first transect is established at the downstream end of the site provided there are no obscuring features present (Table 1). If no obscuring features are found mark the box entitled 'None Present' on the Diagnostic Indicators of Channel Stability form and set up the transect. If any obscuring features (Table 1) are observed relocate the transect, since these features will affect flow (Figure 1) and bias the data. If the transect needs to be relocated, mark an 'X' on the field form to indicate the type of obscuring feature. The location of subsequent transects will be determined according to the study design.

² The crossover is located where the thalweg is in the middle of the channel at bankfull discharge. It also represents the location where velocity is uniform across the channel and is at the lowest velocity during a bankfull discharge event.

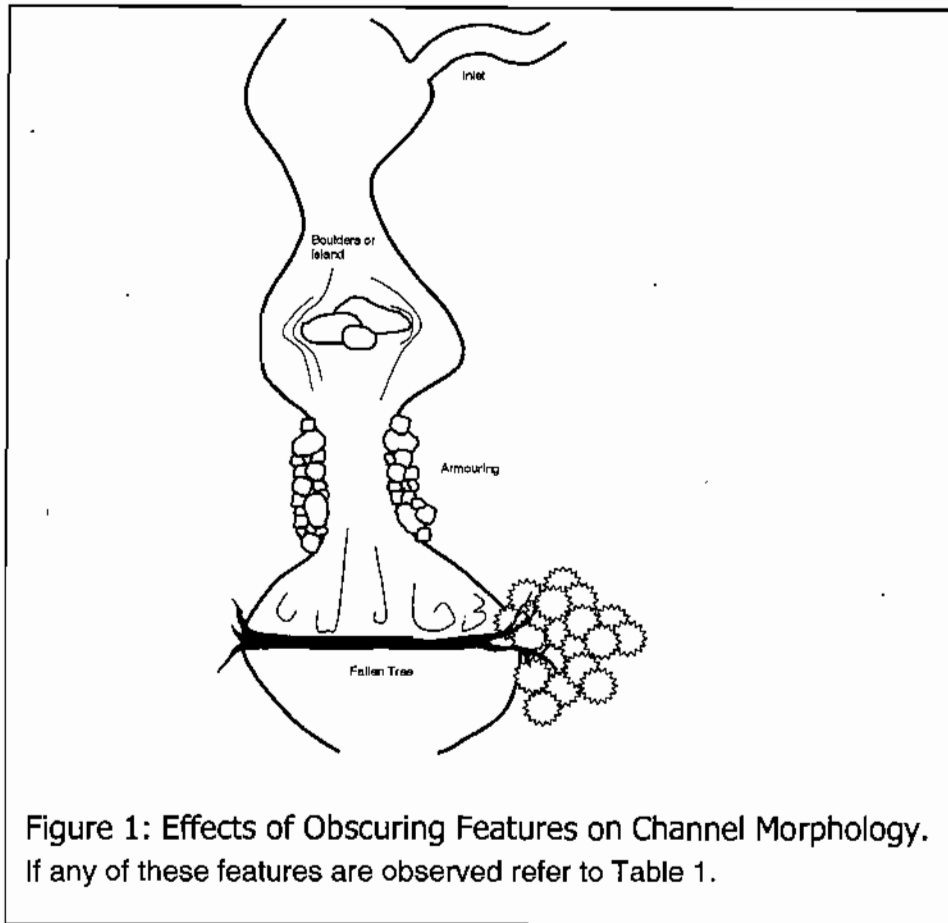


Figure 1: Effects of Obscuring Features on Channel Morphology. If any of these features are observed refer to Table 1.

Table 1: Criteria for Identifying Obscuring Features that Necessitate Transect Relocation

Obscuring Feature	Distance of Feature from Transect	Description
'Trampled Banks'	within 5 m	Trampled banks from animals or machinery.
'Wood Deflectors'	within 5 m	Large logs or trees which impede the flow causing bank erosion on either side of the deflector.
'Inorganic Deflectors'	within 5 m	Mid-channel islands, large rocks (erratics), etc., that are sufficiently large to cause erosion on either bank.
'Armouring'	within 5 m	Rip rap, gabion, concrete, etc., placed on the banks.
'Inlets'	within two stream widths upstream or six stream widths downstream	Presence of tributaries that provide sufficient discharge to produce a plume or delta, or major outfalls emptying into the channel.

Possible options for sampling designs include:

- profiles conducted on one or more crossovers (i.e., upstream and/or downstream site boundaries, other crossovers located within these limits)
- for surveys that are performed in conjunction with S4.M2, Point Transect Sampling for Channel Structure, Substrate and Bank Conditions, profiles can be conducted along all transects as defined in that module
- profiles conducted at selected locations within the site where the bankfull channel is well defined

3.1.2 Identifying the Bankfull Level

There are two ways of identifying the bankfull level: 1) using visual indicators of bankfull level or by 2) using the minimum width:depth ratio indicator. The latter involves the least error (high reliability) but is labour intensive and is mainly used on terraced streams or to corroborate the visual indicators of the bankfull level method. The bankfull level can be identified in the field using the minimum width:depth ratio or it can be determined after the field survey, in the office. The latter requires that the data collected for the bankfull profile (i.e., 'Vert Ht to Tape (mm)') are corrected, yielding the 'Vert Ht to Bankfull Level (mm)'.

3.1.2.1 Visual Indicators of Bankfull Level Method

Examine each bank for visual indicators of the bankfull level (Table 2). The left and right banks are defined when looking upstream. Visual indicators are features that provide evidence of the boundaries of the bankfull channel. Visual indicators of the bankfull level should be found on both banks at the transect and at other locations up and downstream.

Table 2: Visual Indicators of the Bankfull Level (a detailed description of the indicators is provided in Appendix 2).

Indicator	Reliability Rating
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 'Inflection Point' (i.e., change in bank slope) 	High
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change in 'Bank Material' sand/silts to clays or gravels • 'Top of Point Bar' or terraces • Changes in 'Vegetation' from alders to willows or from grasses to tall herbaceous vegetation 	Medium
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lichens, Water Stains and Thatch • Worm Holes and Swallow Nests 	Low

Each indicator has been rated from high to low in terms of its reliability. In some instances, high reliability indicators (i.e., inflection points) will occur on one bank while low reliability indicators occur on the other bank. In these instances, the higher reliability indicator takes precedence. However, it is best to use a variety of indicators and/or the minimum width:depth ratio method to corroborate the bankfull level. The height of the bankfull indicators above the water surface should be similar on both sides of the channel and should be comparable at different locations within the site and the surrounding reaches.

For each bank, document the indicators used in determining the bankfull level by marking an 'X' in the appropriate box(es).

In uniform reaches, or selectively at crossover transects of similar width, the height of the bankfull indicators above the water surface should be similar. Bankfull heights that are widely different should be re-inspected before leaving the reach. It may be useful to string a measuring tape or survey ribbon between strong indicators along the banks to see if the heights are confirmed by indicators between the transects.

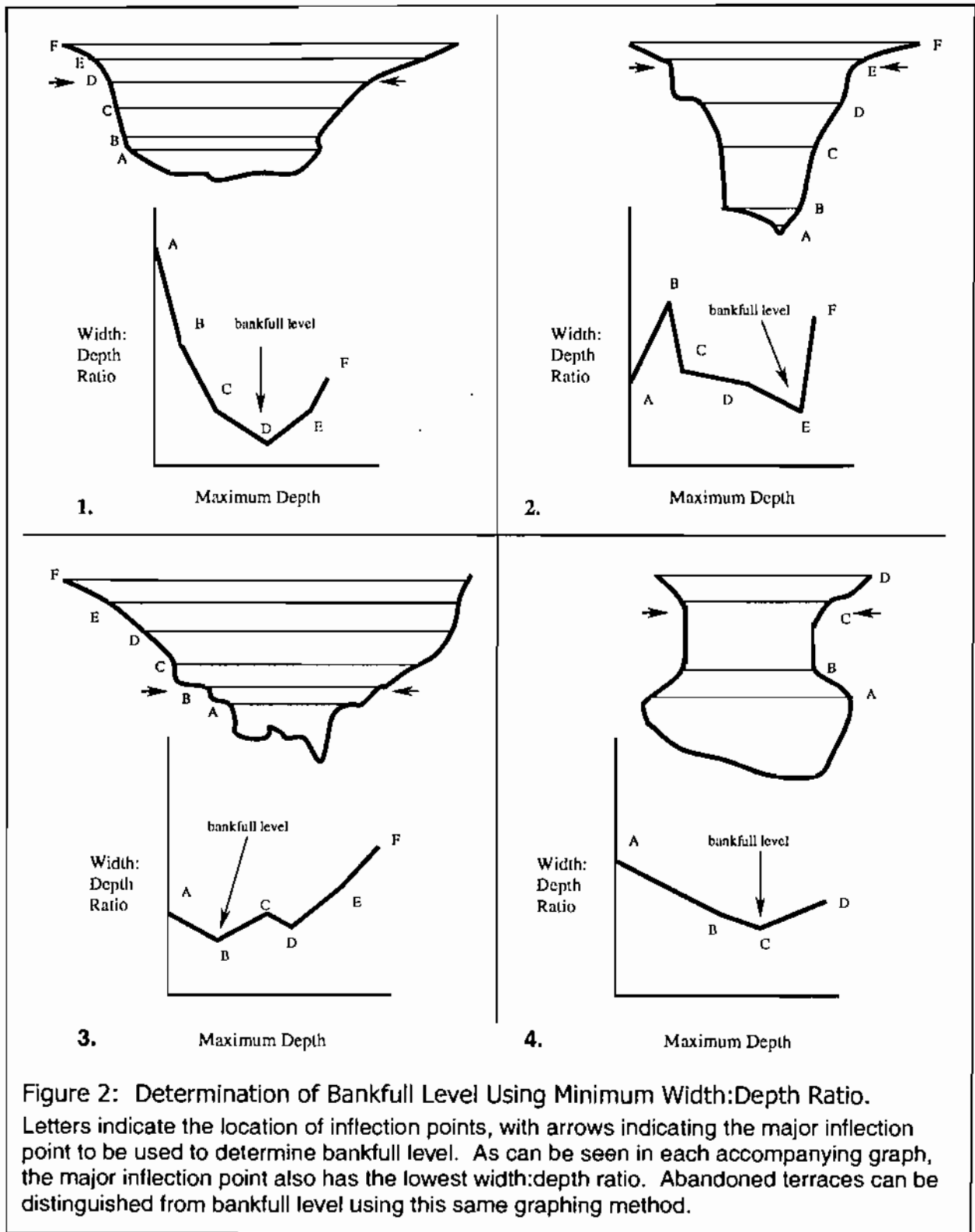
Hint: It is often useful to hold the hand level at the height of a likely indicator and scan upstream, downstream, and across the channel for similar indicators. These can then be checked by sighting back from the other side of the stream to confirm the general height of the scour line or bankfull indicators on and adjacent to the transect.

3.1.2.2 Minimum Width:Depth Ratio Indicator Method

The bankfull level occurs at the minimum width to depth ratio in the profile (Figure 2). To determine this measurement in the field, measure the width of the channel and the height to the inflection point (tape) at each inflection point (i.e., each potential location of the bankfull level). Calculate the width:depth ratio at each location and establish which one represents the bankfull level. Then set up the tape at this location as outlined in Section 3.1.3, Setting up the Transect.

Alternatively, the bankfull level can be calculated later in the office. With this scenario, the tape is set up so as to include the widest part of the channel. The height to the tape ('Vert Ht to Tape (mm)') and location on the tape ('Horiz Loc (m)') are recorded at every inflection point in the profile (along with the locations described below). With this scenario, the bankfull height is determined in the office using the procedures illustrated in Figure 3, by correcting the field data (yielding the 'Vert Ht to Bankfull Level (mm)').

Resources and crew experience will determine which option is chosen with respect to bankfull level identification and bankfull profile measurements (i.e., field identification of bankfull level or correction of bankfull profile (vertical) measurements).



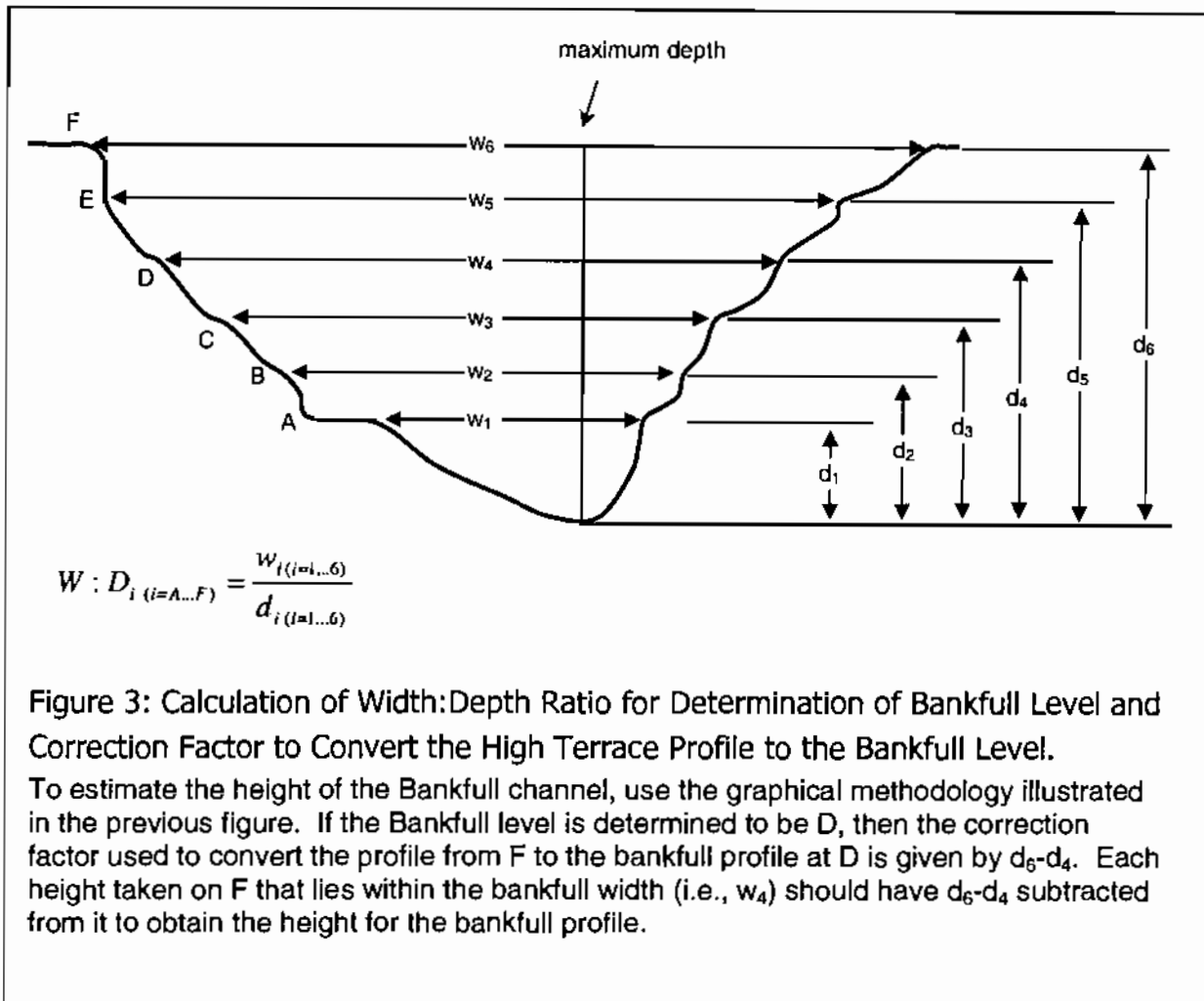


Figure 3: Calculation of Width:Depth Ratio for Determination of Bankfull Level and Correction Factor to Convert the High Terrace Profile to the Bankfull Level.

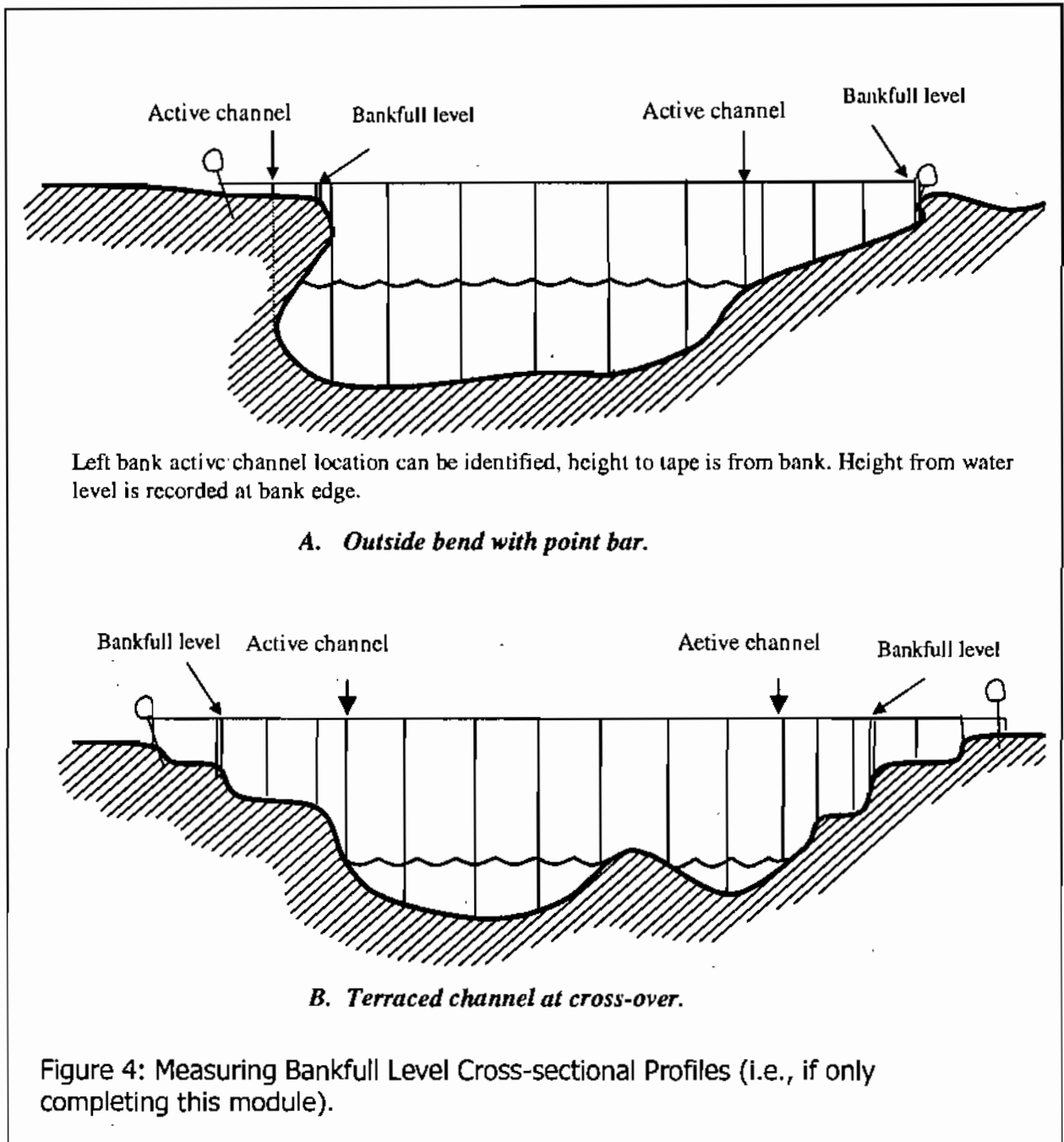
To estimate the height of the Bankfull channel, use the graphical methodology illustrated in the previous figure. If the Bankfull level is determined to be D, then the correction factor used to convert the profile from F to the bankfull profile at D is given by $d_6 - d_4$. Each height taken on F that lies within the bankfull width (i.e., w_4) should have $d_6 - d_4$ subtracted from it to obtain the height for the bankfull profile.

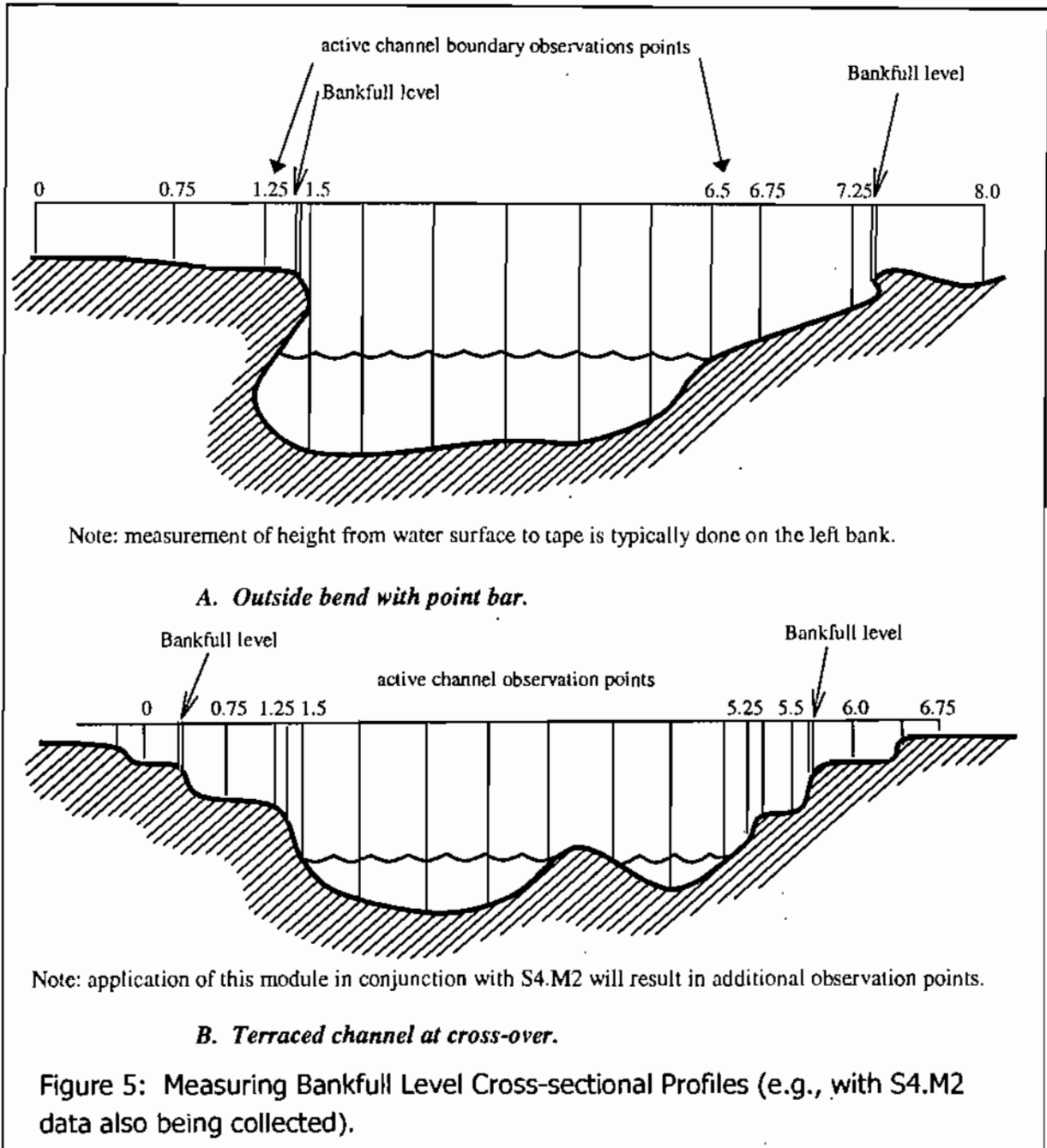
On the field form, indicate that the minimum width:depth ratio was used to determine bankfull level, by marking an 'X' in the appropriate box.

3.1.3 Setting up the Transect Cross-section

Stretch and secure the tape measure taut and level across the channel at the height of the bankfull level, or at the top of the terrace (depending on the methodology used). The tape can be secured with bungee cords or spikes at the appropriate locations. Check that it is level by setting at equal heights above the water surface.

Set up the transect as shown in Figure 4 if only this module is being completed and refer to Figure 5 if this module is being completed in conjunction with S4.M2, Point-Transect Sampling for Channel Structure, Substrate and Bank Conditions. If this module is being done in conjunction with S4.M2, Point-Transect Sampling for Channel Structure, Substrate and Bank





Conditions, ensure that the location of the tape is extended a minimum of 1.5 m beyond the wetted width on either side of the channel, or to the bankfull level, whichever is farther.

The number of observation points vary with stream width (Table 3 and Point Observation Calculation Example). In channels that have uniform depth, the stream width is divided by the

number of observation points to determine panel widths. The observation points are located in the centre of each panel. Mark each observation point and the inflection points on the tape. Also locate and mark the deepest part of the channel. Depth at this location is used in subsequent analysis to verify the bankfull location (Figure 2).

Table 3: Relationship Between the Stream Width and the Minimum Number of Panels to Sample for Low Variance and High Variance Sites.

Channel Width (m)	Number of Panels to Sample	
	Transects with Low Variance in Velocity or Depth	Transects with High Variance in Velocity or Depth
> 3.0	minimum 8*	minimum 10*
1.5 – 3.0	5	8
1.0 – 1.5	3	6
< 1.0	2	4

* Add one panel for every 2 m increase in stream width i.e., 9 m wide = 11 (low variance) or 13 (high variance) panels.

Observation Point Calculation Example

For a stream that has an active channel width of 2.9 m wide, and low variance in velocity, five panels are sampled. The point spacing would be $2.9/5 = 0.58$. This number actually represents the boundary of a set of panels that transect the stream, with each observation point located in the centre of each panel. To determine the actual location of the observation points, divide the first panel in half, and for each additional location add 0.58. The first observation point would be at 0.29 m (i.e., $0.58/2 = 0.29$). The second point would be at $0.29 + 0.58 = 0.87$ m. The complete list of observation points is 0.29, 0.87, 1.45, 2.03 and 2.61 m.

Note: Observation point locations are dependent on whether the tape extends beyond the bank water interface. For example if the left bank water interface occurs at 1.5 m on the tape then the first observation point for the above example would be at the 1.79 m mark on the tape.

3.1.4 Measuring the Water Level and Depth Profile Across the Channel

Measurement points for depth measurements will be located at:

- the outside edges (start and finish) of the transect;

- the location of the bankfull level on both banks;
- the active channel boundary on both banks
- calculated observation points
- inflection points
- the deepest point in the channel

Start the measurements on the left bank³. Record the height from the bank to the tape measure at the start of the transect. Record this height (in mm) in the row entitled 'Measurement 1' on the field form. Measure the height of the channel (i.e., the height from the channel bottom (substrate) to the tape) at each observation point (as shown in Figure 6), inflection point, active channel boundaries, and at the location of the maximum depth. For each observation point location, record the tape measure reading location in m to the nearest 0.01 m (i.e., 'Horizon. Loc (m)') and the height in mm as observed (e.g., 18 mm) or rounded to the nearest 5 mm (e.g., 20 mm), whichever is easier for the crews. The accuracy of these height measures is considered to be 5 mm for all interpretations..



Figure 6: Measuring Height from Channel Bottom to Tape at the Active Channel Boundary.

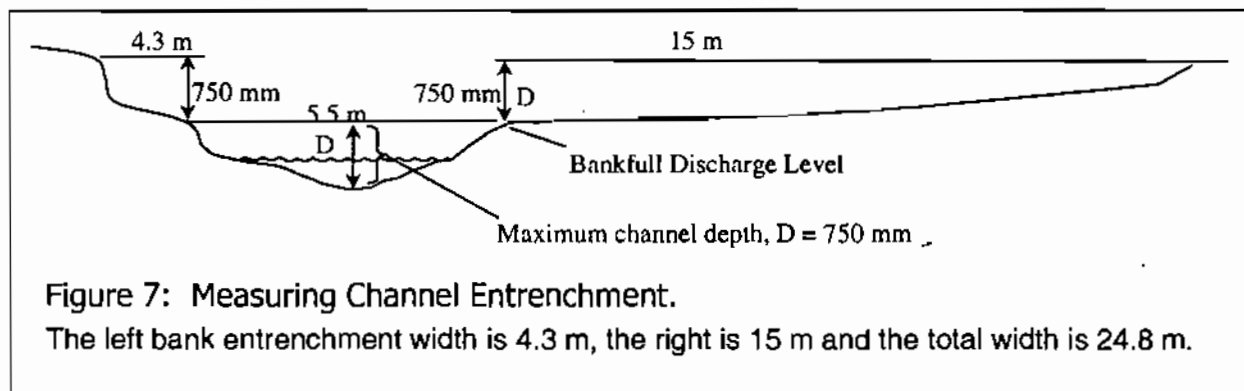
The active channel boundaries mark the area between the two outside banks which includes all connected water at the time of the survey. This includes actively flowing as well as stagnant areas provided there is no land barrier that separates it from the main channel (see S4.M2, Point Transect Sampling for Channel Structure, Substrate, and Bank Conditions). Regardless of where the active channel boundary occurs i.e., at the bank-water interface or under an undercut, measure and record the height from top of bank to the transect tape (Figure 4A, left bank). Also record the depth of water at the boundary of the active channel, even if it is zero. Where undercuts are present, obtaining depth measurements may require the use of alternate tools to obtain the measurement (i.e., shorter rulers, sticks, boots).

³ It may be easier to mark the locations of all the observation points prior to making the measurements.

3.2 Channel Entrenchment Procedure

Entrenchment measurements are best completed at crossover locations. This method assumes the maximum depth of the channel to bankfull level has been determined from procedures listed above. Place a metre stick vertically on the left bank at the bankfull level. At a height equivalent to the maximum channel depth, (i.e., two times the bankfull maximum depth) estimate the horizontal distance to the valley wall. If it is obviously greater than 40 m, simply record '41' in the 'Total Entrenchment Width (m)' on the field form. For purposes of this manual (i.e., wadeable streams), an unentrenched stream has an excess of 40 m of floodplain on either bank.

If this distance is less than 40 m, extend a tape measure from the metre stick at a height equivalent to the maximum channel depth and extend this tape away from the channel – parallel to and level with the transect – until it meets the ground (Figure 7). Repeat this procedure on the right bank. Measuring the valley width at two times the bankfull depth is the convention adopted in this procedure. The entrenchment ratio is the total width/bankfull width.



Record the distance in the appropriate entrenchment width box (i.e., 'Left Entrenchment Width (m):' or 'Right Entrenchment Width (m):') to the nearest 0.1 m.

With a three-person crew, the tape can often be extended across the channel to measure the total entrenchment width at once, rather than measuring the width on each bank separately. If this is the method used, record the total entrenchment width in the appropriate box on the data form (i.e., 'Total Entrenchment Width').

3.3 Tips for Applying this Module

Before measuring the bankfull profile and entrenchment at any transect, it is recommended that the field crew completes an initial reconnaissance of the site for bankfull indicators and the

height of the bankfull level.

Since it may be difficult to identify bankfull level using channel indicators, it is recommended that replicate sites be used in the study design. This will allow quantification of variability among crews.

If indicators can only be found on one bank, use corroborative evidence to verify the location of the bankfull channel on the opposite bank. This method uses triangulation (Figure 8) to determine the height of the bankfull level (i.e., locations up and downstream and on the opposite bank are used to estimate the bankfull level).

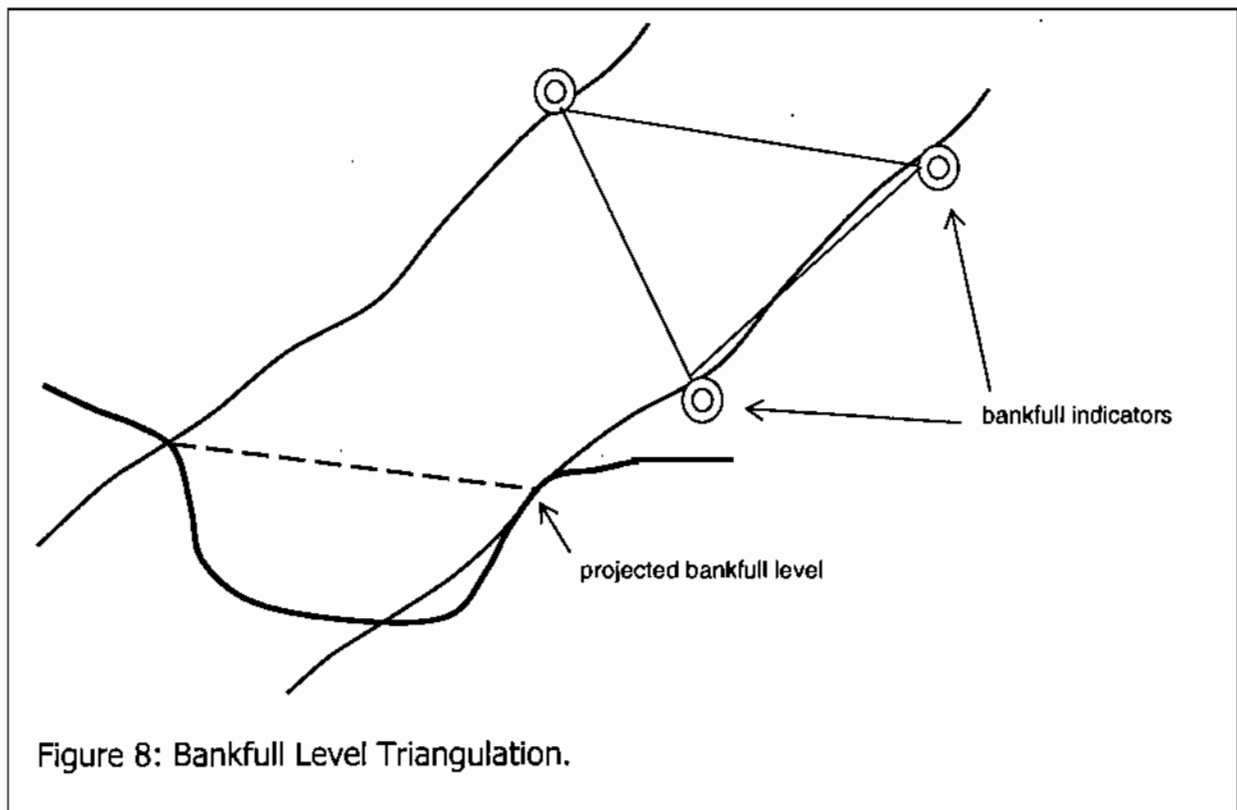


Figure 8: Bankfull Level Triangulation.

These procedures are designed to work on streams with natural banks and should not be used on streams with hardened or channelized banks. It is also very difficult to apply these methods on streams with very high roughness caused by an abundance of large woody materials, or streams that flow through wetlands.

A sample (i.e., 'Sample #') consists of one full set of data for each module, regardless of how many transects are surveyed or how many days are required to complete data collection.

The indicators should be applied in a hierarchical way, giving more weight to those with greater reliability. Multiple indicators should be used wherever possible.

The tape should be reasonably level and taut. A bungee cord can be used at the handle end of the tape measure to tighten the tape. Once the tape has been stretched, the handle should be locked in place and the bungee cord anchored to the nearest solid object.

Flagging tape should be tied loosely on the tape measure so that measurement points can be easily shifted.

The spacing of the observation points should be checked before recording data. All height measurements can be either recorded as observed (i.e., 18 mm) or can be rounded to the nearest 5 mm (i.e., 20 mm), whichever is easier for the crews. The accuracy of these measures is considered to be 5 mm for all interpretations.

All field equipment should be marked with bright paint or flagging tape to increase visibility.

4.0 DATA MANAGEMENT

Upon returning from the field:

1. Create a backup hard copy (i.e., photocopy) of field forms, and store in a place separate from the original.
2. Enter the data into a digital storage system, such as HabProgs, and save backup copies that are stored in a separate location from the master copy.

By storing the data digitally in HabProgs, the data can be shared with a large number of users province-wide. Data sharing will facilitate the refinement and development of habitat suitability models, and this will improve habitat management practices and policies.

5.0 LITERATURE CITED

- Harrelson, C.C., Rawlins, C.L. and Potyondy, J.P. 1995. Stream channel reference sites: an illustrated guide to field technique. General Technical Report RM-245. USDA Forest Service.
- Newbury, R.W. and M.N. Gaboury. 1993. Stream analysis and fish habitat design: A Field Manual. Co-Published by Newbury Hydraulics Ltd., the Manitoba Heritage Corporation and Manitoba Natural Resources, Gibsons, British Columbia.

Wolman, M.G. and L.B. Leopold. 1957. River flood plains: Some observations on their formation. USGS Prof. Paper 282C.



Bankfull Profiles and Channel Entrenchment
edited May 2007



Appendix 1

Example Diagnostic Indicators of Channel Stability Field Form

Note that the survey was done in conjunction with S4M5 Measuring stream discharge quantitatively. The crew determined that the site was 5.25 m wide and there was minimal variance in the depth and velocities across the profile. Therefore, nine (minimum 8, + 1 observation point because the stream is 2 m wider than 3 m) equally-spaced observation points were established. The transect was set up such that Point-transect Sampling for Channel Structure, Substrate and Bank Conditions (S4:M2) measurements could also be conducted. The tape was set up at 1.5 m from the left bank.

Diagnostic Indicators of Channel Stability

Stream Name: WILMOT CREEK	Stream Code (Unique Code): 3CDW	Year: 2000	Sample #: 2000 / 08 / 10	Date (YYYY/MM/DD): 2000 / 08 / 10	Transect # of 10
Site: J. BEAL, A. CONE, S. BYE		Comments:			
<p>Record these values only on the first transect</p> <p>Site Length (m): 44.2 Transect Spacing (m): 4.91</p>					
<p>DISCHARGE APPROXIMATES BASEFLOW YES <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> NO <input type="checkbox"/></p>					
Obstructions to Flow (If none present, check "None Present") <input type="checkbox"/> None Present <input type="checkbox"/> Trampled Banks <input type="checkbox"/> Wood Debris <input type="checkbox"/> Inorganic Deflectors <input type="checkbox"/> Armouring <input type="checkbox"/> Inlets <input type="checkbox"/> Others (List Types)	<p>Channel Profile</p> <p>Vert Ht to Bankfull (mm): 960</p> <p>Vert Ht to Tape (mm): 847</p> <p>Vert Ht to Bankfull (mm): 1765</p> <p>Velocity Measurements (Recommended depth ratio from stream bottom is 0.4)</p> <p>Water Depth (mm): 0 Velocity (m/s): 0</p> <p>Observed Depth (mm): 0 Turns/Min: 0</p>				
	<p>Channel Profile (continued)</p> <p>Horiz. Loc. (m): 1.50 Vert. Ht. to Tape (mm): 960 Water Depth (mm): 0 Velocity (m/s): 0</p> <p>Observed Depth (mm): 0 Turns/Min: 0</p>				
Indicators Used to Locate Bankfull Level <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Inflection Point <input type="checkbox"/> Bank Material <input type="checkbox"/> Top of Point Bar <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Vegetation <input type="checkbox"/> Minimum Width/Depth <input type="checkbox"/> Others (List Types)	<p>Channel Profile (continued)</p> <p>Horiz. Loc. (m): 6.74 Vert. Ht. to Tape (mm): 1280 Water Depth (mm): 0 Velocity (m/s): 0</p> <p>Observed Depth (mm): 0 Turns/Min: 0</p>				
	<p>Channel Profile (continued)</p> <p>Horiz. Loc. (m): 1.79 Vert. Ht. to Tape (mm): 1640 Water Depth (mm): 300 Velocity (m/s): 0</p> <p>Observed Depth (mm): 180 Turns/Min: 0</p>				
Entrenchment Entrenchment Height = 2 X Maximum Channel Depth Entrenchment Width = Horizontal distance from the location of the Maximum Channel Depth to the bank at the Entrenchment height Record either the Left and Right widths, or the Total Width	<p>Channel Profile (continued)</p> <p>Horiz. Loc. (m): 2.37 Vert. Ht. to Tape (mm): 1702 Water Depth (mm): 405 Velocity (m/s): 12.2</p> <p>Observed Depth (mm): 210 Turns/Min: 40</p>				
	<p>Channel Profile (continued)</p> <p>Horiz. Loc. (m): 2.96 Vert. Ht. to Tape (mm): 1728 Water Depth (mm): 515 Velocity (m/s): 20.6</p> <p>Observed Depth (mm): 310 Turns/Min: 70</p>				
Left Entrenchment Width (m) Right Entrenchment Width (m) Total Entrenchment Width (m): 24.8	<p>Channel Profile (continued)</p> <p>Horiz. Loc. (m): 3.54 Vert. Ht. to Tape (mm): 1515 Water Depth (mm): 310 Velocity (m/s): 18.8</p> <p>Observed Depth (mm): 205 Turns/Min: 64</p>				
	<p>Channel Profile (continued)</p> <p>Horiz. Loc. (m): 4.12 Vert. Ht. to Tape (mm): 1435 Water Depth (mm): 235 Velocity (m/s): 15.9</p> <p>Observed Depth (mm): 141 Turns/Min: 54</p>				
Point Spacing = 0.53 # Points per transect (N) Point Spacing (S) (m) Active Width (W) (m) # Points per transect (N)	<p>Channel Profile (continued)</p> <p>Horiz. Loc. (m): 4.71 Vert. Ht. to Tape (mm): 1375 Water Depth (mm): 190 Velocity (m/s): 16.8</p> <p>Observed Depth (mm): 120 Turns/Min: 58</p>				
	<p>Channel Profile (continued)</p> <p>Horiz. Loc. (m): 5.29 Vert. Ht. to Tape (mm): 1353 Water Depth (mm): 160 Velocity (m/s): 18.8</p> <p>Observed Depth (mm): 96 Turns/Min: 64</p>				
Point Spacing (S) (m) Active Width (W) (m) # Points per transect (N)	<p>Channel Profile (continued)</p> <p>Horiz. Loc. (m): 5.87 Vert. Ht. to Tape (mm): 1305 Water Depth (mm): 175 Velocity (m/s): 15.4</p> <p>Observed Depth (mm): 100 Turns/Min: 56</p>				
	<p>Channel Profile (continued)</p> <p>Horiz. Loc. (m): 6.45 Vert. Ht. to Tape (mm): 1290 Water Depth (mm): 215 Velocity (m/s): 14.7</p> <p>Observed Depth (mm): 129 Turns/Min: 50</p>				
Point Spacing (S) (m) Active Width (W) (m) # Points per transect (N)	<p>Channel Profile (continued)</p> <p>Horiz. Loc. (m): 7.5 Vert. Ht. to Tape (mm): 900 Water Depth (mm): 0 Velocity (m/s): —</p> <p>Observed Depth (mm): — Turns/Min: —</p>				
	<p>Channel Profile (continued)</p> <p>Horiz. Loc. (m): — Vert. Ht. to Tape (mm): — Water Depth (mm): — Velocity (m/s): —</p> <p>Observed Depth (mm): — Turns/Min: —</p>				
Date Entered: 2000/10/10 Init.: LA Date Verified: 2000/1/11 Init.: JB Date Corrected: 2000/12/09 Init.: SC	<p>Channel Profile (continued)</p> <p>Horiz. Loc. (m): — Vert. Ht. to Tape (mm): — Water Depth (mm): — Velocity (m/s): —</p> <p>Observed Depth (mm): — Turns/Min: —</p>				
	<p>Channel Profile (continued)</p> <p>Horiz. Loc. (m): — Vert. Ht. to Tape (mm): — Water Depth (mm): — Velocity (m/s): —</p> <p>Observed Depth (mm): — Turns/Min: —</p>				

Appendix 2

Examples of Visual Indicators of the Bankfull Level

Inflection Points (Reliability: High)

An inflection point is a change in the bank slope caused by a change in erosive power. For example, an inflection point occurs where slope changes (e.g., vertical to sloping, sloping to vertical, or from vertical/sloping to flat). Many banks have multiple inflection points (Appendix 2, Figure 1) that may reflect stream terraces or old floodplains. Therefore it may be difficult to select the appropriate inflection point (i.e., that caused by bankfull discharge).

As the erosive power of a stream increases with greater discharge, stress on the banks increases until the stream overflows the banks. Once the stream overflows its banks, erosion rates begin to decline as energy is dissipated over the flood plain. This change from an erosive to depositional state often causes an inflection point or change in bank slope to occur at the channel-defining stage. Where the banks are relatively steep, this inflection point can easily be identified, and is usually just below the top of bank (Appendix 2, Figure 2).

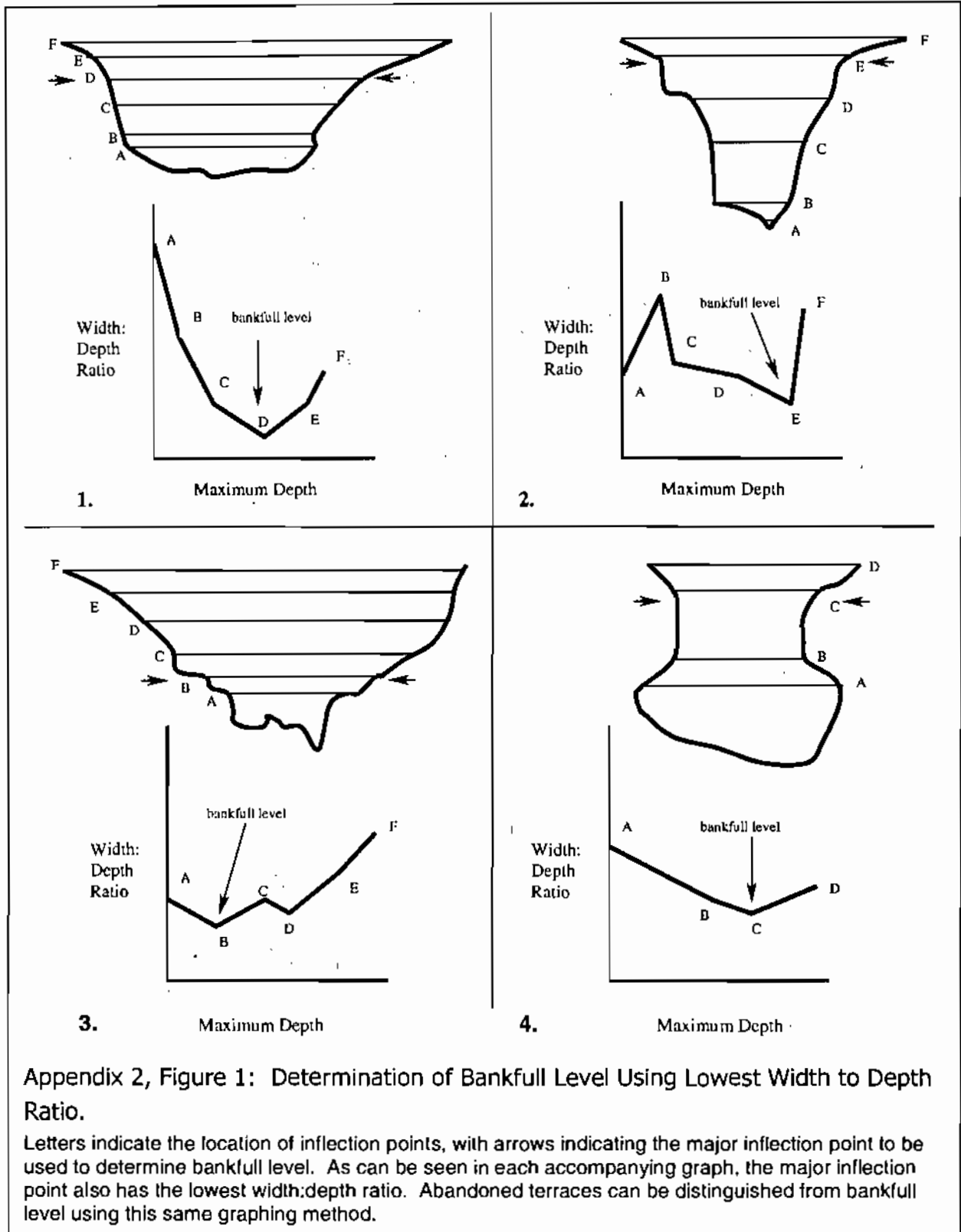
The bankfull level identified using inflection points should be verified using other indicators. For example, perennial vegetation often indicates older terraces or a humus layer is often observed between old and new terraces (Harrelson et al. 1995).

Changes in Bank Material (Reliability: Medium)

The dynamic forces leading to a change in bank slope can also produce a change in bank material from a coarser material (inorganic) on the bottom to a finer (organic or loam) material on top. This change in bank material can be an indicator of bankfull level (Appendix 2, Figures 3, 4) only when the finer material is loose and is a result of stream deposition and not a feature of the bank parent material (i.e., unconsolidated).

Top of Point Bars (Reliability: Medium)

Point bars are formed on the inside bend of scour pools (Appendix 2, Figure 5A). During bankfull discharge the top of the point bar is just submerged, providing an indicator of bankfull level. A cut bank or inflection point adjacent to the point bar may also be observed (Appendix 2, Figure 5B, Figure 6). This is another indicator of the depth of flow at bankfull level. The easiest way to identify the top of the point bar is by the presence of a small inflection point or a change in substrate material (i.e., coarser on the point bar to finer material in the flood plain).



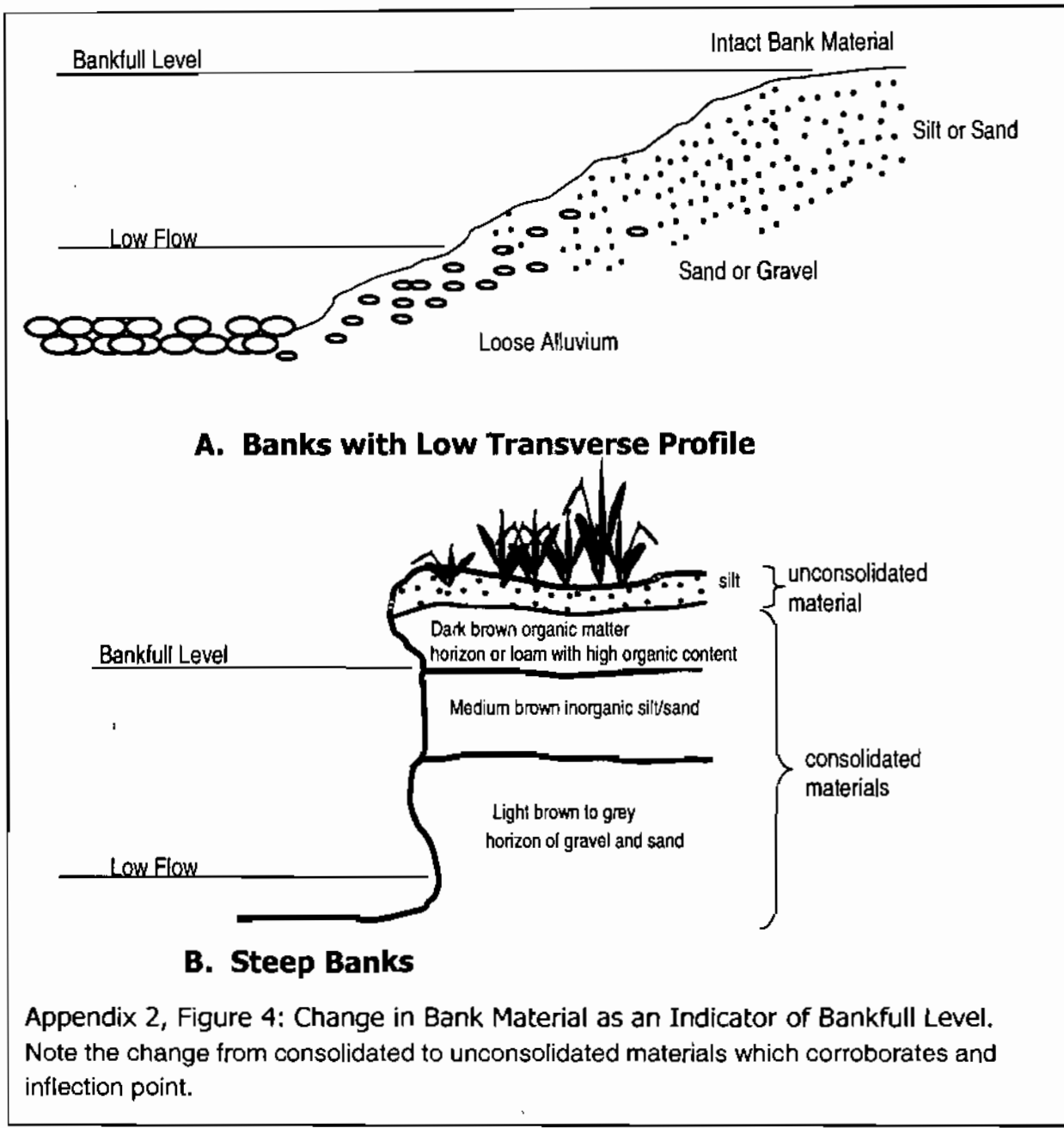


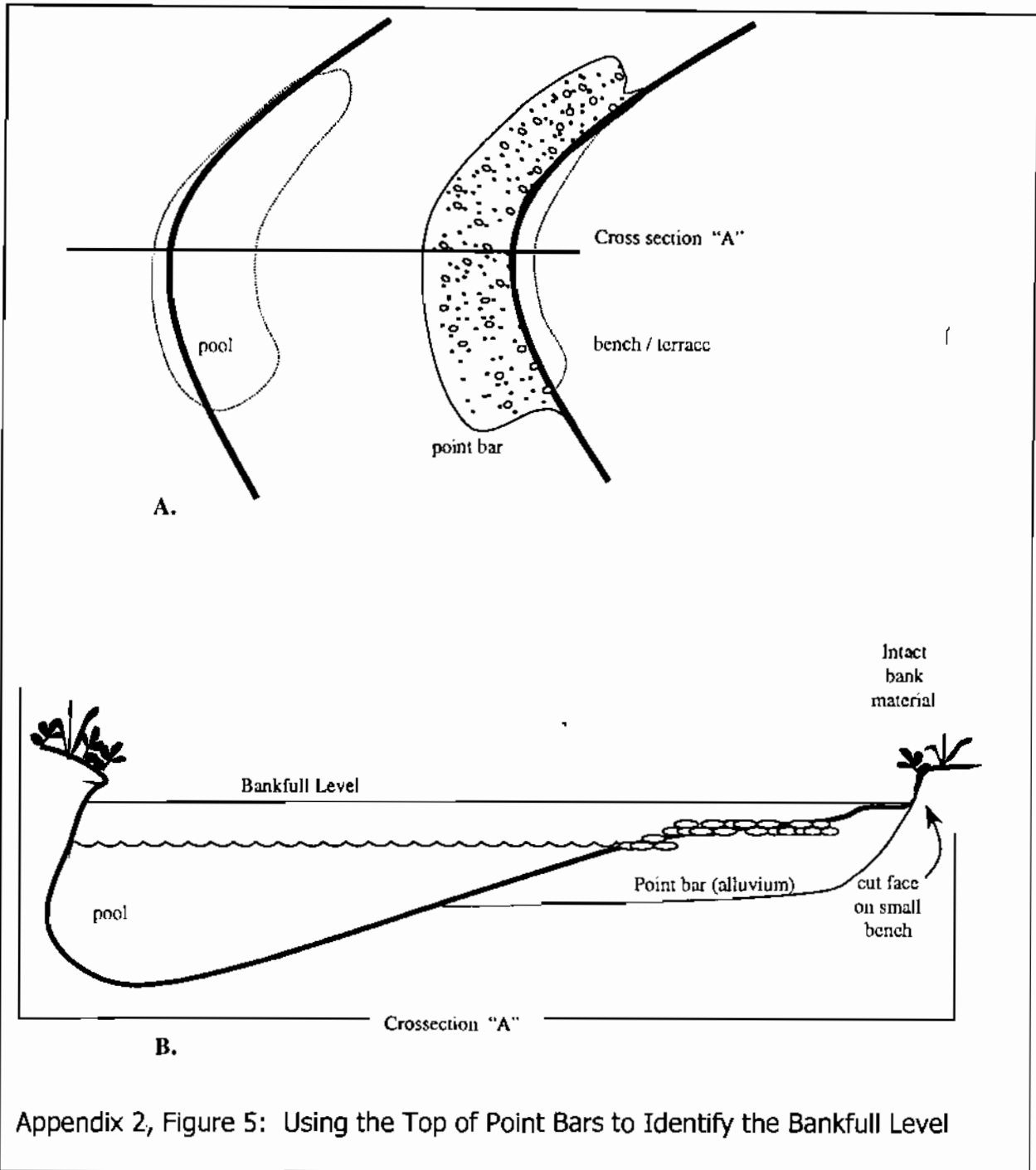
Appendix 2, Figure 2: Inflection Point As An Indicator of Bankfull Level.



Appendix 2, Figure 3: Change in Bank Material as an Indicator of Bankfull Level.

Bankfull Profiles and Channel Entrenchment
edited May 2007





Appendix 2, Figure 5: Using the Top of Point Bars to Identify the Bankfull Level



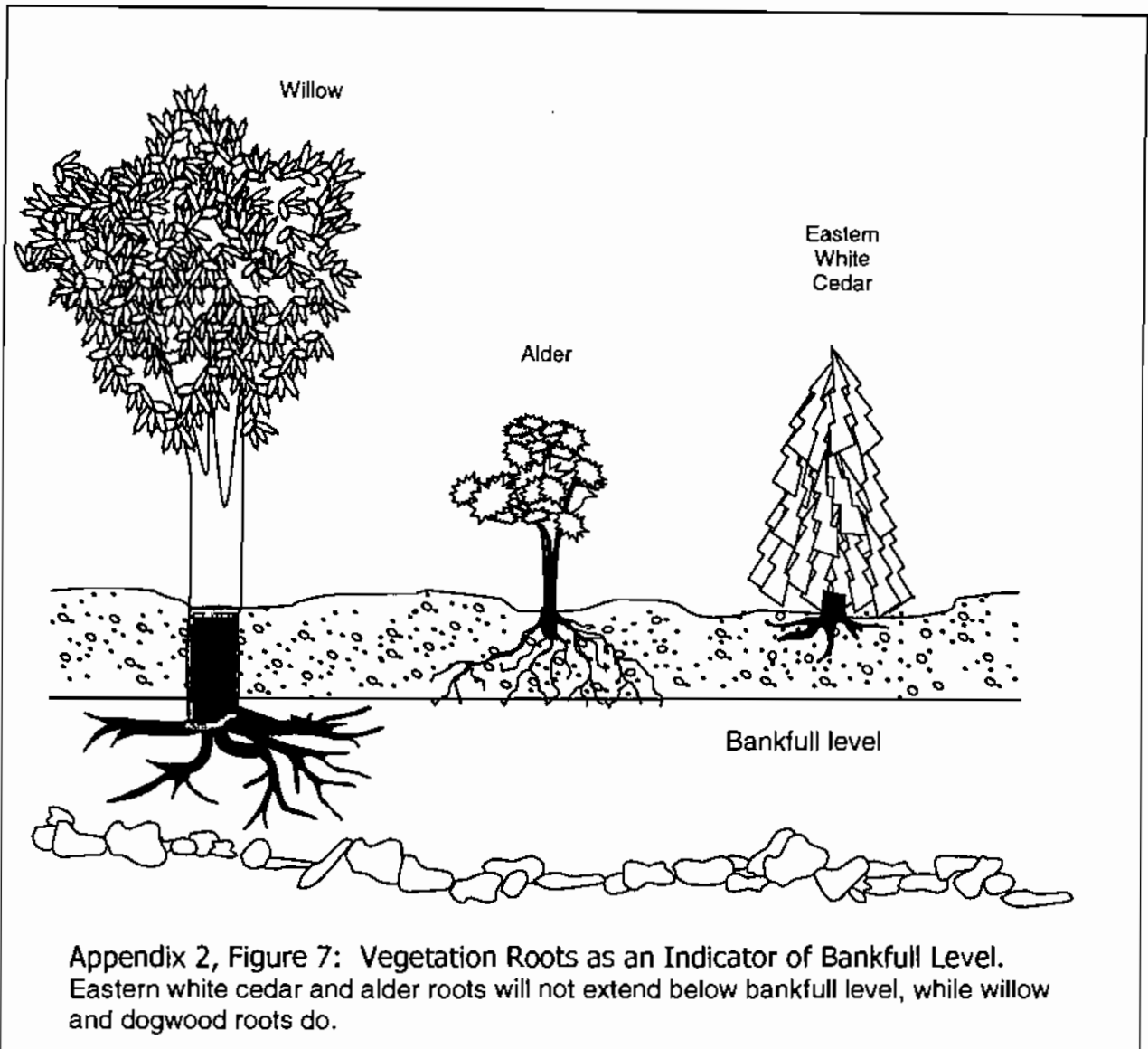
Appendix 2, Figure 6: Top of Point Bar as an Indicator of Bankfull Level.

Changes in Vegetation (Reliability: Medium)

The location where changes in composition of vegetation or root depth occurs can be used to corroborate other indicators of bankfull level. The roots of some water intolerant plants such as alder and to a lesser extent cedars will be above the layer of soil that is saturated with water for extended periods. This saturated soil level is generally 1 to 5 cm above the bankfull level. Willows (reddish roots) can tolerate more water and will extend below the bankfull level (Appendix 2, Figure 7). Ideally, if a bank has both alder and willow, the bankfull level will be located somewhere between the upper extent of the willow roots and the lower extent of the alder roots.

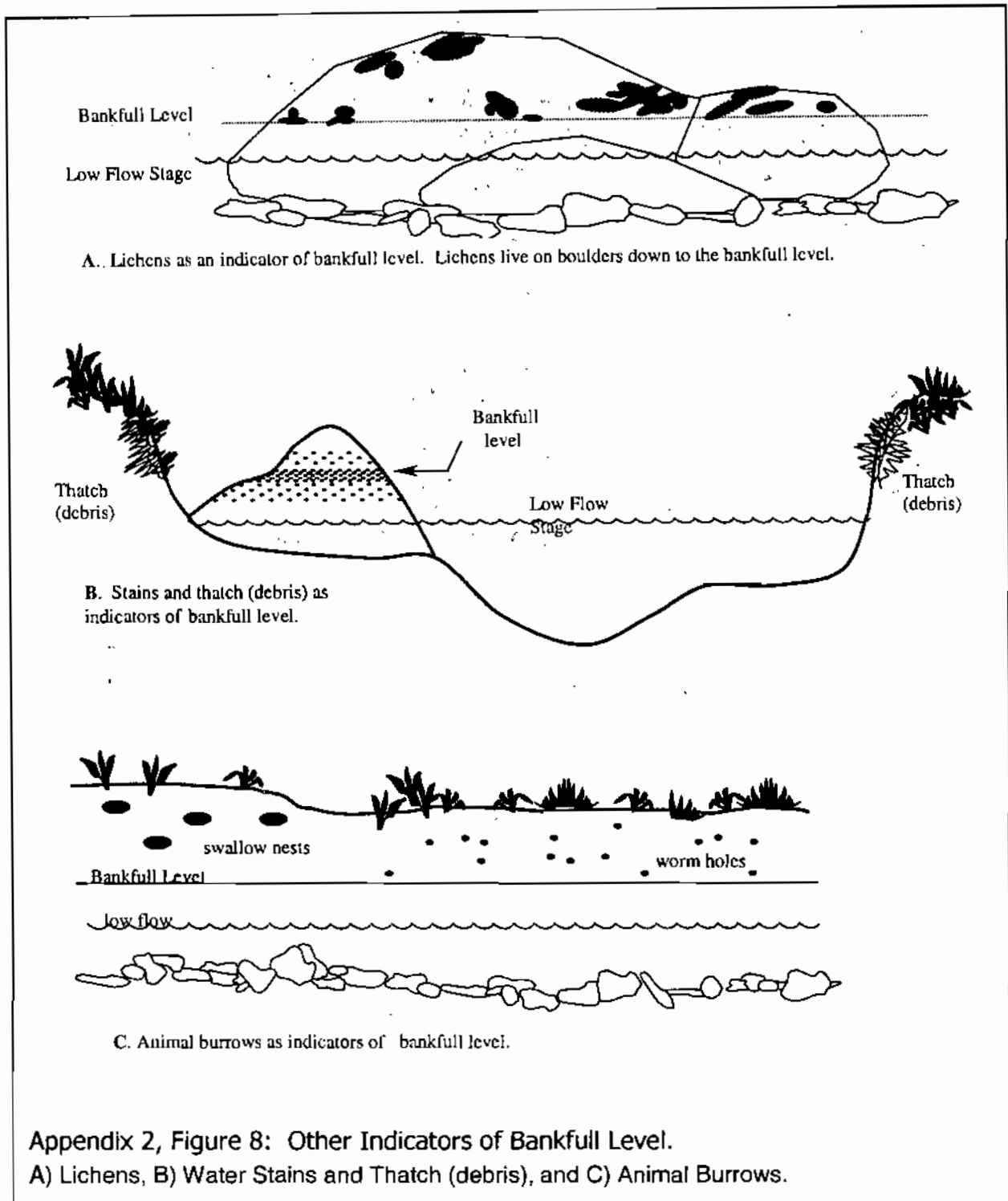
Changes in the Presence of Lichens, Water Stains and Thatch: (Reliability: Low)

Lichens are able to attach and survive on boulders that are infrequently inundated with water, and are typically found above the bankfull level. A fairly distinct line generally indicates the part of the rock that is scoured clean of lichen (Appendix 2, Figure 8A). This line approximates the bankfull level.



Water stains are usually poorly defined and reflect a continuum of flows that have produced the marks. Sometimes three separate bands are distinguishable: an upper faint stain, a middle dark stain and a lower lighter stain. Bankfull level is often approximated as the upper limit of the middle, darker band (Appendix 2, Figure 8B).

Thatch on the bank (debris and dead grass, Appendix 2, Figure 9) provides a low reliability indicator. (Appendix 2, Figure 8B) because intense flood events may redeposit these materials at a level not related to the bankfull level. This indicator should only be used if prior knowledge indicates that the stream has been recently exposed to a bankfull flow event.





Appendix 2, Figure 9: Recent Thatch on the Bank.

Presence and Absence of Worm Holes and Swallow Nests: (Reliability: Low)

Animals also like to keep their burrows or nests above the bankfull level. The presence of either wormholes or swallow nests will almost always be at or above the bankfull level (Appendix 2, Figure 8C).

ONTARIO STREAM ASSESSMENT PROTOCOL

SECTION 4: MODULE 4

Reconnaissance Surveys for Stream Discharge¹

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0	INTRODUCTION.....	1
2.0	PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES.....	1
3.0	FIELD PROCEDURES.....	2
3.1	Direct Measurement of Stream Discharge.....	3
3.2	Determining Discharge using Area and Estimated Velocity.....	3
3.3	Tips for Applying this Module.....	4
4.0	DATA MANAGEMENT.....	4
5.0	LITERATURE CITED.....	4

APPENDICES

Appendix 1. Example Discharge Measurements Form: Non-Point Transect Methods

¹ Authors: L.W. Stanfield and M. Hinton

1.0 INTRODUCTION

This module contains instructions for estimating discharge on wadeable streams using qualitative methods. This survey is mainly used for reconnaissance purposes as it provides a measure of relative discharge (relative to other sites), and provides information on the suitability of sites for more rigorous sampling. The use of these preliminary observations will ensure that field studies are planned and conducted effectively and efficiently.

The amount of water within any stream channel is an important attribute to aquatic biota. Changes in discharge reflect both the natural hydrologic cycle and anthropogenic alterations to this cycle. It is essential to have information about flow conditions in order to understand how changes in flow are related to development and weather patterns.

The reconnaissance survey fulfils several goals by identifying:

- suitable locations and methods for stream gauging
- sites with high or low discharge
- if a stream is flowing at a point in time (i.e., intermittent versus permanent) and
- improving the field technicians' familiarity with the hydrological conditions and controls within the watershed.

The time and effort invested in a reconnaissance survey results in better baseflow surveys, improved knowledge of the watershed and additional information to supplement the interpretation of baseflow surveys.

Data collected using this module are less accurate and are biased compared to quantitative surveys (i.e., methods described in S4.M5, Measuring Stream Discharge Quantitatively). However, if the bias is consistent, users may be able to develop calibration ratios to adjust the data (see S4.M1, Rapid Assessment Methodology for Channel Structure).

2.0 PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES

A typical crew consists of two people (a surveyor and a recorder). Survey time varies with distances between sites, and a crew can visit approximately 30 to 50 sites per day. This assumes that permission to access property has been obtained.

Pre-field activities should include:

- Landowner contact
- Documentation of site access and appropriate stream identifiers (see Section 1)
- Equipment check

For this module, road crossings over streams are ideally suited for baseflow surveys because they can be readily accessed and because they are public lands. Study design and selection of sampling sites are primarily determined by accessibility and predicted locations of major changes in discharge within the watershed (i.e., suspected groundwater discharge zones, sites near the confluence of tributaries, and sites upstream and downstream of water sources or sinks (e.g., outfalls, dams, pumping sites)). Additional discharge sampling sites must be separated by at least 40 m and two crossovers (see Section 1, Site Identification and Documentation).

The following equipment is required:

1. Topographic or road maps with field site locations marked
2. Field sheets (Site Identification Form, Site Features Form, Discharge Measurements Form: Non-Point Transect Methods)
3. Pencils and pens
4. Metre stick and measuring tape
5. Floats (plastic golf balls with holes, cork fishing floats etc.) or food dye
6. Watch and stopwatch

Optional equipment includes field notebooks, calculator and other maps (geology, soils etc.)

Crews should adhere to safety precautions and requirements set forth by their employers /managers i.e., first aid kit, first aid training, travel plan, buddy system, mobile phone etc.

3.0 FIELD PROCEDURES

Reconnaissance surveys should be conducted during low flow conditions. These measurements are best made along any stream section that is of uniform depth (typically from 100 to 400 mm deep) with a level pavement layer that consists of small gravel (5-40 mm) where the flow is relatively uniform². Ideally there should be no obstructions to flow within 5 m of either side of where visual estimates are being made. The module should be done in conjunction with S1.M1, Defining Site Boundaries and Key Identifiers and S1.M2, Screening Level Site Documentation.

² These areas are typically found in the transitional area between a riffle and a pool often referred to as a flat or glide.

At each site, fill out the site descriptors that identify the unique sample and its location (i.e., 'Stream Name', 'Stream Code', 'Site Code', 'Sample #' and 'Date'). Record whether the flow conditions at the site approximate baseflow conditions³, by marking either 'Yes' or 'No' with an 'X' in the box titled 'DISCHARGE APPROXIMATES BASEFLOW'. Record comments about the site suitability for obtaining a measure of discharge in the 'Comments' box. Document the names of the crewmembers and the survey date. Note that measurements are required at only one transect within the site to estimate discharge.

3.1 Direct Measurement of Stream Discharge

If drop structures (e.g., perched culvert, weir, flume) are present, discharge should be measured using the Volume/Time method as outlined in S4.M5, Measuring Stream Discharge Quantitatively. This method provides greater accuracy with little increase in time spent at the site.

3.2 Determining Discharge using Area and Estimated Velocity

Once the location for the observations is defined, determine the area of the wetted cross-section of the channel. Water depths at three equally-spaced locations across the channel are measured to calculate the average depth. Stream width is the wetted width of the stream and is measured to the nearest tenth of a metre. Water velocity is determined by timing the movement of a surface float or food dye over a fixed distance (i.e., 1-2 m). It should be recognized that this method generally overestimates the velocity by about 25% in rough cobble bed streams and 10% in smoother bed streams.

Actual measurements are required unless stream access or safety reasons prohibit the collection of these data⁴. If measurements cannot be obtained, visually estimate the values following the guidelines outlined above.

Record the stream width, average depth and average velocity and the method used (i.e., 'measured' versus visually 'estimated').

³ Baseflow can be defined as the portion of stream discharge derived from such natural storage sources as groundwater, large lakes, and swamps but does not include direct runoff or flow from stream regulation, water diversion or other human activities (William et al. 1997). The baseflow conditions exists when there is no evidence in the stage discharge hydrograph of any recent storm events.

⁴ A combination of measured and estimated values may be required at some locations.

3.3 Tips for Applying this Module

Crews traveling to many sites in a day may find it more efficient to record multiple observations on a spreadsheet style field sheet and transfer the data to the individual field sheets in the office. Ensure that each site can be uniquely identified and access routes can be documented at a later date. Double check data between the forms for accuracy.

Water depth measurements can be either recorded as observed (i.e., 18 mm) or can be rounded to the nearest 5 mm (i.e., 20 mm), whichever is easier for the crews. The accuracy of these measures is considered to be 5 mm for all interpretations.

4.0 DATA MANAGEMENT

Upon returning from the field;

1. Create a backup hard copy (i.e., photocopy) of field forms, and store in a place separate from the original.
2. Enter the data into a digital storage system, such as HabProgs, and save backup copies that are stored in a separate location from the master copy.

By storing the data digitally in HabProgs, the data can be shared with a large number of users province-wide. Data sharing will facilitate the refinement and development of habitat suitability models, and this will improve habitat management practices and policies.

5.0 LITERATURE CITED

William, J.E., C.A. Wood and M.P. Dombeck (Eds). 1997. Watershed Restoration: Principles and Practices. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland. pp 561.

Appendix 1

**Example Discharge Measurements Form:
Non-Point Transect Methods**

**Discharge Measurements Form: Non-Point Transect Methods
(discharge obtained without use of velocity meter)**

Stream Name: WILMOT CREEK	Site Code: 3CDW																											
Stream Code: WMI	Sample #: 1																											
Date (YYYY/MM/DD) 2000/08/10																												
* DISCHARGE APPROXIMATES BASEFLOW <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> YES <input type="checkbox"/> NO																												
* Volume/Time Method																												
Volume of container (L): <input style="width:100px;" type="text"/>																												
<table style="width:100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">replicate 1</td> <td style="text-align: center;">replicate 2</td> <td style="text-align: center;">replicate 3</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">time to fill container <input style="width:80px;" type="text"/></td> <td style="text-align: center;"><input style="width:80px;" type="text"/></td> <td style="text-align: center;"><input style="width:80px;" type="text"/></td> </tr> </table>		replicate 1	replicate 2	replicate 3	time to fill container <input style="width:80px;" type="text"/>	<input style="width:80px;" type="text"/>	<input style="width:80px;" type="text"/>																					
replicate 1	replicate 2	replicate 3																										
time to fill container <input style="width:80px;" type="text"/>	<input style="width:80px;" type="text"/>	<input style="width:80px;" type="text"/>																										
Percent lost: <input type="checkbox"/> 0-10 <input type="checkbox"/> 11-30 <input type="checkbox"/> >30																												
* Area X Estimated Velocity Method																												
<table style="width:100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">stream width (m): <input style="width:60px;" type="text"/> 3.5</td> <td style="text-align: center;">X</td> <td style="text-align: center;">average depth (m): <input style="width:60px;" type="text"/> 0.30</td> <td style="text-align: center;">=</td> <td style="text-align: center;">area (m²): <input style="width:60px;" type="text"/></td> <td style="text-align: center;">X</td> <td style="text-align: center;">average velocity (m/s): <input style="width:60px;" type="text"/> 0.25</td> <td style="text-align: center;">=</td> <td style="text-align: center;">discharge (m³/s): <input style="width:60px;" type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> estimated</td> <td></td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> estimated</td> <td></td> <td>(optional calculation)</td> <td></td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> estimated</td> <td></td> <td>(optional calculation)</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> measured</td> <td></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> measured</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> measured</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </table> <p>For stream width, depth, and velocity variables check one box to indicate whether the variable was 'estimated' or 'measured'.</p>		stream width (m): <input style="width:60px;" type="text"/> 3.5	X	average depth (m): <input style="width:60px;" type="text"/> 0.30	=	area (m ²): <input style="width:60px;" type="text"/>	X	average velocity (m/s): <input style="width:60px;" type="text"/> 0.25	=	discharge (m ³ /s): <input style="width:60px;" type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> estimated		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> estimated		(optional calculation)		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> estimated		(optional calculation)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> measured		<input type="checkbox"/> measured				<input type="checkbox"/> measured		
stream width (m): <input style="width:60px;" type="text"/> 3.5	X	average depth (m): <input style="width:60px;" type="text"/> 0.30	=	area (m ²): <input style="width:60px;" type="text"/>	X	average velocity (m/s): <input style="width:60px;" type="text"/> 0.25	=	discharge (m ³ /s): <input style="width:60px;" type="text"/>																				
<input type="checkbox"/> estimated		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> estimated		(optional calculation)		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> estimated		(optional calculation)																				
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> measured		<input type="checkbox"/> measured				<input type="checkbox"/> measured																						
Comments	Crew	Enter dates and initials when data is entered in computer																										
STREAM HAS RELATIVELY UNIFORM	J. BEAL	Date Init.																										
DEPTH AND FLOW AT THIS LOCATION	A. CONE	Entered 2000 / 10 / 10 LA																										
	S. BYE	Verified 2000 / 11 / 11 JB																										
		Corrected 2000 / 12 / 01 AC																										

* Only one discharge method is required (Area x Est. OR Vol/Time).

ONTARIO STREAM ASSESSMENT PROTOCOL

SECTION 4: MODULE 5

Measuring Stream Discharge Quantitatively¹

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0	INTRODUCTION.....	1
2.0	PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES.....	2
3.0	FIELD PROCEDURES.....	3
3.1	Measuring Discharge using the Volume/Time Method.....	3
3.2	Measuring Discharge Using the Area Times Velocity Method.....	4
3.2.1	Setting up the Transect:.....	5
3.2.2	Measuring Water Depth.....	7
3.2.3	Measuring Water Velocity.....	8
3.3	Tips for Applying this Module.....	9
4.0	DATA MANAGEMENT.....	10
5.0	LITERATURE CITED.....	10

APPENDICES

- Appendix 1. Example Discharge Measurements Form: Non-Point Transect Methods
- Appendix 2. Example Diagnostic Indicators of Channel Stability Field Form

¹ Authors: L. W. Stanfield, M. Hinton and S. Jarvie

1.0 INTRODUCTION

This module contains instructions for measuring discharge in wadeable streams using the Area Times Velocity Method and the Volume/Time Method. This module can be completed individually, or in conjunction with any of the modules that use a transect to collect data.

The amount of water within any stream channel is an important attribute to aquatic biota. Changes in discharge reflect both the natural hydrologic cycle and anthropogenic alterations to this cycle. It is essential to have information about flow conditions in order to understand how changes in flow are related to development and weather patterns.

The data collected are useful for long-term monitoring and impact assessment studies. These procedures can be used for characterizing baseflow conditions or for determining a point-in-time response to a storm event. When applied throughout a storm event, a stage response curve can be developed and used to calibrate the Rapid Assessment Methodology for Hydrologic Response to Storm Events (S4.M6).

If the study objective is to assess causes of stream instability, it is recommended that the bankfull profile (S4.M3, Bankfull Profiles and Channel Entrenchment) and at minimum the substrate component (3.6.6 Substrate Particle Size Distribution) of S4.M2, Point Transect Sampling for Channel Structure, Substrate and Bank Conditions also be evaluated.

The methods described in this module have been modified from Gore (1996) to provide a balance between precision and efficiency. These methods are detailed in manuals produced by Water Survey of Canada (Terzi 1981) and the United States Geological Survey (Rantz 1982). The manuals recommend that more panels be sampled per transect than this module and contain information about site selection, study design and data interpretation. If sites are intended as long-term gauging stations, refer to these manuals as the standard.

The methods described in this module are suitable for streams which have:

- a maximum depth of less than 30 cm along the transect (greater depths require an additional velocity measurements at each observation point)
- sufficient depth to enable the current meter to work effectively or
- discharge low enough that it can be captured in a measuring device (e.g., bucket)

2.0 PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES

This module requires a crew of two people (a surveyor and a recorder). Survey time varies with the precision required (number of panels sampled) but typically takes anywhere from 15 to 90 minutes to complete.

Pre-field activities should include:

- Landowner contact
- Documentation of site access and appropriate stream identifiers (see Section 1)
- Equipment check

The following equipment list is required:

1. Discharge Measurements Form: Non-Point Transect Methods and Diagnostic Indicators of Channel Stability field form (on waterproof paper if possible)
2. Pencils
3. Wooden metre sticks
4. Tape measures (30 m or longer)
5. Flagging tape
6. Spikes or tent pegs (four, 25 cm long) or bungee cords
7. Two spring-loaded clamps with rubber edges (to hold tape)
8. Calculator (waterproof, or in resealable bag)
9. Calibrated current meter²
10. Buckets, assortment of sizes (10 – 25 L)
11. Stopwatch
12. Funneling or ramping device to direct water into bucket

Optional equipment includes a tool kit (hammer, duct tape, wrench, screw drivers).

Crews should adhere to safety precautions and requirements set forth by their employers /managers i.e., first aid kit, first aid training, travel plan, buddy system, mobile phone etc.

² Although several designs and models of current meter exist, this method specifically describes the use of Price AA and mini (Pygmy) vertical axis flow meter. Other current meters can be used provided they are suitably calibrated and used according to their instructions.

3.0 FIELD PROCEDURES

The module should be completed in conjunction with S1.M1, Defining Site Boundaries and Key Identifiers and S1.M2, Screening Level Site Documentation. At each site, fill out the site descriptors (i.e., 'Stream Name', 'Stream Code', 'Site Code', 'Sample #' and 'Date') and record the names of the 'Crew'. Record whether the flow conditions at the site approximate baseflow conditions³ ('DISCHARGE APPROXIMATES BASEFLOW') on the Discharge Measurements Form: Non-Point Transect Methods (Appendix 1) or the Diagnostic Indicators of Channel Stability field form (Appendix 2), by marking either 'Yes' or 'No' with an 'X'. Record comments about the site suitability for obtaining a measure of discharge in the 'Comments' box.

The Volume/Time Method (Section 3.1) is used at sites with low discharges that have either a drop structure or sufficient head to enable a drop structure to be temporarily installed. The Area Times Velocity Method (Section 3.2) is used in all other circumstances.

3.1 Measuring Discharge using the Volume/Time Method

For those locations where the stream is sufficiently small and flowing through a drop structure (e.g., perched culvert or weir) or has sufficient head to enable a drop structure to be temporarily installed, a bucket and a stopwatch can be used to measure discharge. In some situations a funnel can be used to direct the water into a measuring device.

Measure the time it takes to collect a known volume of water. Repeat this procedure until three similar times (<10% difference from the average) are obtained (the same volume of water is collected for each of the three measurements). Record the volume and the times on the Discharge Measurements Form: Non-Point Transect Methods (Appendix 1).

There is often leakage and/or spillage associated with this technique that can be minimized by using various tools (i.e., plastic bags⁴, funnels, larger measuring device). The amount of water that is missed should be visually estimated and recorded in the appropriate category on the data form.

³ Baseflow can be defined as the portion of stream discharge derived from such natural storage sources as groundwater, large lakes, and swamps but does not include direct runoff or flow from stream regulation, water diversion or other human activities (William et al. 1997). The baseflow conditions exists when there is no evidence in the stage discharge hydrograph of any recent storm events.

⁴ In small shallow channels a plastic bag may be held on the bottom of the cross-section and opened for a short period to capture the flow.

3.2 Measuring Discharge Using the Area Times Velocity Method

For this method fill out the transect identification information i.e., 'Transect # ___ of ___' on the Diagnostic Indicators of Channel Stability field form. This method can be conducted at one of the transects used in S4.M3, Bankfull Profiles and Channel Entrenchment, preferably where the flow is most uniform,.

It is important to have a calibrated current meter⁵ and the following sampling conditions at each transect (adapted from Rantz 1982):

- water depth is greater than 0.1 m at all observation points along the transect;
- flow is uniform, constant over time and greater than 0.1 m/s at all observation points;
- flows are free of eddies, slack water and excessive turbulence, approximating laminar in the sample area; and
- the streambed is relatively uniform and free of obstacles (i.e., boulders, heavy aquatic growth or mid channel islands within 5 m of the transect).

Where these criteria are not met, first consider whether minor modifications (e.g., relocating an upstream rock or moving to an area with less aquatic growth) may correct the problem. Second, if velocity is heterogeneous, consider whether the discharge can be measured by increasing the number of panels. Finally, the transect can still be established if the area that does not meet the above criteria is relatively small (i.e., less than 10% of the cross-sectional area). For example, large velocity variations (and shallow depths) near the stream edges are common, yet quantifying flows in these areas with accuracy may be of minor importance if the proportion of flow in these sections is only a small fraction of the total discharge. Where these point observations cannot be measured using a velocity meter, the hydraulic head can often be used as a coarser measure of the velocity (see below).

The spacing of observation points and the intensity of sampling at each point will influence the accuracy of the discharge estimate. Guidance on spacing is provided in Table 1. Use as many panels as necessary to capture the variance in velocities in the channel. Project managers must determine the desired accuracy of the survey, as this influences the number and duration of velocity measurements. For further information consult the Hydrometric Field Manual – Measurement of Streamflow (Terzi 1981).

⁵ Current meters should be regularly checked to ensure that impellers are intact and spin freely and evenly. Refer to specifications stipulated by the manufacturers.

3.2.1 Setting up the Transect:

Transects should be established perpendicular to the general direction of flow. To set up the transect, stake both ends of a tape measure into the banks so that it is reasonably level and taut.

Measure and record the active channel width (see definition below) to the nearest 0.1 m on the Diagnostic Indicators of Channel Stability field form. Divide the active channel width by the number of observation points (Table 1) to determine panel width. Sampling will be conducted at the mid-point of each panel (see example below and Figure 1). Mark the location of each observation point on the tape measure and record the 'Horizon. Loc (m)' to the nearest 0.05 m.

Table 1: Relationship Between the Stream Width and the Number of Panels to Sample for Low Variance and High Variance Sites.

Channel Width (m)	Number of Panels to Sample	
	Transects with Low variance in velocity	Transects with High variance in velocity
> 3.0	minimum 8*	minimum 10*
1.5 – 3.0	5	8
1.0 – 1.5	3	6
< 1.0	2	4

* Add one panel for every 2 m increase in stream width i.e., 9 m wide = 11 (low variance) or 13 (high variance) panels.

Active Channel

The active channel is the area between the two outermost banks, which includes all active flow (i.e., moving water) at the time of the survey. The transect boundaries are at the bank-water interface (i.e., where the water meets the land; when undercuts are present, see Figures 4 and 5).

Rules for defining the active channel:

1. Side channels or braids are included if both the inlet and outlet occur within the sample site.
2. Only the mouth of a tributary is included, i.e., the transect does not extend over a bank.
3. Backwater pools (wet areas adjacent to the active channel that are fed by intergravel flow) are included if they are located within the high flow channel, are located below the top of bank, and there is visible flow from the pool into the stream.
4. Mid-channel bars and islands are included in the cross section (Figure 3).

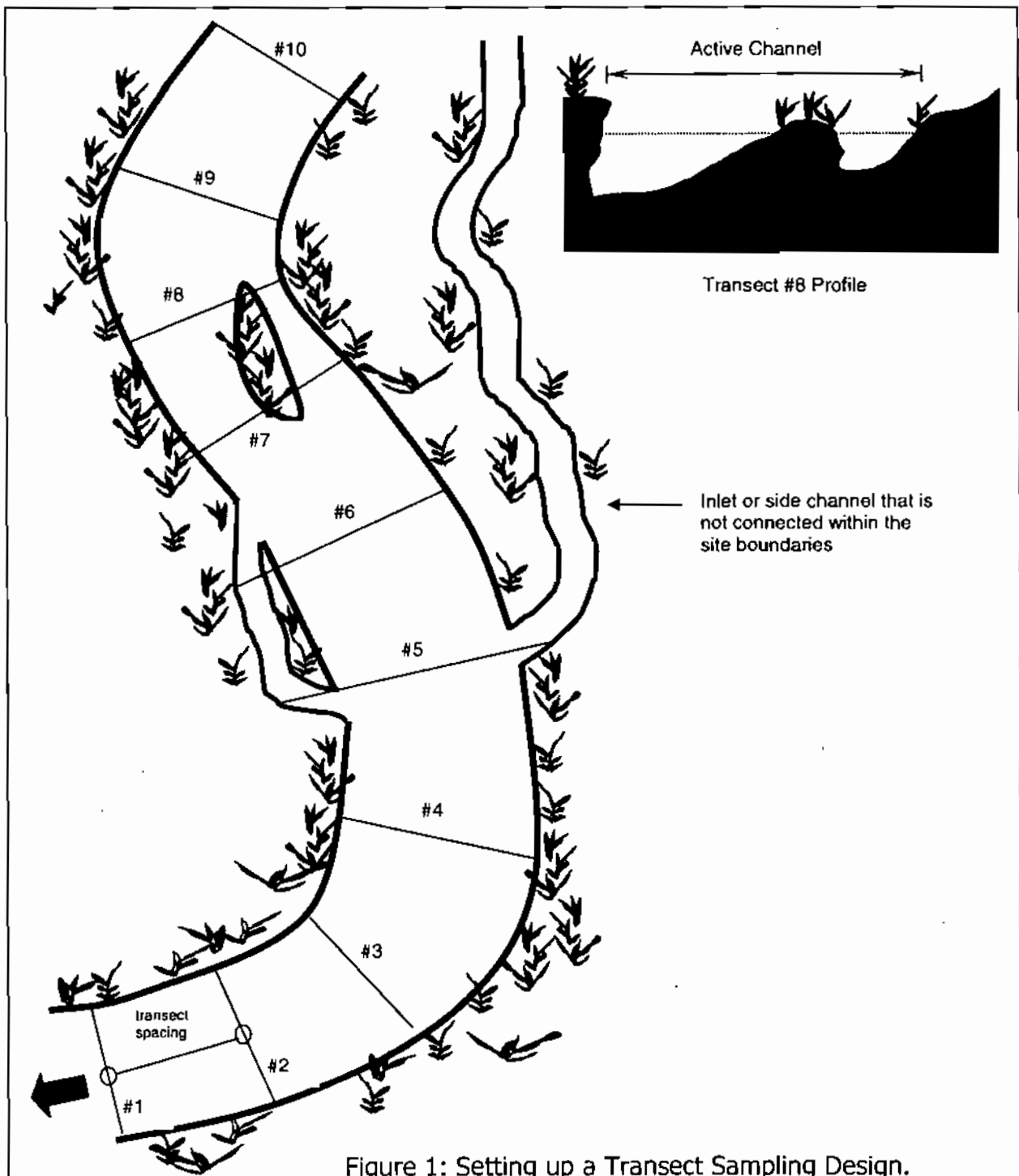


Figure 1: Setting up a Transect Sampling Design.

The thalweg can often be used to assist in determining the appropriate orientation of the transect (angle relative to channel). Transect lines 5 and 6 cross a side channel that is connected within the site and 8 crosses an island. These are considered a part of the active channel. Transect line 5 crosses a side channel that is not connected within the boundaries of the site; and this side channel is therefore not considered to be part of the 'active channel'.

Measuring Stream Discharge Quantitatively

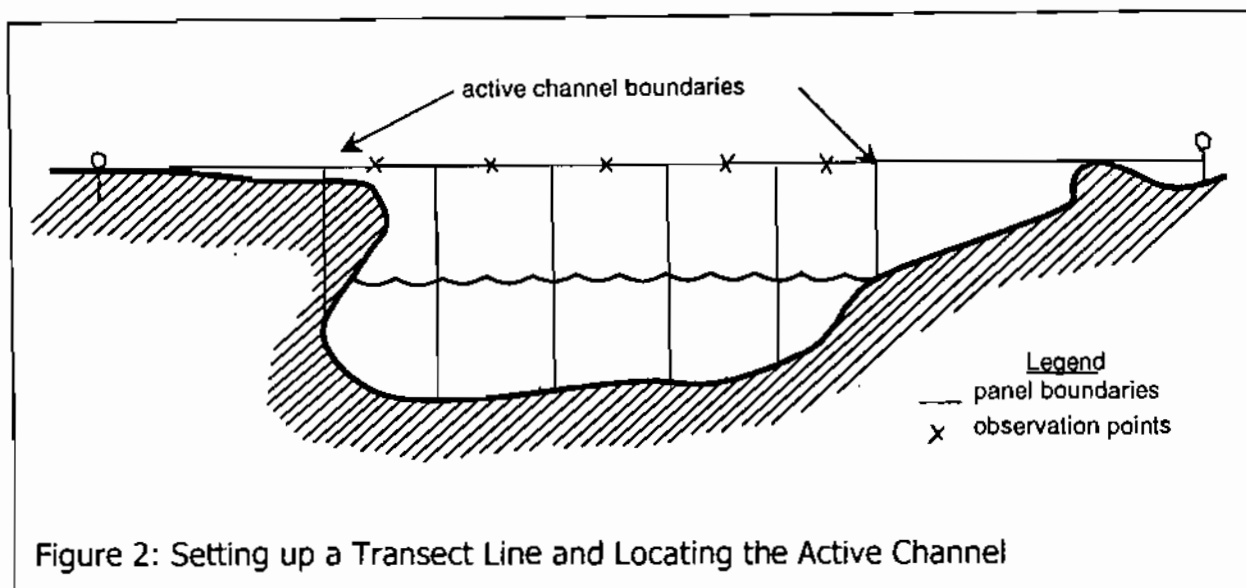


Figure 2: Setting up a Transect Line and Locating the Active Channel

Observation Point Calculation Example

For a stream that has an active channel width of 2.9 m wide, and low variance in velocity, five panels are sampled. The point spacing would be $2.9/5 = 0.58$. This number actually represents the boundary of a set of panels that transect the stream, with each observation point located in the centre of each panel. To determine the actual location of the observation points, divide the first panel in half, and for each additional location add 0.58. The first observation point would be at 0.29 m (i.e., $0.58/2 = 0.29$). The second point would be at $0.29 + 0.58 = 0.87$ m. The complete list of observation points is 0.29, 0.87, 1.45, 2.03 and 2.61 m.

Note: Observation point locations are dependent on whether the tape extends beyond the bank water interface. For example if the left bank water interface occurs at 1.5 m on the tape then the first observation point for the above example would be at the 1.79 m mark on the tape.

The following data are collected at each observation point. Use the most efficient sampling strategy to obtain the data.

3.2.2 Measuring Water Depth

At the observation point, stand the metre stick on the stream bottom and measure the water depth in mm to the nearest 5 mm. Record this depth on the Diagnostic Indicators of Channel Stability field form (Appendix 2).

3.2.3 Measuring Water Velocity

Set the height of the velocity sensor to 0.4 times the depth of the water from the stream's pavement layer and record this 'Observation Depth (mm)' to the nearest 5 mm (i.e., if water depth is 200 mm, the sensor would be placed at $0.4 \times 200 = 80$ mm from the stream bottom). The current meter rod should be held vertical and the operator should stand far enough downstream so that the velocity readings are not affected. Once the flows have stabilized, measure the velocity for 60 seconds and record the number of rotations ('Turns/Min') over that period⁶. Depending on the unit used, record either the average velocity ('Velocity (m/s)') or the number of rotations. **Ensure that the number of rotations is converted to a velocity measure using the calibration table for that particular meter and record this on the field form as soon as possible.**

If water depth is insufficient to obtain a quantitative measure of velocity at an observation point, measure the hydraulic head and record this in the 'Turns/min' column. Mark this with an asterisk and record in the 'Comments' that this refers to a hydraulic head measurement. To measure hydraulic head, orient the wooden ruler at the observation point so that it is vertical and the **wide side with the markings is facing away from the current** (see Figure 3). Avoid standing in front or too close behind the ruler as this can obstruct the flow. The ruler will create a barrier to flow causing the water to climb up the front of the ruler. The height the water climbs is referred to as the hydraulic head. If there is no difference in water level between the front and back of the ruler then hydraulic head is 0, indicating very low velocity. If a difference in height is observed, then measure the height difference between the front and back of the ruler (Figure 3) in mm as observed or rounded to the nearest 5 mm. It may be easier to use a pencil or finger to mark the locations on the ruler and then measure the differences out of the water. At higher velocities, there will be greater variability in the height differential (i.e., the hydraulic head will pulse up and down). Measure the maximum height difference observed over a 3-5 second period.

Use the following formula to estimate velocity (v) in m/s from hydraulic head (HH , measured in mm):

$$v = \sqrt{0.02(HH)} \quad (\text{modified from Rantz 1982})$$

Therefore, if the hydraulic head was measured as 15 mm, the estimated velocity is approximately $\sqrt{0.30}$ or 0.55 m/s.

⁶ In some situations it may be feasible to sample for less than 60 s, where flows are stable. In these situations make sure to sample for at least 30 s and then standardize (i.e., multiply by 2) the rotations to 1 minute.

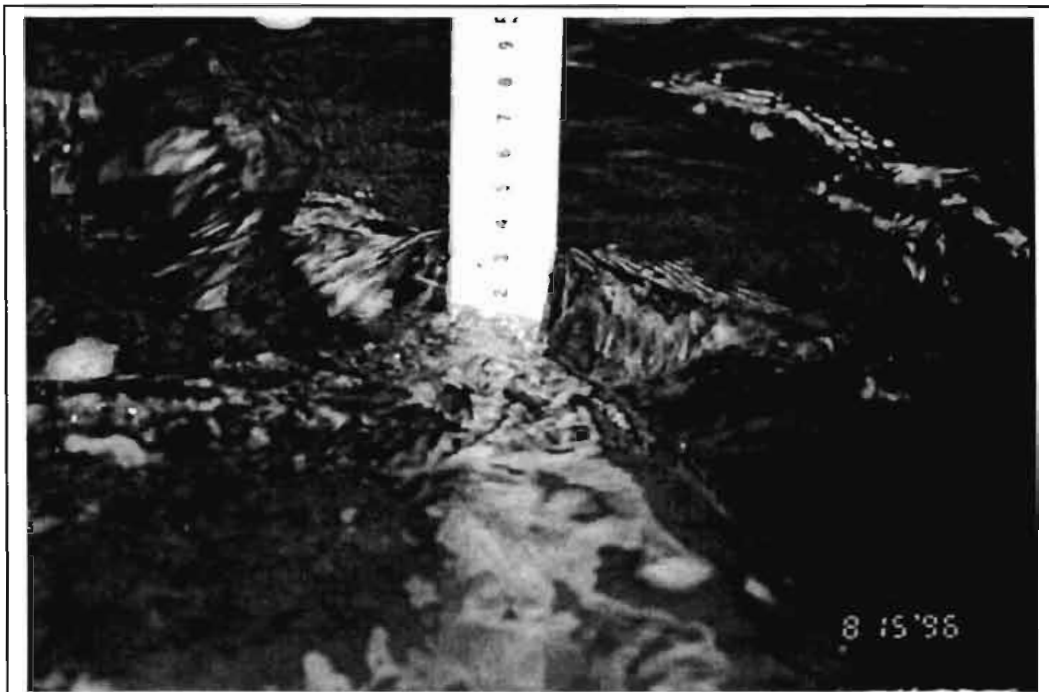


Figure 3: A Point Measurement of Hydraulic Head

The upstream reading is measured as 35 mm, the downstream as 16 mm, therefore the hydraulic head is 19 mm, which can be recorded as 19 or 20 mm (rounded to nearest 5 mm).

3.3 Tips for Applying this Module

All depth measurements (water, hydraulic head) can be either recorded as observed (i.e., 18 mm) or can be rounded to the nearest 5 mm (i.e., 20 mm), whichever is easier for the crews. The accuracy of these measures is considered to be 5 mm for all interpretations.

Tie several pieces of flagging tape loosely on the tape measure that can be slid to each observation point.

Do not forget to use the protective brake or travelling pin on the current meter when in transit and to remove these prior to use in the stream. Keep the current meter well lubricated and turning freely.

Measuring Stream Discharge Quantitatively

Make sure the tape is reasonably level and taut. Clamps or a bungee cord can be used at the handle ends of the tape measure to tighten the tape. Once the tape has been stretched, lock the handle in place and anchor the bungee cord to the nearest solid object.

Always double-check the spacing of the observation points before starting to record the data.

Mark all field equipment with bright paint or flagging tape to increase visibility and prevent loss.

A top setting wading rod will save a great deal of time in setting up the rod to take the velocity measurements.

Make sure that all fields have data recorded before taking down the tape measure.

4.0 DATA MANAGEMENT

Upon returning from the field;

1. Create a backup hard copy (i.e., photocopy) of field forms, and store in a place separate from the original.
2. Enter the data into a digital storage system, such as HabProgs, and save backup copies that are stored in a separate location from the master copy.

By storing the data digitally in HabProgs, the data can be shared with a large number of users province-wide. Data sharing will facilitate the refinement and development of habitat suitability models, and this will improve habitat management practices and policies.

5.0 LITERATURE CITED

- Gore, J. A. 1996. Discharge Measurements and Streamflow Analysis. *in* Hauer F. R. and G. A. Lambert (ed.) *Methods in Stream Ecology*. Academic Press. p 53- 74
- Rantz, S.E. 1982. *Measurement and Computation of Streamflow: Volume 1. Measurement of Stage and Discharge*. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 2175. U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. 284 pp.
- Terzi, R.A. 1981. *Hydrometric Field Manual - Measurement of Streamflow*. Inland Water Directorate, Water Resources Branch, Environment Canada, Ottawa, Ontario, 37 pp.
- William, J.E., C.A. Wood and M.P. Dombeck (Eds). 1997. *Watershed Restoration: Principles and Practices*. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, Maryland. pp 561.

Appendix 1

**Example Discharge Measurements Form: Non-Point Transect
Methods, Volume/Time Data**

Discharge Measurements Form: Non-Point Transect Methods
(discharge obtained without use of velocity meter)

Stream Name: WILMOT CREEK		Site Code: 3CDW						
Stream Code: WTM		Sample #: 1	Date (YYYY/MM/DD) 2000/08/10					
* DISCHARGE APPROXIMATES BASEFLOW <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> YES <input type="checkbox"/> NO								
* Volume/Time Method								
Volume of container (L): <input type="text" value="20"/>								
time to fill container	replicate 1 <input type="text" value="35"/>	replicate 2 <input type="text" value="39"/>	replicate 3 <input type="text" value="34"/>					
Percent lost:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 0-10	<input type="checkbox"/> 11-30	<input type="checkbox"/> >30					
* Area X Estimated Velocity Method								
stream width (m): <input type="text"/>	X	average depth (m): <input type="text"/>	=	area (m ²): <input type="text"/>	X	average velocity (m/s): <input type="text"/>	=	discharge (m ³ /s): <input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/> estimated <input type="checkbox"/> measured		<input type="checkbox"/> estimated <input type="checkbox"/> measured		(optional calculation)		<input type="checkbox"/> estimated <input type="checkbox"/> measured		(optional calculation)
For stream width, depth, and velocity variables check one box to indicate whether the variable was 'estimated' or 'measured'.								
Comments		Crew		Enter dates and initials when data is entered in computer				
STREAM HAS RELATIVELY UNIFORM		J. BEAL						
DEPTH AND FLOW AT THIS LOCATION		A. CONE		Entered	2000 / 10 / 10	LA		
		S. BYE		Verified	2000 / 11 / 11	JB		
				Corrected	2000 / 12 / 01	AC		

* Only one discharge method is required (Area x Est. OR Vol/Time).

Appendix 2

Example Diagnostic Indicators of Channel Stability Field Form, with Velocity Data

The crew determined that the site was 5.25 m wide and there was minimal variance in the depth and velocities across the profile. Therefore, nine (minimum 8, + 1 observation point because the stream is 2 m wider than 3 m) equally-spaced observation points were established. The transect was set up such that Point-transect Sampling for Channel Structure, Substrate and Bank Conditions (S4:M2) measurements could also be conducted. The tape was set up at 1.5 m from the left bank. Note that the depth of water was insufficient to use the velocity meter at the 10th measurement mark. Therefore hydraulic head was measured here as identified by the asterisk and notation in the comments. Velocity was later determined for this observation using the formula provided earlier in the module.

Diagnostic Indicators of Channel Stability

Stream Name: WILMOT CREEK Stream Code: W111 Site Code: 3CDW Year: 2000 Sample #: _____ Date (YYYYMM/DD): 2000 / 08 / 10 Transect # of 10

Record these values only on the first transect
 Site Length (m): 44.2 Transect Spacing (m): 4.91 Crew: J. BEAL, A. CONE, S. BYE Comments: _____

Obstructions to Flow: None Present Trampled Banks Wood Deflectors Inorganic Deflectors None Present Annourning Inlets Others (List Types)

Indicators Used to Locate Bankfull Level: Left Bank Right Bank Inflection Point Bank Material Top of Point Bar Vegetation Minimum Width/Depth Others (List Types)

DISCHARGE APPROXIMATES BASEFLOW YES NO

Feature	Channel Profile			Velocity Measurements		
	Horiz. Loc. (m)	Vert. Ht. to Bankfull (mm)	Vert. Ht. to Tape (mm)	Water Depth (mm)	Observation Depth (mm)	Velocity Turns/Min
Left BFD				0		
Right BFD						
Max Channel Depth						
Left Active Channel	1.50			0		
Right Active Channel	6.71			0		
Measurement 1	1.79			300	180	0
2	2.37			405	210	10
3	2.96			515	309	70
4	3.54			310	205	64
5	4.12			235	141	54
6	4.71			190	120	58
7	5.29			160	96	64
8	5.87			175	100	56
9	6.45			50		15 min*
10						0.55*
11						
12						
13						
14						
15						

Channel Profile (continued)

Measure	Horiz. Loc. (m)	Vert. Ht. to Bankfull (mm)	Vert. Ht. to Tape (mm)	Velocity Measurements		Minimum Width (m)	High variance in velocity or depth
				Water Depth (mm)	Observation Depth (mm)		
16							
17							
18							
19							
20							
21							
22							
23							
24							
25							
26							
27							
28							
29							
30							
31							
32							
33							
34							
35							

Use this table to provide guidance for selecting how many points per transect to measure, given the minimum width of the stream.

Minimum Width (m)	Low variance in velocity or depth	High variance in velocity or depth
> 3.0	8 + 1 every 2 metre	10 + 1 every 1 metre
1.5 - 3.0	5	8
1.0 - 1.49	3	6
< 1.0	2	4

Active Width (W) (m): 5.25
 Point Spacing = # Points per transect (N)
 Point Spacing (S) (m): 0.58
 First point is S/2 from the left bank 0.21
 Enter dates and initials when data entered in computer

Date	Init.
2000/10/10	LA
2000/11/11	JB
2000/12/01	SC

Left Entrenchment Width (m): _____
 Right Entrenchment Width (m): _____
 Total Entrenchment Width (m): _____

* OBSERVATION POINT TOO SHALLOW.
 HYDRAULIC HEAD MEASURED INSTEAD

Transect and Point Layout

ONTARIO STREAM ASSESSMENT PROTOCOL

SECTION 4: MODULE 6

Estimating Stream Discharge and Rapid Assessment Methodology for Measuring Hydrologic Response to Storm and Drought Events¹

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0	INTRODUCTION.....	1
2.0	PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES.....	1
3.0	FIELD PROCEDURES.....	2
3.1	Installing the Water Level Gauge.....	2
3.2	Determining and Documenting the Hydrologic Response.....	3
3.2.1	Measuring the Stream Response to a Storm Event.....	4
3.3	Tips for Applying this Module.....	4
4.0	DATA MANAGEMENT.....	5

APPENDICES

Appendix 1. Example Water Level Record

¹ Authors: L.W. Stanfield and B. Robertson

1.0 INTRODUCTION

This module describes a low-cost method (using a water level gauge) for measuring the maximum depth obtained in a stream for a single storm event or alternatively the drop in discharge during a drought period. In addition, temporal measurements enable the preparation of a stage height graph (depth of water over time) and indicate how quickly the system responds and recovers from a storm event (flashiness). Flashy streams have fast response times, high peak flows and are more prone to erosion problems such as scouring, undercutting and bank collapse. Comparisons can be made among sites on the same stream or to reference locations in order to detect impacts.

This module is most effectively used in conjunction with a gauge station located on the same tributary. The gauge station data can be used to calibrate data collected using this module but the results can also be used independently in the absence of a gauge station. Alternatively, this module can be used in conjunction with S4.M5, Measuring Stream Discharge Quantitatively, to create a stage discharge curve for the purpose of creating a hydrograph.

2.0 PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES

A typical crew consists of two people and survey time varies with the number of readings. Each reading takes approximately 1 minute to perform. Installation of the water level gauge (PVC pipe) requires 10 to 30 minutes.

Pre-field activities should include:

- Landowner contact
- Documentation of site access and appropriate stream identifiers (see Section 1)
- Equipment check

For this protocol, the following equipment list is required:

1. Water Level Record (ideally on waterproof paper)
2. Pencils
3. Metre stick
4. PVC pipe (1.5 inch diameter, cut to reach at least 0.5 m above stream bank)
5. Cap for pipe
6. Float (ping pong ball with a bobby pin glued to it), or Styrofoam insulation
7. Wire, bricks etc., to secure PVC pipe

**Estimating Stream Discharge and RAM for Measuring
Hydrologic Response to Storm and Drought Events**
edited May 2007

Crews should adhere to safety precautions and requirements set forth by their employers /managers i.e., first aid kit, first aid training, travel plan, buddy system, mobile phone etc.

The water level gauge consists of a perforated 1.5 inch (diameter) PVC pipe placed vertically into the stream bed (Figure 1). A ping-pong ball with an attached bobby pin floats inside the pipe (Figure 2). The bobby pin is glued to the ball and bent so that the ends touch the walls of the pipe, preventing the ball from slipping back down the tube when the waters recede. Styrofoam insulation can also be used.

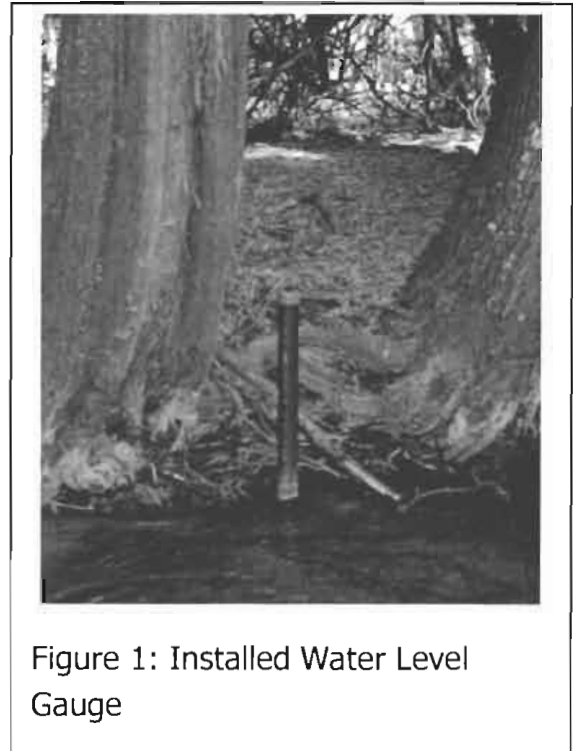


Figure 1: Installed Water Level Gauge

3.0 FIELD PROCEDURES

The module should be completed in conjunction with S1.M1, Defining Site Boundaries and Key Identifiers and S1.M2, Screening Level Site Documentation. At each site, fill out the site descriptors (i.e., 'Stream Name', 'Stream Code', 'Site Code', 'Sample #' and 'Date'). These data should also be recorded in the appropriate fields on the Water Level Record.

The water level gauge can be installed at any time and left in place throughout the study. A site can be measured several times during a summer with each storm event being a separate sample comprised of multiple readings. The survey results from each hydrologic event represent a sample for this module. For example, regardless of whether sampling occurs once or multiple times during a storm event, all of the data are recorded as one sample (see Appendix I). Conversely a new sample occurs when the type of event measured changes (i.e., drought or storm).

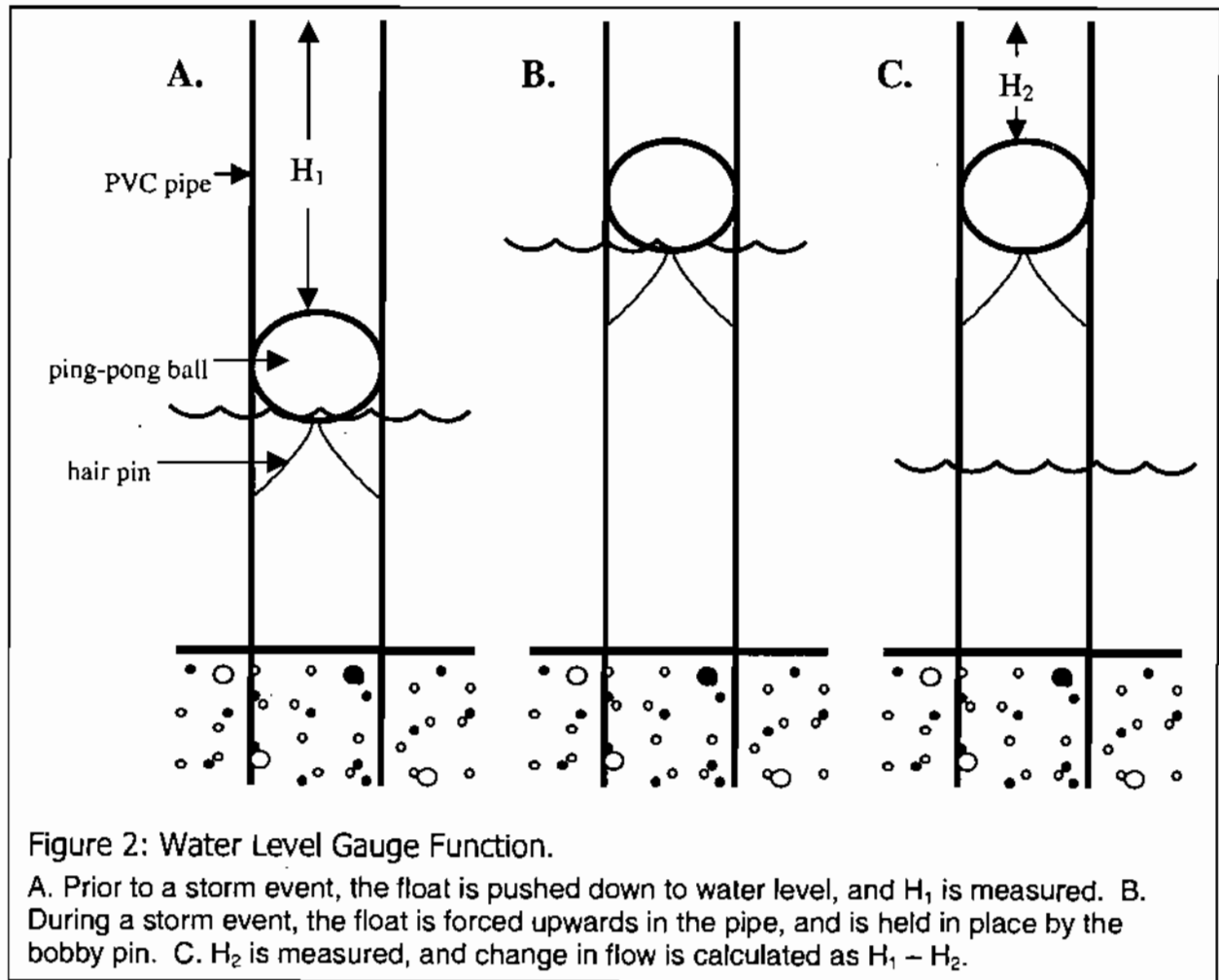
3.1 Installing the Water Level Gauge

This module can be used on any stream where the water level gauge can be anchored and protected to withstand a storm event.

Select a protected location within the site, such as behind a root wad or abutment. Push the PVC pipe into the substrate and anchor securely (i.e., attach to concrete block or bricks with wire). Place the float into the pipe (Figure 2) and push it down to water level using a rod.

Measure the distance (H_1 in Figure 2) to the nearest mm from the top of the PVC pipe to the float and record this under 'Water Level Gauge Reading (mm)' for 'Baseline level'. To measure change in discharge throughout a storm event or drought event, the difference between the height of the float and the 'Baseline level' indicates the maximum height obtained for the most severe storm event that occurred between sampling.

Hint: The PVC pipe can be anchored to a metal bar that has been driven into the substrate.



3.2 Determining and Documenting the Hydrologic Response

Record the amount of rainfall (to the nearest mm) and the duration (to the nearest 0.25 hours) for the storm or drought event in the boxes marked 'Total Precipitation (mm)' and 'Event Duration (Hours)' on the Water Level Record.

Estimating Stream Discharge and RAM for Measuring
Hydrologic Response to Storm and Drought Events
edited May 2007

Rainfall data should be obtained from Environment Canada or an appropriately labelled rain gauge placed in the open (i.e., not under the forest canopy) at the site. Record the volume of water in the rain gauge and discard after every reading. Record 'Total Precipitation (mm)' on the data form.

This technique can also be used to measure change in discharge throughout the season including drought events. Each time the crew returns to the site the new water level is documented. The difference between the height of the float and the water represents the change in baseflow over that period.

3.2.1 Measuring the Stream Response to a Storm Event

During and/or following the storm event, measure the stream response by taking height measurements of the float at routine intervals (Figure 2C).

The following describes three sampling options:

1. Ideally, obtain measurements at 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32 and 64 hour intervals or until the signature of the storm is lost (i.e., stream returns to baseflow).
2. Follow the above as closely as possible (e.g., 1, 4, 7, 19, 25 and 90 hour intervals, to correspond to normal working hours).
3. Visit the site some time after the stream flows have peaked. Record the peak flow response to the event and record this in the box entitled 'Peak Flow'.

Once a reading has been taken from the water level gauge, the gauge must be reset by pushing the float down to the water level and recording the new reading.

Always record the following data on the Water Level Record for each observation: 'Date (YYYY/MM/DD)', 'Time (24hr clock)' and the height from the top of the pipe to the ball (record to nearest mm; 'Water Level Gauge Reading (mm)').

Once all observations have been made, determine and record the peak height in the box marked 'Peak Flow'.

3.3 Tips for Applying this Module

If working in clay bed streams, drill holes in the PVC pipe to ease water movement and release pressure in the pipe.

Mark all sampling equipment to reduce the potential for tampering/vandalism.

To relate the readings from the water level gauge to discharge, a stage discharge curve must be developed (S4.M5 Measuring Stream Discharge Quantitatively).

Graph paper is provided on the data form to track the response to events over time.

4.0 DATA MANAGEMENT

Upon returning from the field;

1. Create a backup hard copy (i.e., photocopy) of field forms, and store in a place separate from the original.
2. Enter the data into a digital storage system, such as HabProgs, and save backup copies that are stored in a separate location from the master copy.

By storing the data digitally in HabProgs, the data can be shared with a large number of users province-wide. Data sharing will facilitate the refinement and development of habitat suitability models, and this will improve habitat management practices and policies.

Appendix 1
Example Water Level Record

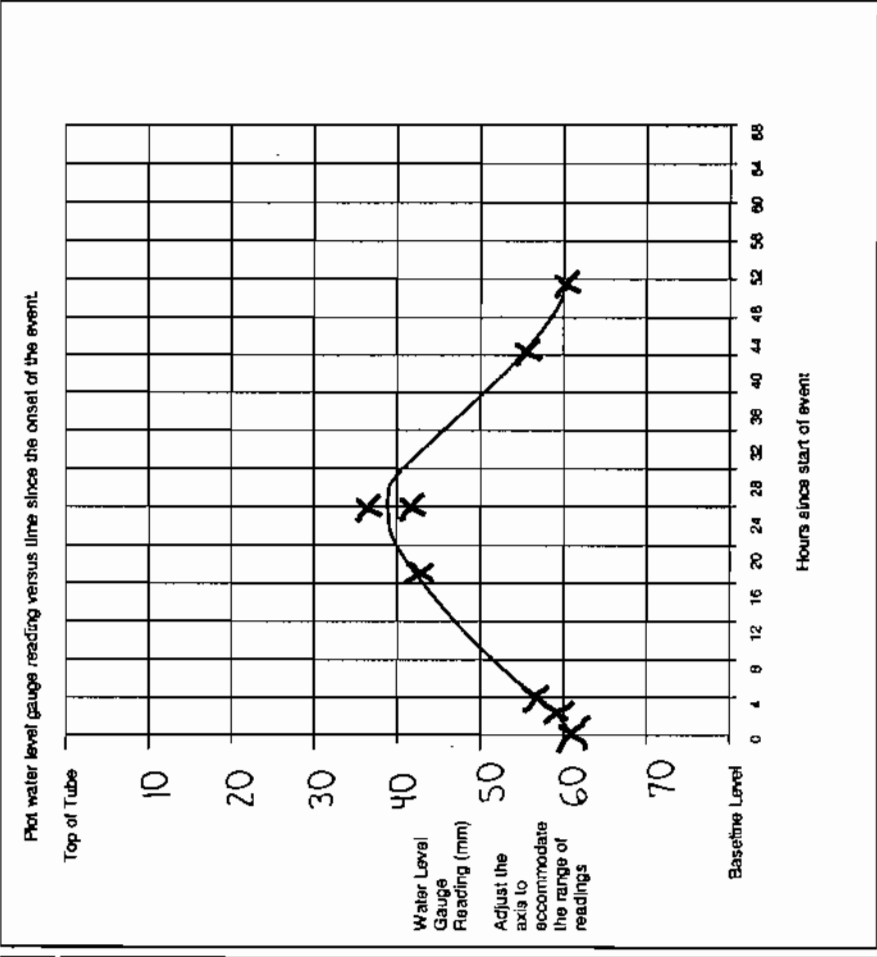
Water Level Record

Stream Name: WILMOT CR	Stream Code (Unique Code): W(1)	Site Code: 3CDW	Year: 1998	Sample #: 1	Date: (YYYY/MM/DD): 98/07/01	Event #: 1
Start Time of Storm (24hr Clock): 1500	Crew: S. SALAR S. TRUTTA	Event Type: THUNDER STORM				

Event Duration (Hours): 3.5 HR
 Total Precipitation (mm): 45

Water Level Gauge Readings
 Ideally, readings should be taken immediately before the storm begins, and 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, and 64 hours after the onset.
 Record the date, time and the distance from the top of the water level gauge (tube) to the ball, in millimeters.

	Date (YYYY/MM/DD)	Time (24hr clock)	Water Level Gauge Reading (mm)
Baseline level	1998/07/01	0800	60
Peak Flow			
Reading: 1	1998/07/01	1700	57
2	1998/07/01	1900	55
3	1998/07/02	0800	42
4	1998/07/02	1500	36
5	1998/07/02	1500	41
6	1998/07/03	0800	54
7	1998/07/03	1600	59
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			



Precipitation Source:

Comments:

Enter dates and initials when data entered in computer.	
Date	Init.
Entered	1998/01 LS
Verified	1998/02 LS
Corrected	1998/02 LS

ONTARIO STREAM ASSESSMENT PROTOCOL

SECTION 5

Water Temperature Assessment

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Module Code	Title	Type
S5.M1	Estimating Summer Maximum Temperatures Under Baseflow Conditions	Assessment Surveys
S5.M2	Characterizing Stream Temperature Variability Using Digital Recorders	Diagnostic Surveys

INTRODUCTION

This section describes techniques for assessing water temperature and estimating summer maximum water temperatures. Water temperature strongly influences the composition of aquatic communities. Knowledge of aquatic thermal regimes is important for predicting species composition, activity level, behaviours and life cycle events.

The modules in this section are suitable for use on wadeable streams with flowing water.

Although this section provides very restrictive advice on how to collect temperature data, it should be noted that temperature measurements taken at any time of the year are of value. Field technicians are encouraged to record stream temperatures, regardless of weather and time constraints.

S5.M1: Estimating Summer Maximum Temperatures Under Baseflow Conditions

This module describes a technique for determining the summer maximum water temperature of a site. Results can be used to assess the suitability of a stream for fish communities and for classifying thermal regimes (Barton et al. 1985, Stoneman and Jones 1996, Wehrly et al. 1999). This technique can be used for determining standardized summer maximum temperature. The methods for calculating the standardized summer maximum temperature are described in Stanfield and Kilgour (in press). This module must be applied within the weather and time constraints described.

S5.M2: Characterizing Stream Temperature Variability Using Digital Recorders

This module describes a method for characterizing stream temperature variability at a site using a digital recording thermometer. The data can be used for determining daily and seasonal fluctuations in water temperature (e.g., daily temperature pattern, diurnal fluctuations, maximum and minimum temperatures, growing degree days) and comparing thermal properties among sites.

LITERATURE CITED

Barton, D.R., W.D. Taylor and R.M. Biette. 1985. Dimensions of riparian buffer strips required to maintain trout habitat in southern Ontario streams. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management*. 5:364-378.

Stanfield, L. W., and B. W. Kilgour. (in press). Effects of percent impervious cover on fish and benthos assemblages and in-stream habitats in Lake Ontario tributaries. Special Publication of the American Fisheries Society. Proceedings of Special Symposium: Influences of Landscape on Stream Habitat and Biological Communities, Madison, Wisconsin 2004.

Stoneman, C.L. and M.L. Jones. 1996. A simple methodology to evaluate the thermal stability of trout streams. North American Journal of Fisheries Management. 16:728-737.

Wehrly, K.E., M.J. Wiley and P.W. Seelbach. 1999. A thermal habitat classification for Lower Michigan Rivers. State of Michigan, Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Division, Research Report Number 2038.

ONTARIO STREAM ASSESSMENT PROTOCOL

SECTION 5: MODULE 1

Estimating Summer Maximum Temperatures Under Baseflow Conditions¹

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0	INTRODUCTION.....	1
2.0	PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES.....	1
3.0	FIELD PROCEDURES.....	2
3.1.1	Obtaining the Stream Temperature.....	2
3.1.2	Obtaining the Air Temperature.....	3
3.1.3	Obtaining Daily Maximum Air Temperature Data.....	3
3.2	Measuring Temperature Using a Digital Recording Thermometer.....	3
3.3	Tips for Applying this Module.....	3
4.0	DATA MANAGEMENT.....	4
5.0	LITERATURE CITED.....	5

APPENDICES

Appendix 1 Example Site Features Form

¹ Author: L.W. Stanfield

1.0 INTRODUCTION

This module describes a method for estimating the maximum summer water temperature of a site based upon a one-day measurement of air and water temperatures. This module has been developed through research conducted by the Great Lakes Salmonid Unit, Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources (Stoneman and Jones 1996) that demonstrated a relationship between stream maximum temperatures and weather conditions. Results can be used to assess the suitability of a stream for fish communities and for classifying thermal regimes (Barton et al. 1985, Stoneman and Jones 1996, Wehrly et al. 1999). This technique can be used for determining standardized summer maximum temperature. The methods for calculating the standardized summer maximum temperature are described in Stanfield and Kilgour (in press).

This module must be applied within the weather and time constraints described.

The methods described in this module may not provide the actual summer maximum temperature, as summer maximum may occur in conjunction with point discharges of storm runoff or industrial runoff. Those interested in this measure should use a digital recording device (see S5.M2, Characterizing Stream Temperature Variability Using Digital Recorders).

2.0 PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES

This module requires a crew of two people. Maximum air temperature data can be obtained from the Environment Canada website (http://www.weatheroffice.ec.gc.ca/canada_e.html) or The Weather Network (<http://www.farmzone.com>).

Pre-field activities should include:

- Landowner contact
- Documentation of site access and appropriate stream identifiers (see Section 1)
- Equipment check

For this protocol, the following equipment list is required:

1. Site Features Form (preferably on waterproof paper)
2. Pencils
3. Thermometer (calibrated and accurate to $\pm 0.5^{\circ}\text{C}$)² or

² Equipment must be calibrated and this should be regularly verified. It should also be noted that maximum-minimum thermometers often produce inconsistent data.

4. Digital recording thermometer (calibrated and accurate to $\pm 0.5^{\circ}\text{C}$)², with chain, lock and porous anchor (cement block, clay pipe etc).

Crews should adhere to safety precautions and requirements set forth by their employers /managers i.e., first aid kit, first aid training, travel plan, buddy system, mobile phone etc.

3.0 FIELD PROCEDURES

This module should be done in conjunction with S1.M1, Defining Site Boundaries and Key Identifiers and S1.M2, Screening Level Site Documentation.

Data must be collected under the following conditions:

- from any well-mixed section of the stream,
- between July 1st and September 10th,
- between 4:00 pm and 4:30 pm³,
- on days when the maximum air temperatures exceed 24.5°C , and
- **during a heat wave** (i.e., the sampling day must be preceded by at least two days with maximum air temperatures exceeding 24.5°C) during which there has been no rainfall that affected baseflow.

Water temperature can be determined using either a thermometer or a digital recording thermometer. Digital recording thermometers can be used to monitor temperature over a longer period of time and the data retrieved from the day/time using the above criteria.

If several sites will be sampled within a short period of time, temperatures may be measured at accessible locations (e.g., a road crossing near the site). If this approach is used, the water temperatures from within the site and at the accessible location must be compared prior to the actual sampling day. Temperatures should be the same indicating the absence of groundwater upwellings or other features that can affect stream temperature.

3.1.1 Obtaining the Stream Temperature

Place a thermometer in the main flow of the stream (i.e., a run or scour pool), avoiding deep pools as they may be sources of groundwater upwellings. After 30 seconds have elapsed, record the water temperature to the nearest degree ('Water Temperature ($^{\circ}\text{C}$)'). Also record the time ('Time:') that the water temperature was taken.

3.1.2 Obtaining the Air Temperature

Measure and record the air temperature at the time of sampling ('Air Temperature at Same Time (°C)'). The air temperature should be measured in the shade using a dry thermometer.

Record the 'Maximum Air Temperature (°C)' using data from Environment Canada or The Weather Network for the closest monitoring station to the stream. Record the 'Source of Maximum Air Temp'.

3.1.3 Obtaining Daily Maximum Air Temperature Data

Daily maximum air temperatures are required from July 1st to September 10th. These data can be obtained using either of the following methods:

- placing a digital recording thermometer in a shaded area away from the cooling influence of the stream, or
- obtaining the data from Environment Canada or The Weather Network for the closest monitoring station to the stream.

3.2 Measuring Temperature Using a Digital Recording Thermometer

Secure the digital recording thermometer to an anchor. To protect the digital recording thermometer it can be placed inside a cement block or section of pipe. The device and anchor should be placed in a well-mixed but protected area in the stream. Record the location and the identification number on the digital recording thermometer (if more than one is deployed) in the 'Comments:' area on the Site Features Form. Record the 'Time:' and 'Date:' of deployment.

After at least one weather event that meets the criteria described above, retrieve the digital recording thermometer. Download the data, and sort and extract the stream temperature on the date/time that meets the requirements as stated above. Record this as the 'Maximum Water Temperature (°C)' on the Site Features Form. Record the 'Maximum Air Temperature (°C)' for that date and how it was determined.

3.3 Tips for Applying this Module

If multiple sites are being assessed using a thermometer, a customized spreadsheet field sheet can be created for recording data. Data should be transferred to the Site Features Form after they are collected.

³ Although the predictability is best if temperatures are taken between 4:00 and 4:30 pm, it is recognized this may be logistically difficult, therefore it is acceptable to take temperatures between 3:45 and 4:45 pm.

Do not delay getting the water temperature data on days that satisfy the criteria.

Ensure that the temperature data are transferred to the Site Features Form described in Section 1 soon after they are collected as these data often get misplaced.

Summer maximum water temperatures should not be used from periods where there has been heavy rainfall that changes baseflow.

If digital recorders are used, ensure that all water temperature data are archived as they can be used to characterize stream temperature variability (see S5.M2, Characterizing Stream Temperature Variability Using Digital Recorders).

Digital recording thermometers should not be placed in the open where they will be prone to theft.

Digital recording thermometers are prone to battery failure; therefore batteries should be checked prior to deployment.

Ensure that anchors are heavy enough to prevent digital recording thermometers from being washed downstream during storm events.

4.0 DATA MANAGEMENT

Upon returning from the field;

1. Create a backup hard copy (i.e., photocopy) of field forms, and store in a place separate from the original.
2. Enter the data into a digital storage system, such as HabProgs, and save backup copies that are stored in a separate location from the master copy.

By storing the data digitally in HabProgs, the data can be shared with a large number of users province-wide. Data sharing will facilitate the refinement and development of habitat suitability models, and this will improve habitat management practices and policies.

5.0 LITERATURE CITED

- Barton, D.R., W.D. Taylor and R.M. Biette. 1985. Dimensions of riparian buffer strips required to maintain trout habitat in southern Ontario streams. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management*. 5:364-378.
- Stanfield, L. W., and B. W. Kilgour. (in press). Effects of percent impervious cover on fish and benthos assemblages and in-stream habitats in Lake Ontario tributaries. Special Publication of the American Fisheries Society. Proceedings of Special Symposium: Influences of Landscape on Stream Habitat and Biological Communities, Madison, Wisconsin 2004.
- Stoneman, C.L. and M.L. Jones. 1996. A simple methodology to evaluate the thermal stability of trout streams. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management*. 16:728-737.
- Wehrly, K.E., M.J. Wiley and P.W. Seelbach. 1999. A thermal habitat classification for Lower Michigan Rivers. State of Michigan, Department of Natural Resources, Fisheries Division, Research Report Number 2038.

Appendix 1

Example Site Features Form

Note that this example also shows data that was collected in conjunction with S1.M3, Assessment Procedures for Site Feature Documentation.

Site Features Form

Stream Name: WILMOT CK	Stream Code: WmI	Site Code: 3CDW	Year: 2000	Sample: 1	Date: (YYYY/MM/DD) 00/08/01
------------------------	------------------	-----------------	------------	-----------	-----------------------------

For each landuse, check off all boxes which apply. Be sure to include comments explaining the particulars, including names and numbers of contacts.

Site Features	Ongoing and Active	Historical Evidence	No Evidence but Reported	No Evidence	Unknown	Comments
Potential Point or Non-point Source Contaminant Sources	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Major Nutrient Sources Upstream	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	VILLAGE OF ORONO SEPTIC BED LEACHATE
Channel Hardening or Straightening	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Adjacent Landuses That Destabilize Banks	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	TRAMPLING BY ANGLERS
Sediment Loading or Deprivation	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	BASE OF BRIDGE ABUTMENT AT BANK HEIGHT
Instream Habitat Modifications	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	HALF LOG STRUCTURES BURIED IN STREAM
Barriers and/or Dams In the Vicinity of the Site	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
High Fishing Pressure	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	WORLD FAMOUS TROUT FISHERY
Log Jam Deflectors	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	4 CROSSLOGS AND 2 LOG JAMS
Springs or Seeps at the Site	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Impervious Substrate Limiting Burrowing Depth of Fish	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	CLAY BED EXPOSED AT SEVERAL LOCATIONS
Other Activities That Could Influence Biota or Habitat	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	

Temperatures	Water Temperature(°C): 19°	Date: 2000/08/01	Time: 16:10	Air Temperature At Same Time (°C): 22°
Maximum Air Temperature (°C): 27°	Source of Maximum Air Temp: ENVIRONMENT CANADA	Maximum Water Temperature(°C):: 22°		
Crew: S. BYE, A. CONE	Recorder: J. BEAL			
Comments: OLD STUMPS IN RIPARIAN AREA INDICATE LOGGING IN PAST (PERHAPS 20 YEARS)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Visual Immediate <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Visual Extended <input type="checkbox"/> Interview <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Maps/Photos			

Riparian Vegetation Community Only Check one box for each bank and zone

Riparian Zone	Dominant Vegetation Type									
	Left Bank					Right Bank				
	None	Cultivated	Meadow	Scrubland	Forest	None	Cultivated	Meadow	Scrubland	Forest
1.5-10m	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10-30m	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
30-100m	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Entered dates and initial when data entered in computer		
	Date	Init.
Entered	20/08/01	AC
Verified	20/08/01	JB
Corrected	00/02/00	AC

Estimating Summer Maximum Temperatures
edited May 2007

ONTARIO STREAM ASSESSMENT PROTOCOL

SECTION 5: MODULE 2

Characterizing Stream Temperature Variability Using Digital Recorders¹

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0	INTRODUCTION.....	1
2.0	PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES.....	1
3.0	FIELD PROCEDURES.....	1
3.1	Measuring Temperature	2
3.2	Tips for Applying this Module.....	2
4.0	DATA MANAGEMENT	2

¹ Author: L.W. Stanfield

1.0 INTRODUCTION

This module describes a method for characterizing stream temperature variability using a digital recording thermometer. The data can be used for determining daily and seasonal fluctuations in stream temperature at a site (e.g., daily temperature pattern, diurnal fluctuations, maximum and minimum temperatures, growing degree days), or to document changes due to spike events such as point source discharges of unusually warm or cold water. Data can be extracted and summarized to enable comparisons between sites.

2.0 PRE-FIELD ACTIVITIES

This module requires a crew of two people.

Pre-field activities should include:

- Landowner contact
- Documentation of site access and appropriate stream identifiers (see Section 1)
- Equipment check

For this protocol, the following equipment list is recommended:

1. Site Features Form (preferably on waterproof paper)
2. Pencils
3. Digital recording thermometer (calibrated and accurate to $\pm 0.5^{\circ}\text{C}$)²,
4. porous anchor (cement block, clay pipe etc.)
5. chain and lock for securing object

Each digital recorder requires initiation at the office prior to deployment. Follow the operational instructions the unit prior to leaving for initial placement.

Crews should adhere to safety precautions and requirements set forth by their employers /managers i.e., first aid kit, first aid training, travel plan, buddy system, mobile phone etc.

3.0 FIELD PROCEDURES

This module should be done in conjunction with S1.M1, Defining Site Boundaries and Key Identifiers and S1.M2, Screening Level Site Documentation.

² Equipment must be calibrated and this should be regularly verified.

3.1 Measuring Temperature

Secure the digital recording thermometer to an anchor. To protect the digital recording thermometer it can be placed inside a cement block or section of pipe. The device and anchor should be placed in a well-mixed and preferably shaded and protected area in the stream. Record the location and the identification number on the digital recording thermometer (if more than one is deployed) in the 'Comments:' area on the Site Features Form. Record the 'Time:' and 'Date:' of deployment.

The study design will determine the duration that the digital recording thermometer will be in the stream. If the study design requires comparisons between the water and air temperatures, the latter can be obtained from the Environment Canada website (http://www.weatheroffice.ec.gc.ca/canada_e.html) or The Weather Network (<http://www.farmzone.com>) or can be measured by placing a digital recording thermometer in a shaded area away from the cooling influence of the stream.

3.2 Tips for Applying this Module

Digital recording thermometers should not be placed in the open where they will be prone to theft.

Digital recording thermometers are prone to battery failure; therefore batteries should be checked prior to deployment.

Ensure that anchors are heavy enough to prevent digital recording thermometers from being washed downstream during storm events.

4.0 DATA MANAGEMENT

Upon returning from the field;

1. Create a backup hard copy (i.e., photocopy) of field forms, and store in a place separate from the original.

2. Download the data as appropriate for each specific product. Data from multiple sites can be combined into a relational database³. Ensure that the data are linked with other digital storage systems, such as HabProgs, and save backup copies stored in a separate location from the master copy.

By storing the data digitally and sharing it with the HabProgs database manager, the data can be shared with a large number of users province-wide. Data sharing will facilitate the refinement and development of habitat suitability models, and this will improve habitat management practices and policies.

³ An Access database file is being developed for storing and sharing these data. Researchers interested in receiving a copy of this program should contact Les Stanfield (613-476-8777) of the Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources.

ONTARIO STREAM ASSESSMENT PROTOCOL

SECTION 6: MODULE 1

Using the HabProgs Database¹

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0	INTRODUCTION.....	1
2.0	TIME AND RESOURCES REQUIRED	2
3.0	DETAILED PROCEDURES	2
3.1	Background to the Database System.....	3
3.2	Proj. "Add or Edit Project Definitions"	4
3.3	Add "Add A New Sample Event"	5
3.4	Edit "Edit Existing Data Or Add New Data For An Existing Sample"	6
3.4.1	Data Verification	7
3.5	Log "Update Data Entry Log" (Optional).....	9
3.6	Field "Print Blank Field Sheets for Data Collection"	9
3.7	Summ. "Summarize Data" (Optional)	10
3.8	Imp. "Data Import, Export and Update Functions" (Optional)	11
4.0	MAINTAINING BACKUP COPIES OF THE DATA.....	12
5.0	STORING DATASETS IN A CENTRAL REPOSITORY	13
5.1	Tips for Improving Data Quality	13
6.0	LITERATURE CITED.....	14

¹ Authors: M. Stoneman, L. W. Stanfield and B.A. Harlow

1.0 INTRODUCTION

This module is designed to guide users through the HabProgs data entry process. HabProgs is a relational database that has been specifically developed for use with the modules described in this manual. The use of HabProgs is encouraged to ensure that data can be permanently archived and be available to others².

A relational database enables data that are collected at more than one scale (i.e., site, transect, point etc.), to be stored and related, and reduces the possibility of duplicate records. It also ensures that users store data in similar formats and measurement units, thereby facilitating study comparisons.

It is recognized that researchers who collect stream data have proprietary rights on the use of the data for reporting and publications. A 'proprietary rights' function can be initiated in the HabProgs database by the project manager which will flag project data and indicate to database users that permission to use the data must be obtained from the project manager. If proprietary rights are applied to data, the database will reflect this restriction on its use for a period of five years from when the data were collected. Data belonging to projects where no proprietary rights are identified are considered to be public domain and are available for use by partners in the OSAP network.

The field forms used in this manual have been generated from the HabProgs program; to facilitate efficiency and accuracy of data entry, the data entry screens in HabProgs are comparable to the forms. HabProgs provides a single, fully integrated electronic repository for all the data recorded at all of the sites included in a project. In addition, the database includes the programs (SQL queries and VBA code) that transform the raw data into a set of site-level summary statistics that can be used to score the habitat suitability of the site. Further, it provides a standardized means of processing and summarizing the data. HabProgs is continually being revised to incorporate new summary procedures and efforts are underway to convert it to an even more stable, user-friendly format. Users are encouraged to routinely check the webpage (<http://stonecraftindustries.hypermart.net/>) for updates.

² If there are specific requirements that are not currently satisfied from within the HabProgs application, please contact the database program developers to determine if the needs can be accommodated, prior to making use of alternate software.

2.0 TIME AND RESOURCES REQUIRED

It will generally take 10-20 minutes to set up a project and initiate the data entry procedures for a sample. The amount of time required to enter field data is dependent on the amount and type of data collected and the proficiency of the data entry technician.

HabProgs requires a computer with Microsoft Access97 (for Windows) installed on it. As with all computer programs, the speed at which HabProgs will run is dependent on the microprocessor speed of the computer and available RAM. A computer with a Pentium 100 MHz microprocessor would be acceptable for relatively small datasets.

The database screens are optimally displayed at a screen resolution of 800 x 600 pixels. If the monitor resolution is set to less than this, the database screens will be truncated (i.e., the entire database screen will not be visible). Check the resolution before starting the database installation; from the Windows 'Control Panel' under 'Display and Settings', ensure that the desktop area reads V 800 x 600 pixels. For computers that are not capable of displaying 800 x 600 pixels, the HabProgs system can still be installed, but scroll bars will have to be used to view the forms.

All dates must be entered into the database using a four-digit year format, which sometimes requires that the default Windows date setting be changed. Different operating systems will vary in where this field is located, but in general it is found in the Windows 'Control Panel', under the 'Regional Options' icon. Locate the 'Date' tab (it may be under the 'Customize' tab for XP users) and then click on the button next to 'Short Date Style'. Select the choice that says 'yyyy/MM/dd'. This ensures that all dates entered into HabProgs follow this format.

3.0 DETAILED PROCEDURES

If Microsoft Access97 has not already been installed on the computer that will be used for data processing, obtain a copy and follow the installation instructions.

The standard version of the database is distributed as a compressed Zip file, which is available from the Stonecraft website: (<http://stonecraftindustries.hypermart.net/>). The Zip file contains two files, **HabProgs97.mdb** and **Habitat.mdb**. The two files should be extracted to a directory set up by the user (i.e., the user can name the directory) using a Zip-compatible archive program such as WinZip (available at <http://www.winzip.com>).

Open Access97 and load **HabProgs97.mdb** using 'File', 'Open'. Alternatively, double-click on **HabProgs97.mdb** in the 'Windows Explorer' or 'My Computer' windows to start Access and automatically open **HabProgs97.mdb**. The best method, however, is to make a shortcut for

HabProgs97.mdb by right-clicking on **HabProgs97.mdb** in 'Windows Explorer', and dragging it to the desktop. When the mouse button is released, a menu will pop up. Select 'Create Shortcut(s) Here', and an icon will appear. Double-click on the icon to start the habitat database. If more than one version of Access is loaded on the computer, ensure that Access97 is the default program when HabProgs is used, or newer versions may corrupt the HabProgs application.

Once Access opens and loads the application, the opening screen (Figure 1) appears. A message box may then appear, requesting the location of **Habitat.mdb**. Browse to the directory and select the file. Next, the 'Main Switchboard' screen (Figure 2) will be displayed.

The **Habitat.mdb** file should be renamed to more appropriately reflect the user's project (e.g., **Lake Erie Inventory.mdb**).

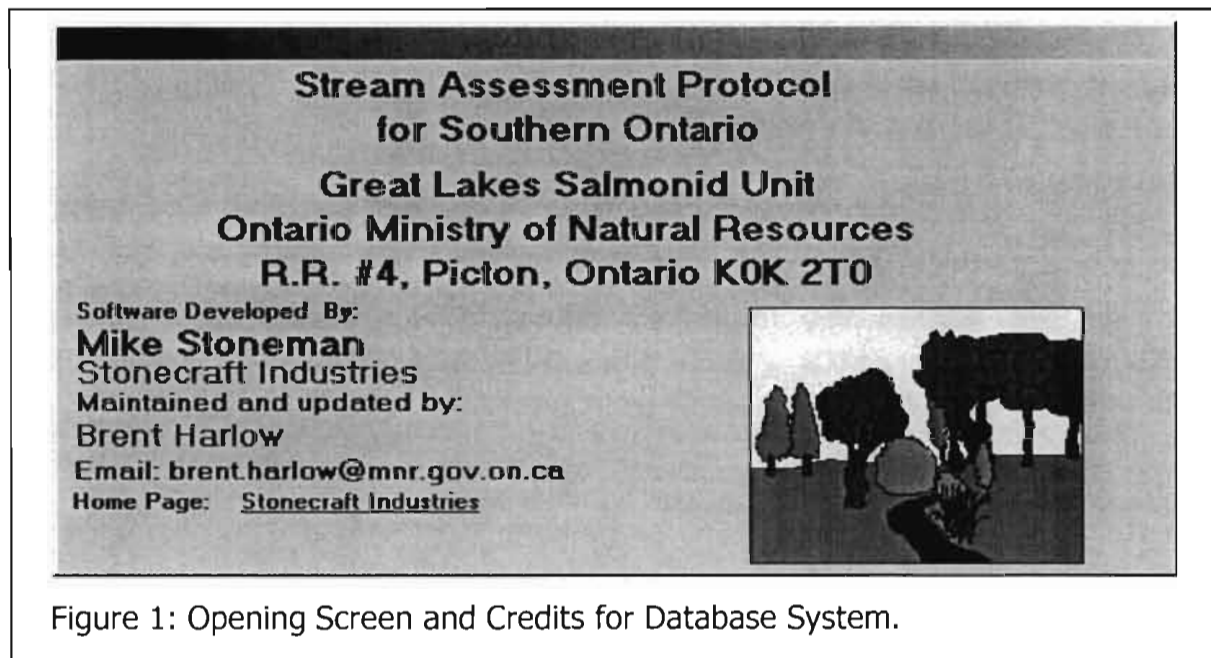


Figure 1: Opening Screen and Credits for Database System.

3.1 Background to the Database System

The database system consists of many linked tables which are stored in two different database files. Some of the tables contain the raw field data while others contain summary outputs and parameters. All of the tables are linked by the common fields: stream name, stream code, site code, sample number, and year. **In order for the database system to operate effectively, it is essential that no field, table, form, report, macro, or query names are altered.** For example, if a table name is changed, database queries will not be able to locate the information

Using the HabProgs Database

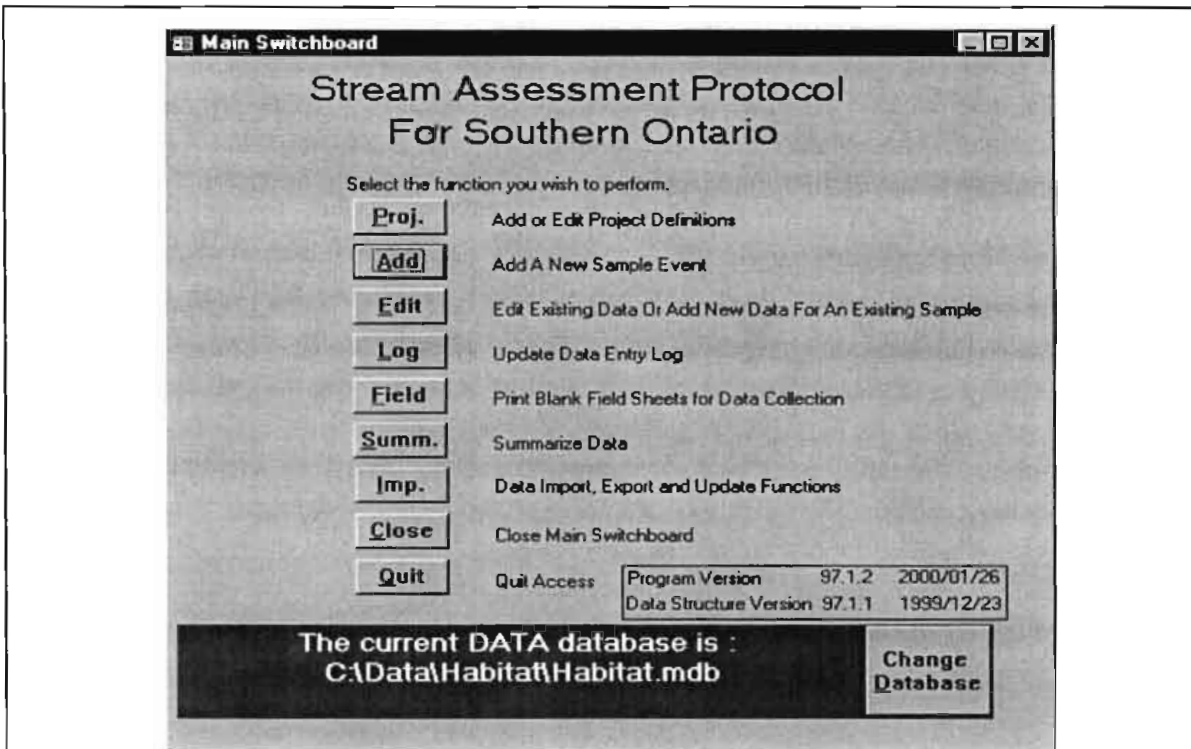


Figure 2: Main Switchboard for the Standard Version of the Database System.

held in the table. A list and brief description of the data tables is provided in Stanfield et al. (2003).

The 'Main Switchboard' screen offers several options that may be accessed at different stages in data management. The options are discussed in the following sequence, which is typical of what a first-time operator might encounter.

3.2 **Proj.** "Add or Edit Project Definitions"

Field data is collected as part of a project. In this section, project managers or their designates describe the background and objectives associated with the study (Figure 3). Also, project managers exercising proprietary rights over data associated with a project (see Introduction, i.e., indicating that database users must first obtain permission before using their data), should toggle the appropriate box to initiate this function. A unique acronym is assigned to each project and is later also assigned to each sample. This information is used to sort or export data. Note that data may be collected for more than one purpose, therefore more than one project code may be assigned to a sample. Project managers are encouraged to update this field once a project is complete so that information about reports generated for a project etc. can be relayed to future users of the data.

Using the HabProgs Database

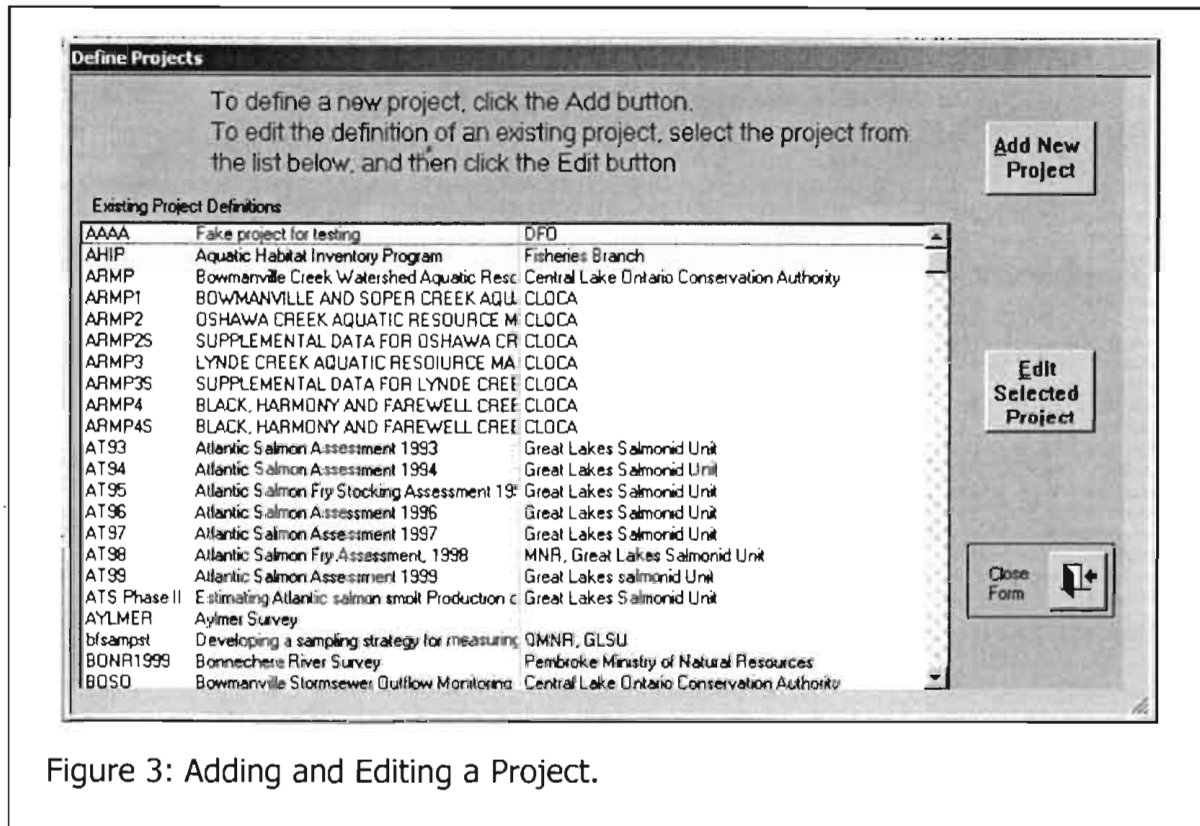


Figure 3: Adding and Editing a Project.

3.3 **Add** "Add A New Sample Event"

Before new data can be entered, the unique codes that will be assigned to the sampling event must be established. The 'Add New Stream, Site or Sample' window (Figure 4) allows access to a hierarchy of stream names and codes, site codes, year and sample numbers that are associated with existing data. Data entry personnel should work through the hierarchy to ensure that the data to be entered are matched to the correct unique stream and codes. If any of the unique codes are not already in the database (i.e., it is a new site or stream), follow the directions provided to add the new information. For new locations, provide a description of the location in the appropriate box so that others can navigate to these identifiers. Duplicate information should not be added e.g., a data entry technician trying to enter information on the Don River discovers that information on the Don River (DN1) already exists in the system; another entry for the Don River should only be added if two names do not represent the same waterbody (i.e., this will be encountered for common names such as Trout Lake etc.). If a new stream name and code must be entered, the data entry technician should contact the database manager to ensure that the code has not been assigned previously.

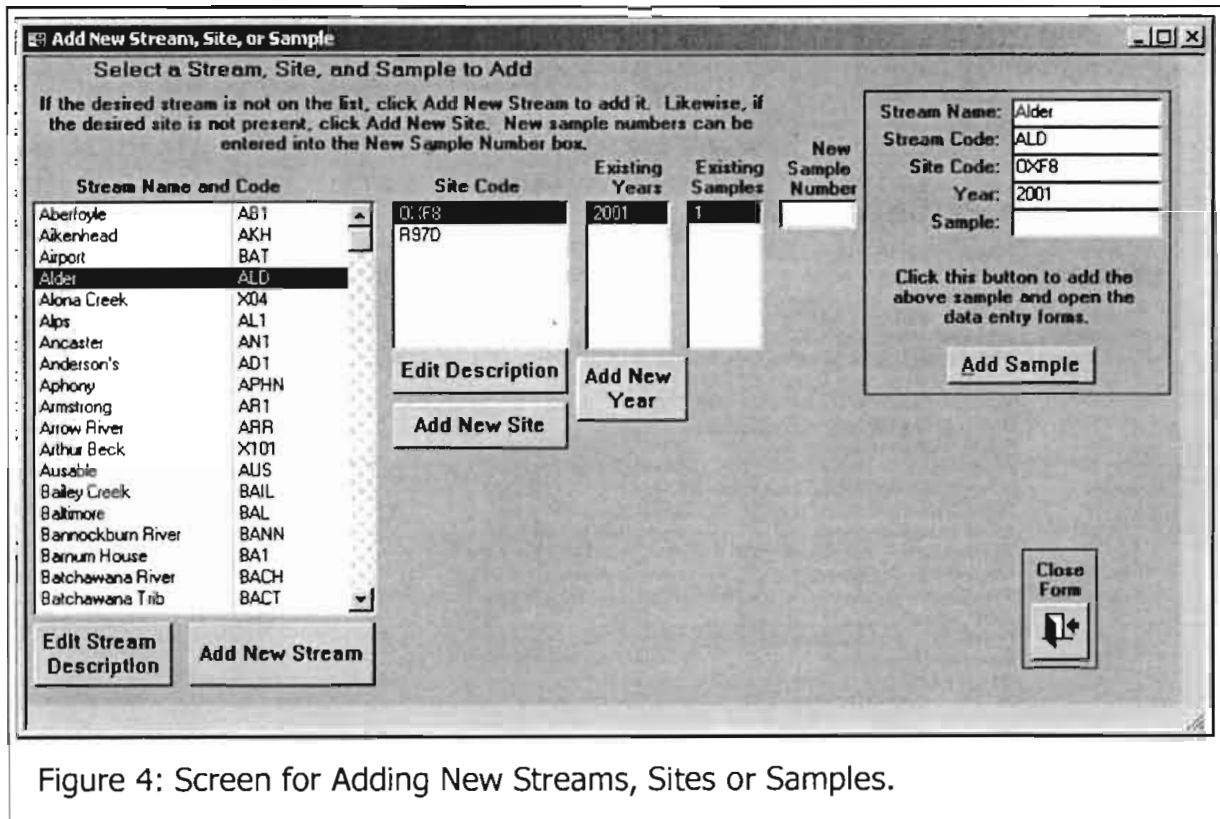


Figure 4: Screen for Adding New Streams, Sites or Samples.

A unique sample includes the year and sample number. Both must be filled in before the sample is established and data entry can continue. Assign the appropriate project code(s) to each new sample.

3.4 **Edit** "Edit Existing Data Or Add New Data For An Existing Sample"

To enter new records (field data) or edit/access existing records, the 'Main Switchboard' (Figure 2) must be open, and the **Edit** button should be selected. The screen which pops up (Figure 5) is also organized in a hierarchy to assist with locating the sample of interest. Scroll to the appropriate sample (note that typing the first letter of the stream name jumps the cursor to the first stream with that letter) and open the window that contains the data of interest or for which data are to be entered. If data are recorded for any of the field forms (i.e., 'Site Id', 'Invertebrates', 'Fish', 'Channel Morphology', 'Site Features', 'Rapid Assessment', 'Channel Stability', 'Hydrographic Event', 'Discharge (Non-Point Transect)', or 'Discharge (Historical)'), 'Yes' will be displayed under the 'Data Entered' column.

For each new sample, the 'Site Identification' field form must be filled out before data can be entered and stored in other field forms. It is possible to enter some data to the 'Site Identification' field form and save the information as 'incomplete' (see **Note** below) to enable

Using the HabProgs Database

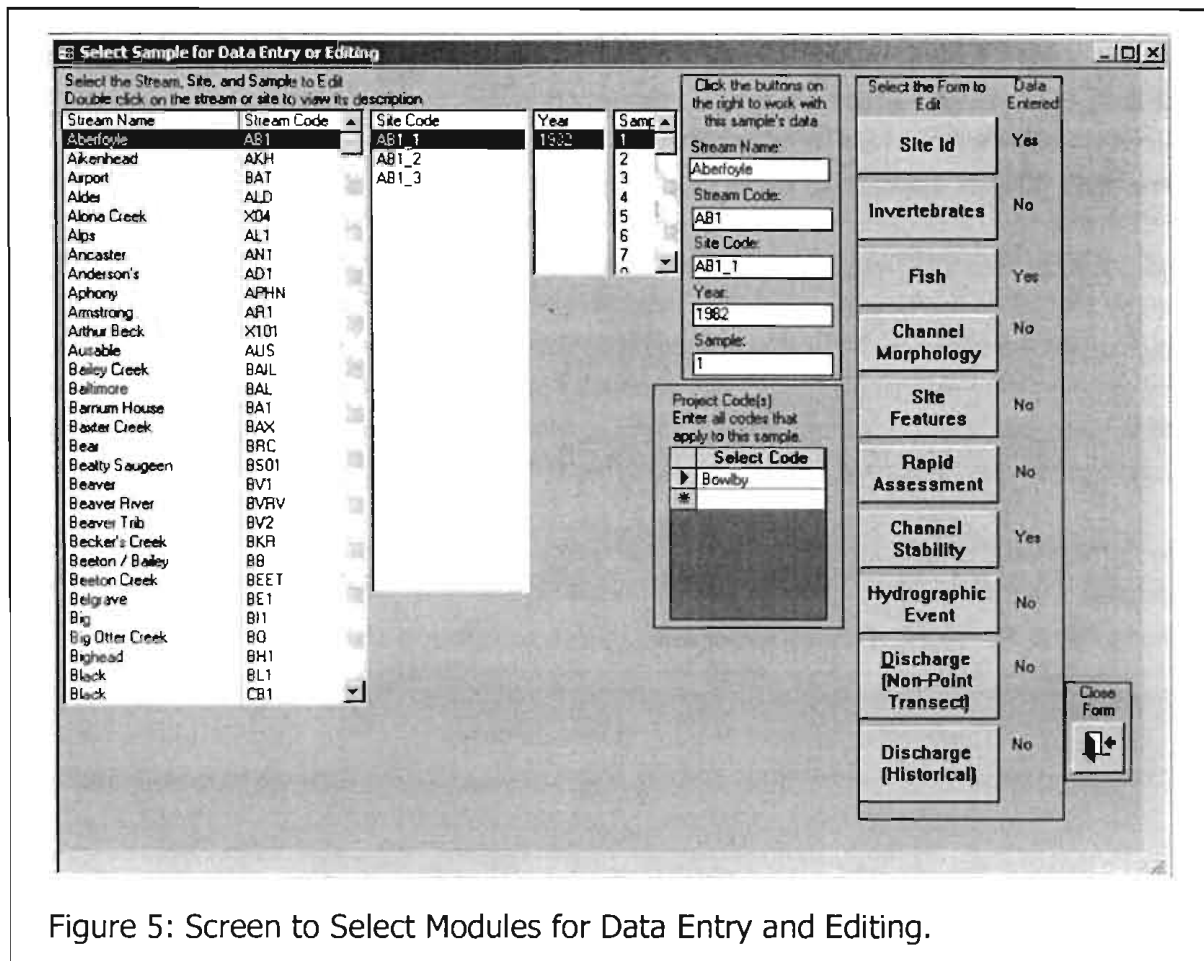


Figure 5: Screen to Select Modules for Data Entry and Editing.

data entry for other field forms. However, the sample date is used as the key field for the 'Site Identification' form and must be filled out. Once this data entry field has been filled out, and the 'Site Identification' form data has been stored, the appropriate window(s) for other field forms may be opened and data may be entered.

Note: *If data are missing from any forms, the form should be marked as being incomplete and the information should be obtained and entered prior to the form being marked off as being verified (see next section). This is particularly important in the case of the 'Site Identification' form, which requires some research to get all the information (i.e., validated UTM coordinates etc.).*

3.4.1 Data Verification

All field form data entry screens contain a tab button that can be used to print a verification copy. The printout will look like a reduced version of the data entry screen and is used for comparison with the field form containing the raw data. Even if a high level of care is applied to

data entry, there will usually be data entry errors that require correction. This means that it is essential to verify the accuracy of all data in the database by comparing the electronic forms to the raw data sheets. Any errors should be marked on the verification copy (using a red pen) and then the corrections should be made in the database. A complete audit of the data should be performed - it is not acceptable to simply check a sample of data points to gauge the probability of errors. If possible, someone other than the data entry technician should conduct the verification process. When the data have been completely 'Verified' and 'Corrected', fill out the date(s) and initial the boxes under these columns on the field form that contains the raw data and toggle the appropriate boxes in the 'Data Entry Log' screen (see Figure 6 and next section). During the verification process, it is equally important to make sure the type of data entered is valid, i.e., that codes are correct, data is recorded in the correct units (i.e., 100 mm not 10 cm), all unique fields are filled in on every field sheet, etc.

It is recommended that only one hard drive (and associated backup system e.g., floppy or compact disk, mass storage device) is used to enter data as this decreases the likelihood of data being either missed or entered twice etc.

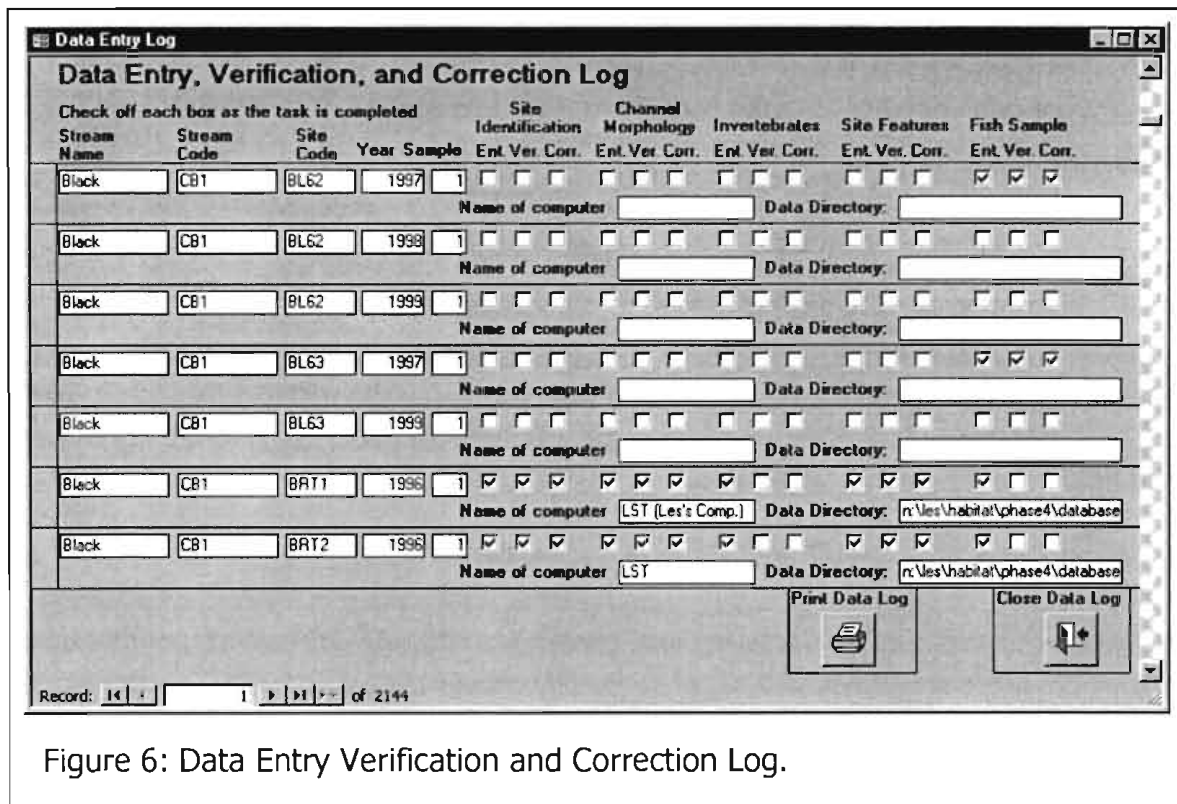


Figure 6: Data Entry Verification and Correction Log.

3.5 **Log** "Update Data Entry Log" (Optional)

This window provides a tool for enabling data entry technicians to track the status of all data records associated with a project (Figure 6). Filling out this data entry screen is optional, but recommended particularly if data entry is performed by more than one person, or is spread over a longer period of time. After recording each sample using the **Edit** tab, open the **Log** tab and record the status of the record. Update this log by toggling the logical fields (check marks are produced) after each step in the data management process (i.e., entry ('Ent.'), verification ('Ver.') and correction ('Corr.')). A paper copy of this log will help to track progress. Moreover, if data are stored on more than one hard drive, this log can be used to track the locations where data are stored.

3.6 **Field** "Print Blank Field Sheets for Data Collection"

This window (Figure 7) is used to print blank field sheets, either individually or all at once.

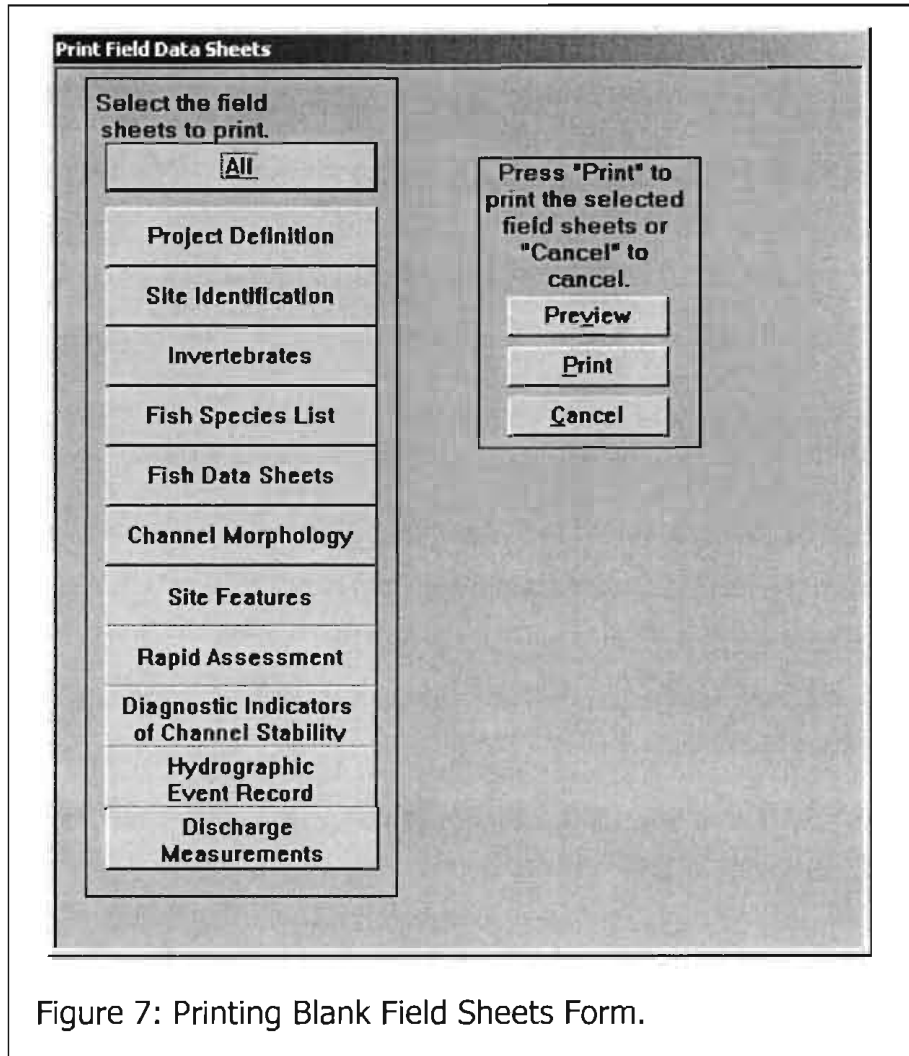


Figure 7: Printing Blank Field Sheets Form.

3.7 **Summ.** "Summarize Data" (Optional)

Within HabProgs, a number of summary queries and reports can be produced. Initiating the summary procedures contained in the 'Summary Switchboard' (Figure 8) will populate a number of tables within the database, enabling reports to be generated. A synopsis of each summary function is described below, while details of the rationale for and the criteria applied for each of these reports are described in the compendium manual for OSAP (Stanfield, 2003).

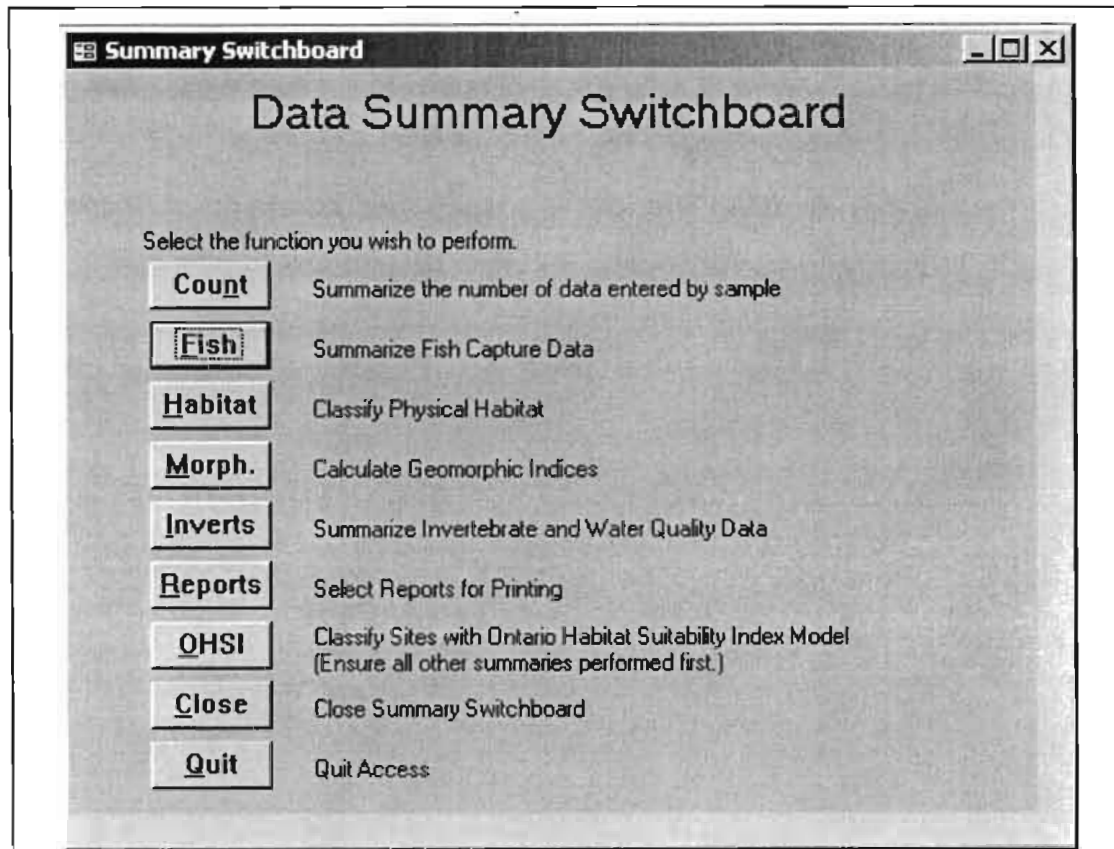


Figure 8: Summarize Data and Creating Reports Screen.

Count: Summarizes the data entered for each sample and is used to evaluate whether all data that should have been entered were entered and stored.

Fish: Generates a summary (by taxa) of the numbers and weights of fish caught and the biomass reported in g/100 m². It also generates the estimated catches for salmonids based on the regression formula of Jones and Stockwell (1995) and can generate a DeLury population estimate for three pass surveys. Finally, where no weight data are available for individual fish, correction factors for weight can be generated for certain taxa.

Using the HabProgs Database

Habitat: A number of queries summarize the instream habitat data in order to generate distributions of morphologic units, substrate amount and distribution of cover and width/depth ratios.

Morph: A number of queries that summarize the instream habitat data in order to generate distributions of morphologic units, substrate amount and distribution of cover and width/depth ratios.

Inverts: This provides the proportion of the total made up by each taxon after combining data from observation areas within a site. Additionally a Hilsenhoff biotic index score is generated for each sample.

Reports: A summary sheet that provides a synopsis of the data described above can be prepared and printed for each site.

Additional summary queries and reports are routinely generated for this program as needs arise.

3.8 **Imp.** "Data Import, Export and Update Functions" (Optional)

This function is provided so that project managers or their designates can export larger datasets or subsets of these. This is useful for sharing partial datasets and for assisting with analysis. The import and update functions are mainly used by the database manager. If the **Export** tab is activated once the **Imp.** tab has been toggled, a tabbed dialog box (Figure 9) appears that provides a number of options for selecting samples to export. Click on the 'Select Destination' button to select a name and location for the dataset that is to be extracted. A dataset containing empty tables (e.g., in order to start entering new data), can be created by clicking on the button that is labelled 'None'. Alternatively, a complete copy of a dataset can be made by clicking on the 'All' button. The 'counters' at the right side of the screen keep track of how many samples are contained in the database and how many are currently selected for export. Clicking on the tabs across the top enables samples to be selected from a variety of options, including project and watershed codes. It should be noted that data that have not been assigned to a project (i.e., and therefore a project code is not associated with the data) will not be exported when a project code is selected, and must be flagged and exported in another manner, e.g., by using the 'Site' tab etc.

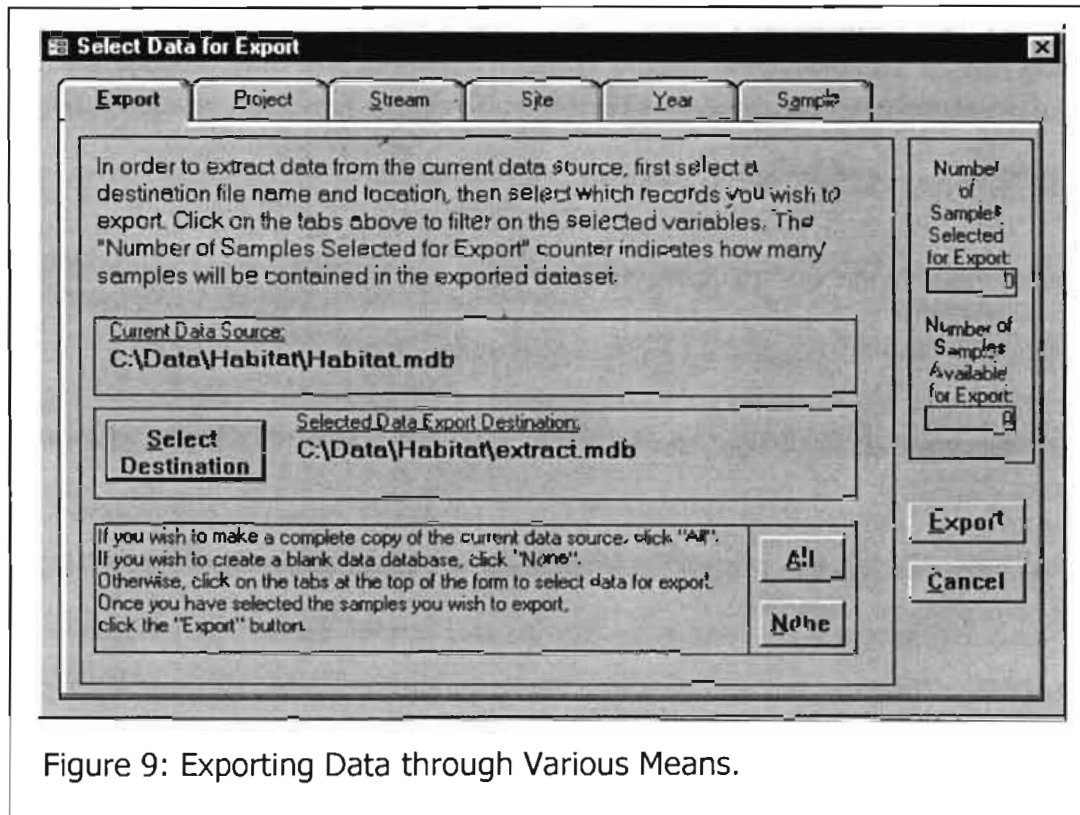


Figure 9: Exporting Data through Various Means.

4.0 MAINTAINING BACKUP COPIES OF THE DATA

The data are stored in the data side of the application (i.e., *Habitat.mdb* file), and 'backup' copies of this file should be made on a regular basis. There is no need to back up the *HabProgs97.mdb* file, as it can be re-installed at any time.

It is extremely important to generate backup copies of the data files. A single hard disk, floppy disk, compact disk or mass storage device should not be relied on as the sole repository for data. Some offices have backup systems in place; the backup schedule should include data files from the HabProgs application. In addition to routine backups, it is recommended that an archive copy of the raw data for each site (or collection of sites in a project) is made as soon as data entry and verification are completed. Unverified data should not be archived as it is likely to be mistakenly treated as verified data at later dates.

Frequent (**at least daily**) incremental backups of the data files are strongly recommended. A set of five rotating incremental backup files, i.e., Monday to Friday, should be maintained. Data files are then backed up on a daily basis to the disk corresponding to the appropriate day of the week. These disks should be labelled as 'Incremental backup Monday disc __ of __ (i.e., 1 of 5)'. The name of the directory where the data are stored on the hard disk drive should also be

Using the HabProgs Database

recorded, e.g., (d:\data\habitat). A separate, full backup should be performed every Friday, and this version should be kept for a month before being copied over. Again, record the name of the directory where the data are stored. This scenario provides a backup system for any file that is a month old.

5.0 STORING DATASETS IN A CENTRAL REPOSITORY

After all data have been entered and verified, two copies of the data should be made. One copy should be stored in a fire-proof location. Note that floppy discs typically have a lifespan of approximately 5 - 10 years and it may be prudent to transfer data to new discs after a suitable period of time has elapsed or use other storage devices that have greater longevity.

Another copy of the data should be sent to the database manager (currently located at: Glenora Fisheries Station, RR 4, Picton Ontario, K0K 2T0, email les.stanfield@mnr.gov.on.ca). Sending a copy of the data to the database manager will ensure that data are stored safely in another location and will make the data available to other researchers, managers, and private organizations. Note that project data that have been flagged with the proprietary rights functions will prompt the database manager to contact the appropriate project manager for authority to share the data with other partners.

5.1 Tips for Improving Data Quality

Take frequent breaks while entering and verifying data, to relieve eyestrain and mental fatigue.

Have someone other than the person who entered the data perform the data verification, or wait at least three days after entering the data before verifying it.

Check that all codes, values in fields, etc., are appropriate when doing data verification.

Make sure that all data fields have been completely filled in before marking the field form as being verified. If data are missing (usually information about the site location) it will likely be a long time before someone notices and it will not only jeopardize the value of the data but will reflect poorly on the technicians who entered and verified the data.

Be careful not to mix up data forms from different samples.

Original data sheets should never be sent out of their permanent repository; only photocopies should be shared!

If validating data on-screen, a person other than the data entry technician should review the data using the printed version to ensure that all errors are corrected.

In Access, pressing the control key and the apostrophe key (Ctrl `... the one at the top left corner on your keyboard) repeats the previous record into any field. It is very useful for entering fish data, comments and other repetitive entries.

If problems entering the date are encountered, check that the computer's internal date format is set up as yyyy/MM/dd.

Access provides transect navigation and record selector buttons that enable scrolling through records of data within a set of data or to add new record pages (i.e., a new transect page). These buttons have arrows and asterisks and are generally located at the top of the page. The Record Selector buttons (grey buttons with black VCR like arrows) allow you to move from one record to another in the same sample.

New records may be inadvertently initiated when data are entered causing the program to stop functioning (the computer will beep). To clear the record/sample being created and return to data entry, the 'Esc' key should be pressed.

If field crews have only recorded their initials and not their full names on the field forms, the data entry technician should ensure that at least a last name and a first name initial is recorded for the crew members associated with every record.

6.0 LITERATURE CITED

- Jones M. L. and J. D. Stockwell. 1995. A Rapid Assessment Procedure for the Enumeration of Salmonine Populations in Streams. *N. Amer. J. Fish. Man.* 15:551 -562.
- Stanfield, L. W. (Ed.). 2003. Guidelines for Designing and Interpreting Stream Surveys: A Compendium Manual to the Ontario Stream Assessment Protocol. Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, Aquatic Research and Development Section, Picton. Internal Publication.

ONTARIO STREAM ASSESSMENT PROTOCOL

SECTION 7

Glossary and List of Acronyms

active channel	the active channel boundaries mark the area between the two outside banks which includes all connected water at the time of the survey. This includes actively flowing as well as stagnant areas provided there is no land barrier that separates it from the main channel
aquatic macrophytes	includes many different species of aquatic plants; all are rooted in the stream bottom and have obvious stems or leaves or filaments (e. g., <i>Veronica</i> spp., pondweed, tape grass, arrowhead, bulrush and cattail)
armouring	rip rap, gabion, concrete, etc., placed on the banks
backwater pools	wet areas adjacent to the active channel that are fed by intergravel flow
bank angle	a measure of the slope of the bank which can be used in determining stream bank stability
bankfull stage	in alluvial streams, defined as the point at which the channel is completely full just prior to flows overtopping the banks and occupying the floodplain; the flows at bankfull stage are typically considered the channel forming flows
bank grid	used to record the amount of living bank vegetation, measures 100 cm long by 5 cm wide, and is comprised of 16 (6.25 cm) blocks
benthic macroinvertebrates	animals without backbones that live on the bottom of lakes, rivers, and streams and are visible with the naked eye
assessment surveys	these methods require more effort than screening surveys; they are recommended for monitoring or impact assessment studies
baseflow	the portion of stream discharge derived from such natural storage sources as groundwater, large lakes, and swamps but does not include direct runoff or flow from stream regulation, water diversion or other human activities

benthos	benthic macroinvertebrates
bottom	when referring to the site, pertains to the downstream end
bulk weights	obtained by sorting a sample of fish by species or like groups, counting the individuals, and measuring the combined weight of each species or group to the nearest gram
cobble areas	exist where at least 10 particles with a median axis > 100 mm occur within the riffle
cover particle	any object that touches the water within the sample area, is at least 100 mm wide along the median axis and of sufficient density to block >75 % of sunlight from reaching the stream bottom; it can consist of a mat of materials such as twigs, macrophytes, or the bank
crossover point	the location where the thalweg (main concentration of flow, normally the deepest part of the channel) is in the centre of the channel during bankfull discharge
diagnostic surveys	these methods provide detailed data and a higher degree of interpretative power than the screening or assessment surveys, but require more effort to conduct
DFO	Department of Fisheries and Oceans
dot tally	a convenient means of recording data when a number of categories are being counted simultaneously; one dot or line represents a single observation, four dots are used to form the outside of a box, then four lines are used to form the outside of the box and finally two lines are used to form a cross for a total of ten observations per filled box
drop structures	perched culvert, weir, flume etc.
embedded cover	provides only a velocity refuge and has less than a 4 cm overhang (e.g., the interstitial spaces around the cover object are filled with material)
entrenchment	the degree to which the stream is restricted from accessing the flood plain, or how incised the stream is within the valley (i.e., the valley width/bankfull width)
entrenchment width	the width of the flood-prone area of a channel at twice the height of its maximum bankfull depth from the channel bed
filamentous algae	have hair-like filaments, are slimy to the touch, and are often

	attached to rocks
flat rock	the longitudinal axis is at least twice as long as the shortest axis, i.e., ratio of longitudinal axis/shortest axis > 2
GIS	Geographic Information Systems
GPS	Global Positioning System
grass	terrestrial grasses (as opposed to tape grass or eelgrass) which are growing in the stream; terrestrial grasses tend to be found at the margins of the stream
heat wave	three consecutive days where maximum air temperatures exceed 24.5°C and during which there has been no rainfall that affected baseflow of the stream
hydraulic head	a surrogate measurement of velocity measured as the difference in height of water between the front and back of a vertically held ruler that is placed at right angles to the flow of water
imbrication	refers to stream condition where larger substrate particles are stacked in ways that mimic fallen dominoes
inflection points	a change in the slope along the bank, perpendicular to the stream flow
inlets	presence of tributaries that provide sufficient discharge to produce a plume or delta, or major outfalls emptying into the channel
inorganic deflectors	mid-channel islands, large rocks (erratics), etc., that are sufficiently large to cause erosion on either bank
left	when referring to the site, refers to the left side while facing upstream
macroinvertebrates	aquatic invertebrates retained by a sieve of 500 µm
macrophytes	include many different species, all are rooted in the stream bottom and have obvious stems or leaves or filaments (examples: <i>Veronica</i> spp., pondweed, tape grass, arrowhead, bulrush and cattail)
median axis	there are three axes to every particle; the median axis represents the intermediate width of any particle
mid-channel island	any solid object with a median diameter greater than 30 cm (located within the active channel) which protrudes above the water
moss	small plants (2-20 cm) found in a matted colony on coarse substrate

	and wood; they are distinguished from plants by the absence of a distinctive stem or true leaves
non-filamentous algae	are slimy to the touch with no hair-like filaments
NRVIS	Natural Resource Value Information System
OBBN	Ontario Benthic Biomonitoring Network
OBM	Ontario Base Map
OMNR	Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources
OSAP	Ontario Stream Assessment Protocol
pavement boundary	the bottom of the active flowing channel and is identified as the point where substrate particles form a fairly uniform layer across the bottom
'press' disturbance	permanent landuse changes that typically have long lasting (i.e. centuries rather than decades) effects on the biophysical features of a stream
'pulse' disturbance	catastrophic changes to stream processes, including weather events such as hurricanes, tornadoes, extreme floods, fire etc.
RAM	Rapid Assessment Methodology
riffles	areas of relatively fast, turbulent flow, where the water's surface is typically broken and has an obvious slope
right	when referring to the site, refers to the right side while facing upstream
ROM	Royal Ontario Museum
round rock	the longitudinal axis is less than twice as long as the shortest axis, i.e., ratio of longitudinal axis/shortest axis < 2
sand and gravel areas	have less than 10 particles with a median axis > 100 mm
sample	one completion of the protocol (i.e., a module) , regardless of how many days it takes to finish it; a second sample would be a repeat assessment or a sample carried out in a different year
sampling site	represents at least one riffle-pool sequence, is at least 40 m long, and begins and ends at a crossover point

screening surveys	these methods are used to perform rapid inventories tend to be visually based; they are useful for the collection of information for 'state of the resource' reports and for identifying future collection efforts
site length	the longitudinal length of the site (measured to the nearest metre) as measured down the centre of the stream
stratification	dividing the study design into equal or representative groupings of various factors
stream width	the wetted width of the stream (i.e., subtract the width of islands and include undercuts), to the nearest tenth of a metre
terrestrial plants	firm stemmed plants that occasionally grow on the margins of streams, such as jewelweed, stinging nettles, poison ivy, willow, dogwood, etc.
thalweg	main concentration of flow, normally the deepest part of the channel
top	when referring to the site, pertains to the upstream end
trim line depth	an equivalent to the bankfull stage in streams flowing through channels that are affected by bedrock, roots and woody material, large glacial deposits etc., identified as the upper limit of a regularly scoured zone and a distinct change in vegetation
watercress	plants that have dark green, non-woody stems with flat, broad, opposite compound leaves with 3 to 9 leaflets per stem; often found in large clusters along margins of stream, they are indicators of groundwater inputs and are also nitrate fixers
unembedded cover	provides overhead and velocity protection for small fish and has at least a 4 cm overhang
UTM	Universal Transverse Mercator
wood deflectors	large logs or trees which impede the flow causing bank erosion on either side of the deflector
WRIP	Water Resources Information Project

0

0

0

Site Identification Form

Stream Name	Stream Code (Unique Code)	Site Code	Year	Sample
-------------	---------------------------	-----------	------	--------

Uncorrected Grid (XX) UTM Coordinates	Easting (XXX,XXX)	Northing (X,XXX,XXX)	OR	Latitude	Deg (15-60)	Min (0-60)	Sec (0-60)	Longitude	Deg (50-75)	Min (0-60)	Sec (0-60)
Corrected Grid (XXX) UTM Coordinates	Easting (XXX,XXX)	Northing (X,XXX,XXX)	Source of GIS Stream Layer used to correct UTM coordinate data (e.g. NRVIS 2)								
Source of Coordinates (OBM Map, GPS Unit, Differential GPS)			Datum of Coordinate Source: (NAD 27, NAD 83, WGS 84) (This can be found on the legends of maps or in set-up of GP3 units)								

Township/Municipality	Lot	Concession	MNR District	Watershed Code
-----------------------	-----	------------	--------------	----------------

Access Route

Site Description

Site Marker Description

Downstream Marker

Measure from Stake to Site Bearing (Degrees):	Distance (m.):	Photograph Numbers:	Looking Upstream:	Looking Downstream:
Description:				

Upstream Marker

Measure from Stake to Site Bearing (Degrees):	Distance (m.):	Photograph Numbers:	Looking Upstream:	Looking Downstream:
Description:				

Crew	Recorder	Date (YYYY/MM/DD)
------	----------	-------------------

Comments

Site Sketch Draw two sketches on the back of this sheet. First draw a map to the area of the site then draw a sketch of the site. Be sure to include enough detail to ensure that someone could find the site again, including a north arrow and the locations of all markers, as well as the locations of any noted features. The artist should also sign the sketches.

Site Length (m.)		
Enter dates and initials when data entered in Computer.		
	Date	Init.
Entered		
Verified		
Corrected		

Site Features Form

Stream Name:	Stream Code:	Site Code:	Year:	Sample:	Date : (YYYY/MM/DD)
--------------	--------------	------------	-------	---------	------------------------

For each landuse, check off all boxes which apply. Be sure to include comments explaining the particulars, including names and numbers of contacts.

Site Features	Ongoing and Active	Historical Evidence	No Evidence but Reported	No Evidence	Unknown	Comments
Potential Point or Non-point Source Contaminant Sources	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Major Nutrient Sources Upstream	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Channel Hardening or Straightening	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Adjacent Landuses That Destabilize Banks	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Sediment Loading or Deprivation	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Instream Habitat Modifications	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Barriers and/or Dams in the Vicinity of the Site	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
High Fishing Pressure	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Log Jam Deflectors	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Springs or Seeps at the Site	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Impervious Substrate Limiting Burrowing Depth of Fish	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Other Activities That Could Influence Biota or Habitat	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	

Temperatures	Water Temperature(°C):	Date:	Time:	Air Temperature At Same Time (°C):
Maximum Air Temperature (°C):	Source of Maximum Air Temp:		Maximum Water Temperature(°C):	
Crew:	Recorder:			
Comments:	<input type="checkbox"/> Visual Immediato <input type="checkbox"/> Visual Extended <input type="checkbox"/> Interview <input type="checkbox"/> Maps/Photos			






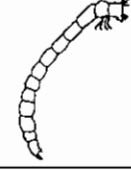
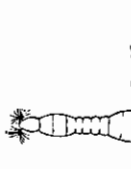



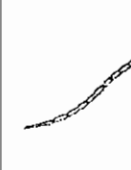
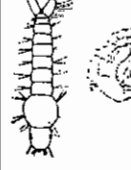






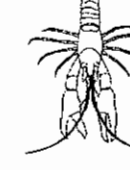
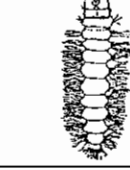

Riparian Vegetation Community Only Check one box for each bank and zone

Riparian Zone	Dominant Vegetation Type									
	Left Bank					Right Bank				
	None	Cultivated	Meadow	Scrubland	Forest	None	Cultivated	Meadow	Scrubland	Forest
1.5-10m.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10-30m.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
30-100m.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Entered dates and initial when data entered in computer		
	Date	Init.
Entered		
Verified		
Corrected		

Benthic Macroinvertebrate Sample Form

Stream Name	Date (YYYY/MM/DD):		Dist. Sampled(m)	No. of Bottles	Sample Preserved? Yes No			Identified in (circle):		Field	Lab	Median sizes of 10 substrate particles randomly chosen from collection area (mm)
	Stream Code:	Water Depth (mm.)	Stream width(m):		Rapid Survey	Stationary Kick Survey	Transect Kick and Sweep	Mesh Size (microns):	251-500			
Site Code:	Sample #:	Hydraulic Head (mm.)	Sampling Time(sec):	Habitat Sampled (circle):	Sorting Method (circle):	Marchant Box		Splitter		D-net		
	Collection Area:			Riffle	Unsorted	Net Type(circle):		Square				
				Total: Portion not picked:				Square		Surber		

	0.4 - 3.0 mm Acarina (Water Mites)		2 - 10 mm Flatworms (Planhelminthes)		5 - 100 mm Hirudinea (Leeches)		5 - 20 mm Amphipoda (Scuds)		5 - 300 mm Isopoda (Aquatic Sowbugs)		2 - 20 mm Chironomidae (Blood Worms)		3 - 15 mm Simuliidae (Black Flies)
	15 - 40 mm Hemiptera (True Bugs)		15 - 45 mm Anisoptera (Dragonflies)		10 - 28 mm Zygoptera (Damselflies)		3 - 13 mm Ceratopogonidae (No-see-ums)		2 - 50 mm. Culicidae (Mosquitoes)		15 - 40 mm. Tabanidae (Horse and Deer Flies)		Misc. Diptera (Misc. True Flies)
	10 - 45 mm Trichoptera (Caddisflies)		2 - 50 mm Trichoptera (Caddisflies)		2 - 70 mm Gastropoda (Snails)		2 - 250 mm Pelecypoda (Clams)		10 - 150 mm Decapoda (Crayfish)		10 - 25 mm Lepidoptera (Aquatic Moths)		2 - 5 mm Hydra (Coelenterates)

Dot Tally, keep track of total number sampled

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Crew Members:

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Comments, check box if more on back:

Ent.	Ver.	Corr.
Date		
Init.		

Fish Sampling Form

Stream Name		Date (YYYY/MM/DD)	Sample	Run _ _ of _ _	Shocker		
Stream Code		Start Time	Stop Time	Netters			
Site Code		Elapsed Time	Shocker Sec	Model No.	# Anodes	Voltage	Frequency Pulse

Individual fish data				B: Bulk P: Preserved		O: Otolith S: Scale		Bulk fish data					# P r e s.	Bag #	Species Name/ Remarks	
Id#	Species	Length -Total -Fork (circle)	Weight (gm.)	B	P	O	S	Species Name/ Remarks	Batch #	Species or Family	Group Num.	Number of Fish				Bulk Weight (gm.)
1																
2																
3																
4																
5																
6																
7																
8																
9																
10																
11																
12																
13																
14																
15																
16																
17																
18																
19																
20																
21																
22																

Field Id. Name: Cert. Level:

Lab Id. Name: Cert. Level:

Date and initials when entered in computer

	Date	Init.
Entered		
Verified		
Corrected		

Channel Morphology Data Available Yes
 If not, measure the station length and 10 widths No

Site Length (m.)

#	Widths (m.)	#	Widths (m.)
1		6	
2		7	
3		8	
4		9	
5		10	

Deviations: Put X in all boxes that are true

Inexperienced sampler: All Habitats Not Sampled:

Upstream Blocknet Used: Imprecise Weigh Scale Used:

Explanations:

Continued on Back?

Yes No

Rapid Assessment Methodology Field Form

Stream Name:	Stream Code (Unique Code):	Year:	Sample #:	Date: (YY/MM/DD):	Site Type (C - Calibration, S - Survey):
--------------	----------------------------	-------	-----------	-------------------	--

Crew: _____

Depth (mm)	Pools (Hydraulic Head = 0 - 3 mm)		Glides (Hydraulic Head = 4 - 7 mm)		Slow Riffles (Hydraulic Head = 8 - 17 mm)		Fast Riffles (Hydraulic Head > 17 mm)	
	No Cover	Cover Present	No Cover	Cover Present	No Cover	Cover Present	No Cover	Cover Present
0 - 100 mm								
101 - 200 mm								
201 - 500 mm								
501 - 1000 mm								
> 1000 mm								
Total # Points								

Instream Cover

Cover Types	Flat Rock	Round Rock	Wood	Macrophytes	Bank	Other
Number of Points						

Substrate Types

Substrate Types	Fines (<= 2 mm)	Gravel (2 - 100 mm)	Cobble (> 100 mm)	Bedrock
Maximum Particle				
Point Particle				

Bank Stability ->

Mean Stream Width (m)	Mean Depth at Crossover (mm)	Maximum Particle Size (mm)
-----------------------	------------------------------	----------------------------

Bank Type	Bank Stability Description	Enter dates and initials when data entered in computer.
		Date Init.
Eroding Bank	Angle > 45°, erodible soil, undercut or bare soil	Entered
Vulnerable Bank	Angle > 45°, erodible soil, no sign of recent erosion	Verified
Protected Bank	Angle > 45°, non-erodible material / soil	Corrected
Deposition Zone	Angle < 45°, (gradual slope from river), fine grained sediments	

Channel Morphology Data Form

Stream Name: _____ Stream Code: _____ Site Code: _____ Date: _____ of _____
 Sample #: _____ Year: _____

Transect and Point Layout

Use this table to determine the number of transects and points required, given the minimum stream width.

Minimum Width (m.)	# Transects at Site	Points / Transect (N)
> 3.0	10	6
1.5 - 3.0	12	5
1.0 - 1.49	15	3
< 1.0	20	2

Calculate the transect spacing from the site length and number of transects:

Minimum Width (m.)	Site Length (m.)	Number of Transects	Transect Spacing (m.)
_____	_____	_____	_____

Particle Size Codes (Measure all particles between 2.00 mm and 1000 mm.)

Material	Size
Unconsolidated Clay	0.01
Consolidated Clay	0.011
Silt	0.05
Sand	0.10
Large Boulders	1001
Bedrock	1111

Active Channel Width (W) (m.) _____
 Point Spacing (m.) _____
 Point Spacing = Active Width W (m.) / Spacing, S = # Points per Transect
 First point is S/2 from the left bank
 Compass Bearing: _____

Point Number	Location (m.)	Measure depth and hydraulic head to nearest 5 mm.	Particle Sizes (mm.)		Quality (-99, 0, 1, 2)	Types Present		Aquatic Vegetation Types Present						Vegetation Types FL = Filamentous Algae AL = Non-Filamentous Algae SS = Moss MC = Macrophytes WC = Watercress GR = Grass TR = Terrestrial Plants											
			Depth (mm.)	Hydraulic Head (mm.)		W	R	FL	AL	SS	MC	WC	GR		TR										
1																									
2																									
3																									
4																									
5																									
6																									

Bank Angle

Bank to top height: if a height is >2m enter X in box only, else enter values in proper observation points

Bank	> 2m	0 mm.	250 mm.	750 mm.	1500 mm.
Left					
Right					

Bank Particle Median Diameters (mm.) _____

Amount of Undercut (mm.) _____

of Vegetated Squares on Bank (out of 16)

None	Cultivated	Meadow	Scrubland	Forest

Dominant Vegetation Type: Put X in the box of the dominant type in the 1 x 2 m. area. Put - in all others.

Cover Quality:
 -99 = Not Measurable
 0 = No Cover
 1 = Embedded Cover
 2 = Unembedded Cover

Enter dates and initials when data entered in computer

Date	Init.

Comments: _____

Diagnostic Indicators of Channel Stability

Stream Name: _____ Stream Code (Unique Code): _____ Site Code: _____ Year: _____ Date (YYYY/MM/DD): _____ Transect # _____ of _____

Record these values only on the first transect
 Site Length (m): _____ Transect Spacing (m): _____ Crew: _____ Comments: _____

Obstructions to Flow (If none present, check "None Present" Otherwise check the applicable types.)	None Present <input type="checkbox"/> Trampled Banks <input type="checkbox"/> Wood Deflectors <input type="checkbox"/> Inorganic Deflectors <input type="checkbox"/> Armouring <input type="checkbox"/> Inlets <input type="checkbox"/> Others (List Types)		DISCHARGE APPROXIMATES BASEFLOW YES <input type="checkbox"/> NO <input type="checkbox"/>		Channel Profile				Channel Profile (continued)				Velocity Measurements			
	Left Bank	Right Bank	Feature	Vert Ht to Bankfull (mm)	Vert Ht to Tape (mm)	Horiz. Loc. (m)	Vert Ht to Bankfull (mm)	Water Depth (mm)	Observer Depth (mm)	Velocity Turns/Min	Velocity (m/s)	Vert Ht to Bankfull (mm)		Water Depth (mm)	Observer Depth (mm)	Velocity Turns/Min
Indicators Used to Locate Bankfull Level	Inflection Point	<input type="checkbox"/>														
	Bank Material	<input type="checkbox"/>														
Entrenchment	Top of Point Bar	<input type="checkbox"/>														
	Vegetation	<input type="checkbox"/>														
	Minimum Width:Depth	<input type="checkbox"/>														
	Others (List Types)	<input type="checkbox"/>														
Entrenchment Height = 2 X Maximum Channel Depth	Entrenchment Height = 2 X Maximum Channel Depth Entrenchment Width = Horizontal distance from the location of the Maximum Channel Depth to the bank at the Entrenchment Height Record either the Left and Right widths, or the Total Width Left Entrenchment Width (m): _____ Right Entrenchment Width (m): _____ Total Entrenchment Width (m): _____															
Minimum Width (m.)	Minimum Width (m.) Low variance in velocity or depth: 8 + 1 every 2 metre High variance in velocity or depth: 10 + 1 every 1 metre Active Width (W) (m.) Point Spacing = # Points per transect (N) Point Spacing (S) (m.) First point is S/2 from the left bank Enter dates and initials when data entered in computer Date: _____ Init.: _____ Entered: _____ Verified: _____ Corrected: _____															

Discharge Measurements Form: Non-Point Transect Methods (discharge obtained without use of velocity meter)

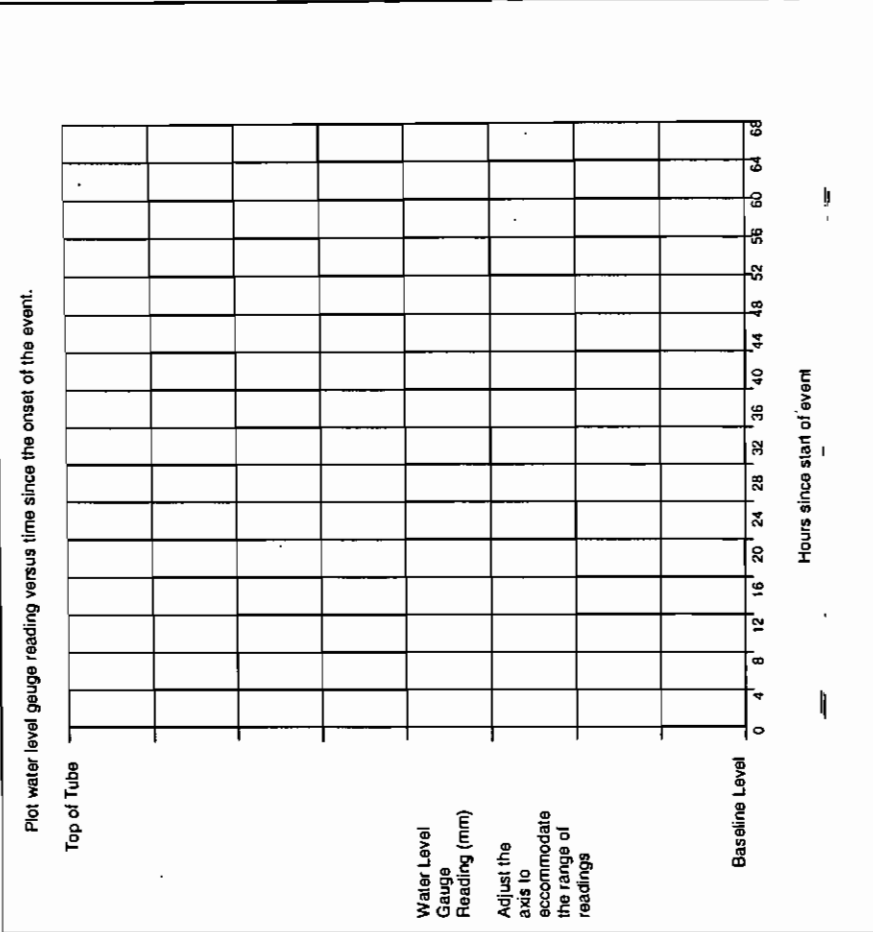
Stream Name:	Site Code:																												
Stream Code:	Sample #:	Date (YYYY/MM/DD)																											
* DISCHARGE APPROXIMATES BASEFLOW <input type="checkbox"/> YES <input type="checkbox"/> NO																													
* Volume/Time Method																													
Volume of container (L): <input style="width: 100px;" type="text"/>																													
<table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">replicate 1</td> <td style="text-align: center;">replicate 2</td> <td style="text-align: center;">replicate 3</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">time to fill container <input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/></td> <td style="text-align: center;"><input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/></td> <td style="text-align: center;"><input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">Percent lost: <input type="checkbox"/> 0-10</td> <td style="text-align: center;"><input type="checkbox"/> 11-30</td> <td style="text-align: center;"><input type="checkbox"/> >30</td> </tr> </table>			replicate 1	replicate 2	replicate 3	time to fill container <input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/>	Percent lost: <input type="checkbox"/> 0-10	<input type="checkbox"/> 11-30	<input type="checkbox"/> >30																		
replicate 1	replicate 2	replicate 3																											
time to fill container <input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/>	<input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/>																											
Percent lost: <input type="checkbox"/> 0-10	<input type="checkbox"/> 11-30	<input type="checkbox"/> >30																											
* Area X Estimated Velocity Method																													
<table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">stream width (m): <input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/></td> <td style="text-align: center;">X</td> <td style="text-align: center;">average depth (m): <input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/></td> <td style="text-align: center;">=</td> <td style="text-align: center;">area (m²): <input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/></td> <td style="text-align: center;">X</td> <td style="text-align: center;">average velocity (m/s): <input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/></td> <td style="text-align: center;">=</td> <td style="text-align: center;">discharge (m³/s): <input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"><input type="checkbox"/> estimated</td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: center;"><input type="checkbox"/> estimated</td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: center;">(optional calculation)</td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: center;"><input type="checkbox"/> estimated</td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: center;">(optional calculation)</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"><input type="checkbox"/> measured</td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: center;"><input type="checkbox"/> measured</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: center;"><input type="checkbox"/> measured</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </table> <p style="font-size: small;">For stream width, depth, and velocity variables check one box to indicate whether the variable was 'estimated' or 'measured'.</p>			stream width (m): <input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/>	X	average depth (m): <input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/>	=	area (m ²): <input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/>	X	average velocity (m/s): <input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/>	=	discharge (m ³ /s): <input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> estimated		<input type="checkbox"/> estimated		(optional calculation)		<input type="checkbox"/> estimated		(optional calculation)	<input type="checkbox"/> measured		<input type="checkbox"/> measured				<input type="checkbox"/> measured		
stream width (m): <input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/>	X	average depth (m): <input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/>	=	area (m ²): <input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/>	X	average velocity (m/s): <input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/>	=	discharge (m ³ /s): <input style="width: 80px;" type="text"/>																					
<input type="checkbox"/> estimated		<input type="checkbox"/> estimated		(optional calculation)		<input type="checkbox"/> estimated		(optional calculation)																					
<input type="checkbox"/> measured		<input type="checkbox"/> measured				<input type="checkbox"/> measured																							
Comments	Crew	Enter dates and initials when data is entered in computer <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; margin-top: 5px;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 60%;"></th> <th style="width: 20%;">Date</th> <th style="width: 20%;">Init.</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Entered</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Verified</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Corrected</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		Date	Init.	Entered			Verified			Corrected																	
	Date	Init.																											
Entered																													
Verified																													
Corrected																													

*** Only one discharge method is required (Area x Est. OR Vol/Time).**

Water Level Record

Stream Name: _____ Site Code: _____ Year: _____ Sample #: _____ Event #: _____
 Stream Code (Unique Code): _____ Date: (YYYY/MM/DD): _____
 Start Time of Storm (24hr Clock): _____ Crew: _____ Event Type: _____

Event Duration (Hours)		Total Precipitation (mm)	
Water Level Gauge Readings Ideally, readings should be taken immediately before the storm begins, and 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, and 64 hours after the onset. Record the date, time and the distance from the top of the water level gauge (tube) to the bell, in millimeters.			
Reading:	Date (YYYY/MM/DD)	Time (24hr clock)	Water Level Gauge Reading (mm)
Baseline level			
Peak Flow			
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			



Precipitation Source: _____

Comments: _____

Enter dates and initials when data entered in computer.	
Date	Init.
Entered	
Verified	
Corrected	